EOS 6D

EOS 6D (WG)
EOS 6D (N)

The EOS 6D (N) does not have the Wi-Fi and GPS functions explained in this manual.

E

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

Introduction

The EOS 6D (WG/N) is high-performance, digital single-lens reflex camera featuring a full-frame (approx. 35.8 x 23.9 mm) CMOS sensor with approx. 20.2 effective megapixels, DIGIC 5+, high-precision and high-speed 11-point AF, approx. 4.5 fps continuous shooting, Live View shooting, Full High-Definition (Full HD) movie shooting, Wi-Fi*, and GPS*.
The camera is highly responsive to any shooting situation at any time, provides many features for demanding shots, and expands shooting possibilities with various system accessories.

* The EOS 6D (N) does not have the Wi-Fi and GPS functions.

Refer to This Manual while Using the Camera to Further Familiarize Yourself with the Camera

With a digital camera, you can immediately view the image you have captured. While reading this manual, take a few test shots and see how they come out. You can then better understand the camera.
To avoid botched pictures and accidents, first read the "Safety Warnings" (p.382, 383) and "Handling Precautions" (p.16, 17).

Testing the Camera Before Use and Liability

After shooting, play images back and check whether they have been properly recorded. If the camera or memory card is faulty and the images cannot be recorded or downloaded to a computer, Canon cannot be held liable for any loss or inconvenience caused.

Copyrights

Copyright laws in your country may prohibit the use of your recorded images or copyrighted music and images with music in the memory card for anything other than private enjoyment. Also be aware that certain public performances, exhibitions, etc., may prohibit photography even for private enjoyment.

Compatible Cards

The camera can use the following cards regardless of capacity:

- SD memory cards
- SDHC memory cards*
- SDXC memory cards*

* UHS-I cards compatible.

Cards that Can Record Movies

When shooting movies, use a large-capacity card with a fast reading/writing speed as shown in the table.

Compression Method (p.216)	**Card**
IPB	6 MB/sec. or faster
ALL-I (I-only)	20 MB/sec. or faster

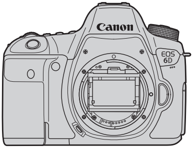
- If you use a slow-writing card when shooting movies, the movie may not be recorded properly. Also, if you play back a movie on a card with a slow reading speed, the movie may not play back properly.
- If you want to shoot still photos while shooting a movie, you will need an even faster card.
- To check the card's reading/writing speed, refer to the card manufacturer's Web site.

In this manual, "card" refers to SD memory cards, SDHC memory cards, and SDXC memory cards.

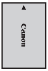
* **The camera does not come with a card for recording images/movies.** Please purchase it separately.

Item Check List

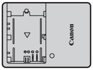
Before starting, check that all the following items have been included with your camera. If anything is missing, contact your dealer.



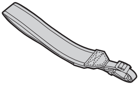
Camera
(with body cap)



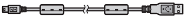
Battery Pack
LP-E6
(with protective cover)



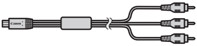
Battery Charger
LC-E6/LC-E6E*



Wide Strap
EW-EOS6D



Interface Cable IFC-200U



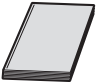
Stereo AV Cable
AVC-DC400ST

* Battery Charger LC-E6 or LC-E6E is provided. (The LC-E6E comes with a power cord.)

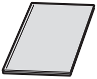
- The Instruction Manuals and CD-ROMs provided are listed on the next page.
- If you purchased a Lens Kit, check that the lenses are included.
- Depending on the Lens Kit type, lens instruction manuals may also be included.
- Be careful not to lose any of the above items.

Instruction Manuals and CD-ROMs

The instruction manuals are provided in both paper and electronic (PDF) forms.



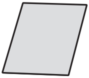
Camera Basic Instruction Manual



Wi-Fi (Basic)**/ GPS Function Instruction Manual***

Pocket Guide

Explains the camera's basic function settings and basic shooting/playback instructions.



Wi-Fi/GPS Cautions*

* Not provided with the EOS 6D (N).

Canon
EOS 6D
For Windows
For Macintosh

Camera Instruction Manual CD-ROM

Contains the following manuals in PDF:

- Camera Instruction Manual (Detailed version)
- Wi-Fi Function Instruction Manual (Detailed version)

Canon
EOS DIGITAL
Software INSTRUCTION MANUAL
ソフトウェア使用説明書
For Windows
For Macintosh

Software Instruction Manual CD-ROM

Contains Instruction Manuals in PDF for the software in the Software CD-ROM.

* Instructions for viewing the Instruction Manual CD-ROMs are on pages 388 and 395.

Canon
EOS DIGITAL
Solution Disk
For Macintosh
For Windows

Software CD-ROM (EOS DIGITAL Solution Disk)

Contains software for image-editing and other programs. For outlines and installation procedure of the software, see pages 392-394.

Conventions Used in this Manual

Icons in this Manual

<⚙> : Indicates the Main Dial.
<◎> : Indicates the Quick Control Dial.
<✣> <▲▼> <◄►> : Indicates the Multi-controller and the push direction.
<SET> : Indicates the Setting button.
⏱4, ⏱6, ⏱10, ⏱16 : Indicates that the corresponding function remains active for 4 sec., 6 sec., 10 sec., or 16 sec. respectively after you let go of the button.

* In this manual, the icons and markings indicating the camera's buttons, dials, and settings correspond to the icons and markings on the camera and on the LCD monitor.

MENU : Indicates a function that can be changed by pressing the <MENU> button and changing the setting.
☆ : When shown on the upper right of a page, it indicates that the function is available only in the Creative Zone modes (p.24).
(p.**) : Reference page numbers for more information.
❗ : Warning to prevent shooting problems.
📝 : Supplemental information.
💡 : Tips or advice for better shooting.
? : Problem-solving advice.

Basic Assumptions

- All operations explained in this manual assume that the power switch has been set to <ON> and the <LOCK▶> switch has been set to the left (Multi function lock released) (p.34, 47).
- It is assumed that all the menu settings and Custom Functions are set to their defaults.
- The illustrations in this manual show the camera attached with an EF50mm f/1.4 USM lens as an example.

Chapters

For first-time DSLR users, Chapters 1 and 2 explain the camera's basic operations and shooting procedures.

Introduction 2

1 Getting Started 27

2 Basic Shooting 65

3 Setting the AF and Drive Modes 91

4 Image Settings 101

5 Advanced Operations 141

6 Flash Photography 169

7 Shooting with the LCD Monitor (Live View Shooting) 179

8 Shooting Movies 203

9 Image Playback 235

10 Post-Processing Images 271

11 Sensor Cleaning 279

12 Printing Images 285

13 Customizing the Camera 301

14 Reference 331

15 Viewing the CD-ROM Instruction Manuals / Downloading Images to Your Computer 387

Contents

Introduction 2

Compatible Cards 3
Item Check List 4
Instruction Manuals and CD-ROMs 5
Conventions Used in this Manual 6
Chapters 7
Index to Features 14
Handling Precautions 16
Quick Start Guide 18
Nomenclature 20

1 Getting Started 27

Charging the Battery 28
Installing and Removing the Battery 30
Installing and Removing the Card 31
Turning on the Power 34
Setting the Date, Time, and Zone 36
Selecting the Interface Language 38
Attaching and Detaching a Lens 39
About the Lens Image Stabilizer 42
Basic Operation 43
[Q] Quick Control for Shooting Functions 49
MENU Menu Operations 51
Before You Start 53
  Formatting the Card 53
  Setting the Power-off Time/Auto Power Off 55
  Setting the Image Review Time 55
  Turning the LCD Monitor Off/On 56
  Reverting the Camera to the Default Settings 56
-📷- Displaying the Electronic Level 60
Feature Guide and Help 63

2 Basic Shooting 65

A+ Fully Automatic Shooting (Scene Intelligent Auto) 66
A+ Full Auto Techniques (Scene Intelligent Auto) 69
CA Creative Auto Shooting 71
SCN: Special Scene Mode 74
Shooting Portraits 75
Shooting Landscapes 76
Shooting Close-ups 77
Shooting Moving Subjects 78
Shooting Night Portraits (With a Tripod) 79
Shooting Night Scenes (Handheld) 80
Shooting Backlit Scenes 81
Q Quick Control 83
Shoot by Ambience Selection 84
Shoot by Lighting or Scene Type 87

3 Setting the AF and Drive Modes 91

AF: Selecting the AF Operation 92
Selecting AF Points 94
When Autofocus Fails 96
  MF: Manual Focusing 97
Selecting the Drive Mode 98
Using the Self-timer 100

4 Image Settings 101

Setting the Image-Recording Quality 102
ISO: Setting the ISO Speed 106
Selecting a Picture Style 112
Customizing a Picture Style 115
Registering a Picture Style 118

Setting the White Balance 120

Custom White Balance 121

K Setting the Color Temperature 122

White Balance Correction 123

Auto Correction of Brightness and Contrast 125

Noise Reduction Settings 126

Highlight Tone Priority 130

Lens Peripheral Illumination / Chromatic Aberration Correction .. 131

Creating and Selecting a Folder 134

File Numbering Methods 136

Setting Copyright Information 138

Setting the Color Space 140

5 Advanced Operations 141

P: Program AE 142

Tv: Shutter-Priority AE 144

Av: Aperture-Priority AE 146

Depth of Field Preview 147

M: Manual Exposure 148

Selecting the Metering Mode 149

Setting Exposure Compensation 151

Auto Exposure Bracketing (AEB) 152

✱ AE Lock 153

B: Bulb Exposures 154

HDR: HDR (High Dynamic Range) Shooting 155

Multiple Exposures 158

Mirror Lockup 165

Using the Eyepiece Cover 166

Using a Remote Switch 167

Remote Control Shooting 167

6 Flash Photography 169

ϟ Flash Photography 170
Setting the Flash 172

7 Shooting with the LCD Monitor (Live View Shooting) 179

📷 Shooting with the LCD Monitor 180
Shooting Function Settings 185
Menu Function Settings 187
Using AF to Focus (AF Method) 192
Focusing Manually 199

8 Shooting Movies 203

🎥 Shooting Movies 204
Shooting Function Settings 215
Setting the Movie-Recording Size 216
Setting the Sound Recording 218
Setting the Time Code 220
Menu Function Settings 223
Shooting Video Snapshots 225

9 Image Playback 235

▶ Image Playback 236
INFO.: Shooting Information Display 238
⊞ ↷ Searching for Images Quickly 242
🔍 Magnified View 244
↻ Rotating the Image 246
Setting Ratings 247
Q Quick Control for Playback 249
🎥 Enjoying Movies 251
🎥 Playing Movies 253

Editing a Movie's First and Last Scenes 255
Slide Show (Auto Playback) 257
Viewing the Images on TV..................................... 261
Protecting Images..................................... 265
Erasing Images..................................... 267
Changing Image Playback Settings 269
  Adjusting the LCD Monitor Brightness..................................... 269
  Auto Rotation of Vertical Images 270

10 Post-Processing Images 271

Processing RAW Images with the Camera..................................... 272
Resize..................................... 277

11 Sensor Cleaning 279

Automatic Sensor Cleaning 280
Appending Dust Delete Data 281
Manual Sensor Cleaning 283

12 Printing Images 285

Preparing to Print..................................... 286
Printing 288
  Trimming the Image 293
Digital Print Order Format (DPOF) 295
Direct Printing of Print-Ordered Images 298
Specifying Images for a Photobook 299

13 Customizing the Camera 301

Setting Custom Functions 302
Custom Functions 303
Custom Function Settings 304

C.Fn I: Exposure 304
C.Fn II: Autofocus 307
C.Fn III: Operation/Others 311
📷: AF Microadjustment 314
📷: Custom Controls 320
Registering My Menu 327
C1 Register Custom Shooting Modes 328

14 Reference 331

INFO. Button Functions 332
Checking the Battery Information 334
Using a Household Power Outlet 338
Using Eye-Fi Cards 339
Function Availability Table According to Shooting Mode 342
Menu Settings 346
System Map 354
Troubleshooting Guide 356
Error Codes 370
Specifications 371
Safety Warnings 382

15 Viewing the CD-ROM Instruction Manuals / Downloading Images to Your Computer 387

Viewing the Camera Instruction Manual CD-ROM 388
Downloading Images to a Computer 390
About the Software 392
Installing the Software 394
Software Instruction Manual 395
Index 396

Index to Features

Power

- Charging the battery → p.28
- Battery check → p.35
- Battery information check → p.334
- Household power outlet → p.338
- Auto power off → p.55

Card

- Format → p.53
- Release shutter without card → p.32

Lens

- Attaching/Detaching → p.39
- Zoom → p.40
- Image Stabilizer → p.42

Basic Settings

- Language → p.38
- Date/Time/Zone → p.36
- Beeper → p.346
- Copyright information → p.138
- Clear all camera settings → p.56

Viewfinder

- Dioptric adjustment → p.43
- Eyepiece cover → p.166
- Electronic level → p.61

LCD Monitor

- Brightness adjustment → p.269
- Electronic level → p.60
- Feature guide → p.63
- Help → p.64

AF

- AF operation → p.92
- AF point selection → p.94
- AF Microadjustment → p.314
- Manual focusing → p.97

Metering

- Metering mode → p.149

Drive

- Drive mode → p.98
- Self-timer → p.100
- Maximum burst → p.105

Recording Images

- Create/select a folder → p.134
- File numbering → p.136

Image Quality

- Image-recording quality → p.102
- ISO speed → p.106
- Picture Style → p.112
- White balance → p.120
- Auto Lighting Optimizer → p.125
- Noise reduction for high ISO speeds → p.126
- Noise reduction for long exposures → p.128
- Highlight tone priority → p.130
- Peripheral illumination correction → p.131
- Chromatic aberration correction → p.132
- Color space → p.140

Shooting

- Shooting mode → p.24
- HDR → p.155
- Multiple exposures → p.158
- Mirror lockup → p.165
- Depth-of-field preview → p.147
- Remote control → p.167
- Quick Control → p.49

Exposure Adjustment

- Exposure compensation → p.151
- AEB → p.152
- AE lock → p.153
- Safety shift → p.306

Flash

- External flash → p.169
- External flash function settings → p.172
- External Speedlite Custom Functions → p.177

Live View Shooting

- Live View shooting → p.179
- Focusing → p.192
- Aspect ratio → p.188

Movie Shooting

- Movie shooting → p.203
- Movie recording size → p.216
- Sound recording → p.218
- Time code → p.220
- Still photo shooting → p.213
- Video snapshot → p.225

Playback

- Image review time → p.55
- Single-image display → p.236
- Shooting information display → p.238
- Index display → p.242
- Image browsing (Jump display) → p.243
- Magnified view → p.244
- Image rotate → p.246
- Rating → p.247
- Movie playback → p.253
- Slide show → p.257
- Viewing images on TV → p.261
- Protect → p.265
- Erase → p.267

Image Editing

- RAW image processing → p.272
- Resize → p.277

Printing

- PictBridge → p.286
- Print Order (DPOF) → p.295
- Photobook Set-up → p.299

Customization

- Custom Functions (C.Fn) → p.303
- Custom Controls → p.320
- My Menu → p.327
- Custom shooting mode → p.328

Sensor Cleaning and Dust Reduction

- Sensor cleaning → p.280
- Append Dust Delete Data → p.281

Wi-Fi/GPS*

- Wi-Fi → Separate booklet
- GPS → Separate booklet

* The EOS 6D (N) does not have the Wi-Fi and GPS functions.

Handling Precautions

Camera Care

- This camera is a precision instrument. Do not drop it or subject it to physical shock.
- The camera is not waterproof and cannot be used underwater. If you accidentally drop the camera into water, promptly consult the nearest Canon Service Center. Wipe off any water droplets with a dry cloth. If the camera has been exposed to salty air, wipe it with a well-wrung wet cloth.
- Never leave the camera near anything having a strong magnetic field such as a magnet or electric motor. Also avoid using or leaving the camera near anything emitting strong radio waves such as a large antenna. Strong magnetic fields can cause camera misoperation or destroy image data.
- Do not leave the camera in excessive heat such as in a car in direct sunlight. High temperatures can cause the camera to malfunction.
- The camera contains precision electronic circuitry. Never attempt to disassemble the camera yourself.
- Do not block the mirror operation with your finger, etc. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Use a blower to blow away dust on the lens, viewfinder, reflex mirror, and focusing screen. Do not use cleaners that contain organic solvents to clean the camera body or lens. For stubborn dirt, take the camera to the nearest Canon Service Center.
- Do not touch the camera's electrical contacts with your fingers. This is to prevent the contacts from corroding. Corroded contacts can cause camera misoperation.
- If the camera is suddenly brought in from the cold into a warm room, condensation may form on the camera and internal parts. To prevent condensation, first put the camera in a sealed plastic bag and let it adjust to the warmer temperature before taking it out of the bag.
- If condensation forms on the camera, do not use the camera. This is to avoid damaging the camera. If there is condensation, remove the lens, card and battery from the camera, and wait until condensation has evaporated before using the camera.
- If the camera will not be used for an extended period, remove the battery and store the camera in a cool, dry, well-ventilated location. Even while the camera is in storage, press the shutter button a few times once in a while to check that the camera is still working.
- Avoid storing the camera where there are chemicals that result in rust and corrosion such as in a chemical lab.
- If the camera has not been used for an extended period, test all its functions before using it. If you have not used the camera for some time or if there is an important shoot such as a foreign trip coming up, have the camera checked by your Canon dealer or check the camera yourself and make sure it is working properly.

LCD Panel and LCD Monitor

- Although the LCD monitor is manufactured with very high precision technology with over 99.99% effective pixels, there may be a few dead pixels displaying only black or red, etc. among the remaining 0.01% or less pixels. Dead pixels are not a malfunction. They do not affect the images recorded.
- If the LCD monitor is left on for a prolonged period, screen burn-in may occur where you see remnants of what was displayed. However, this is only temporary and will disappear when the camera is left unused for a few days.
- The LCD monitor display may seem slow in low temperatures, or look black in high temperatures. It will return to normal at room temperature.

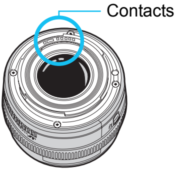
Cards

To protect the card and its recorded data, note the following:

- Do not drop, bend, or wet the card. Do not subject it to excessive force, physical shock, or vibration.
- Do not touch the card's electronic contacts with your fingers or anything metallic.
- Do not affix any stickers, etc., on the card.
- Do not store or use the card near anything having a strong magnetic field such as a TV set, speakers, or magnet. Also avoid places prone to having static electricity.
- Do not leave the card in direct sunlight or near a heat source.
- Store the card in a case.
- Do not store the card in hot, dusty, or humid locations.

Lens

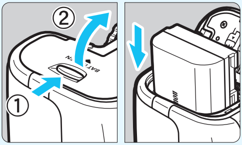
After detaching the lens from the camera, put down the lens with the rear end up and attach the lens caps to avoid scratching the lens surface and electrical contacts.



Cautions regarding Prolonged Use

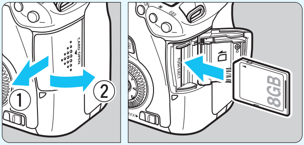
If you use continuous shooting, Live View shooting, or movie shooting for a prolonged period, the camera may become hot. Although this is not a malfunction, holding the hot camera for a long period can cause slight skin burns.

Quick Start Guide



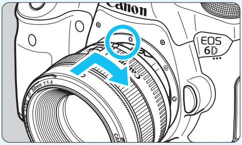
1 Insert the battery (p.30).

- To charge the battery, see page 28.



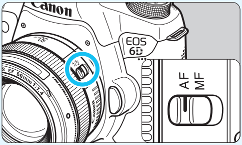
2 Insert a card (p.31).

- With the card's label facing toward the back of the camera, insert it into the card slot.

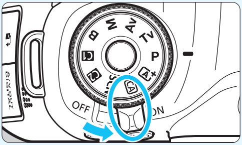

Canon
EOS 6D

3 Attach the lens (p.39).

- Align it with the red dot.


Canon
EOS 6D
AF
MF

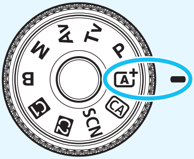
4 Set the lens focus mode switch to <AF> (p.39).


M
Av
Tv
P
A+
CA
B
OFF
ON

5 Set the power switch to <ON> (p.34).

- When the LCD monitor displays the date/time/zone setting screens, see page 36.

6



While holding down the center of the Mode Dial, set it to <A+> (Scene Intelligent Auto) (p.66).

- All the necessary camera settings will be set automatically.

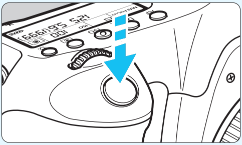
7

125 5.6 ISO 100 [26]

Focus the subject (p.44).

- Look through the viewfinder and aim the viewfinder center over the subject.
- Press the shutter button halfway, and the camera will focus the subject.

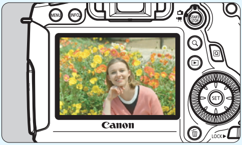
8



Take the picture (p.44).

- Press the shutter button completely to take the picture.

9

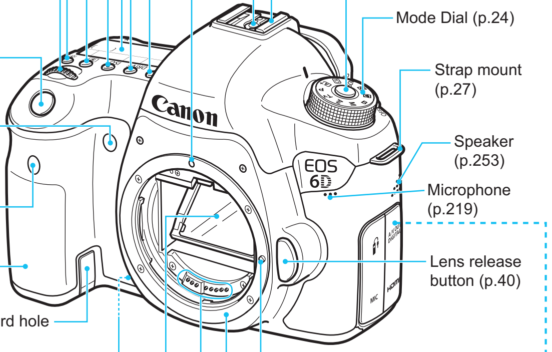


Review the picture (p.55).

- The captured image will be displayed for 2 sec. on the LCD monitor.
- To display the image again, press the <▶> button (p.236).

- To shoot while looking at the LCD monitor, see “Live View Shooting” (p.179).
- To view the images captured so far, see “Image Playback” (p.236).
- To delete an image, see “Erasing Images” (p.267).

Nomenclature



LCD panel (p.22)

<ISO> ISO speed setting button (p.106)

<◉> Metering mode selection button (p.149)

<☼> LCD panel illumination button (p.48)

<⚙> Main Dial (p.45)

Shutter button (p.44)

Self-timer lamp (p.100)

Remote control sensor (p.167)

Grip (Battery compartment)

DC coupler cord hole (p.338)

Depth-of-field preview button (p.147)

Mirror (p.165, 283)

<DRIVE> Drive mode selection button (p.98)

<AF> AF operation selection button (p.92)

Lens mount index (p.39)

Flash-sync contacts

Hot shoe (p.170)

Mode Dial lock release button (p.45)

Mode Dial (p.24)

Strap mount (p.27)

Speaker (p.253)

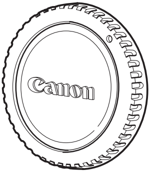
Microphone (p.219)

Lens release button (p.40)

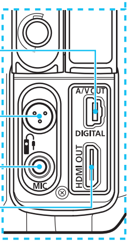
Lens lock pin

Lens mount

Contacts (p.17)



Body cap (p.39)

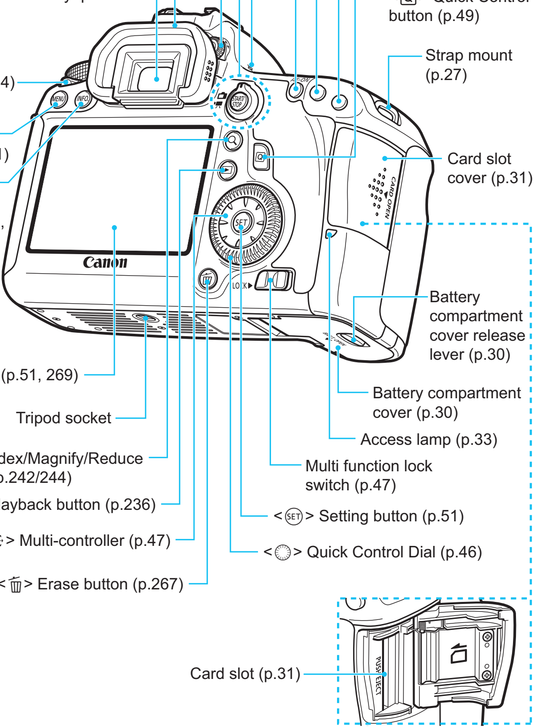


<A/V OUT/DIGITAL> Audio/video OUT/ Digital terminal (p.264/286, 390)

<🎤> Remote control terminal (N3 type) (p.167)

<MIC> External microphone IN terminal (p.219)

<HDMI OUT> HDMI mini OUT terminal (p.261)



<⊖> Focal plane mark

<📷/🎥> Live View shooting/
Movie shooting switch (p.179/203)
<START/STOP> Start/Stop button (p.180, 204)

Dioptric adjustment knob (p.43)

Eyecup (p.166)

Viewfinder eyepiece

Power switch (p.34)

<MENU>
Menu button (p.51)

<INFO.>
Info button
(p.48, 60, 64, 182,
210, 236, 332)

LCD monitor (p.51, 269)

Tripod socket

<🔍> Index/Magnify/Reduce
button (p.242/244)

<▶> Playback button (p.236)

<✥> Multi-controller (p.47)

<🗑> Erase button (p.267)

<AF-ON> AF start button
(p.44, 181, 211)

<✱> AE lock/
FE lock button (p.153/170)

<⊞> AF point selection
button (p.94)

<Q> Quick Control
button (p.49)

Strap mount
(p.27)

Card slot
cover (p.31)

Battery
compartment
cover release
lever (p.30)

Battery compartment
cover (p.30)

Access lamp (p.33)

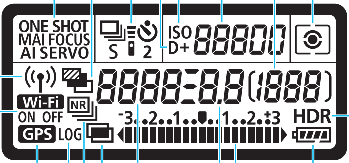
Multi function lock
switch (p.47)

<SET> Setting button (p.51)

<◎> Quick Control Dial (p.46)

Card slot (p.31)

LCD Panel



Drive mode (p.98)
- ☐ Single shooting
- ⧉ Continuous shooting
- ☐S Silent single shooting
- ⧉S Silent continuous shooting
- Self-timer: 10 sec./Remote control
- Self-timer: 2 sec./Remote control

<**D+**> Highlight tone priority (p.130)

<**ISO**> ISO speed (p.106)

ISO speed (p.106)

Possible shots
Self-timer countdown
Bulb exposure time
Error No.
Remaining images to record

< > AEB (p.152)

Metering mode (p.149)
- ◉ Evaluative metering
- ◎ Partial metering
- ⊡ Spot metering
- [ ] Center-weighted average metering

AF operation (p.92)
- **ONE SHOT** One-Shot AF
- **AI FOCUS** AI Focus AF
- **AI SERVO** AI Servo AF
- **M FOCUS** Manual focus

Wi-Fi function
<((ᵠ))/**Wi-Fi**>
ON OFF

<**HDR**> HDR shooting (p.155)

<**GPS**> GPS acquisition status

Battery check (p.35)

<**LOG**> Logging function

<**NR**> Multi Shot Noise Reduction (p.126)

< > Multiple-exposure shooting (p.158)

Exposure level indicator
- Exposure compensation amount (p.151)
- AEB range (p.152)
- Flash exposure compensation amount (p.170)

Electronic level

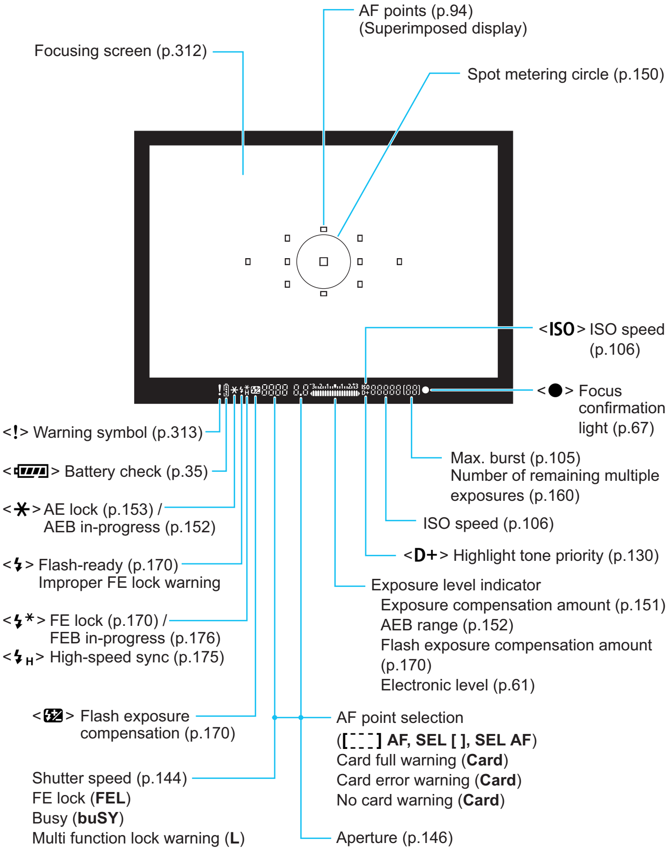
Aperture

Shutter speed
FE lock (**FEL**)
Busy (**buSY**)
Multi function lock warning (**L**)
No card warning (**Card**)
Error code (**Err**)
Cleaning image sensor (**CLn**)

AF point selection
(**[- - -] AF, SEL [ ], SEL AF**)
Card full warning (**Card Full**)
Card error warning (**Card Err**)

The display will show only the settings currently applied.

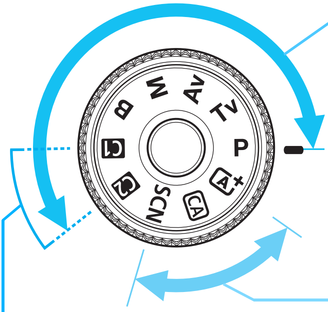
Viewfinder Information


AF points (p.94)
(Superimposed display)
Focusing screen (p.312)
Spot metering circle (p.150)
<ISO> ISO speed (p.106)
<●> Focus confirmation light (p.67)
<!> Warning symbol (p.313)
<▮▮▮▮> Battery check (p.35)
Max. burst (p.105)
Number of remaining multiple exposures (p.160)
<✱> AE lock (p.153) / AEB in-progress (p.152)
ISO speed (p.106)
<D+> Highlight tone priority (p.130)
<ϟ> Flash-ready (p.170)
Improper FE lock warning
Exposure level indicator
Exposure compensation amount (p.151)
AEB range (p.152)
Flash exposure compensation amount (p.170)
Electronic level (p.61)
<ϟ*> FE lock (p.170) / FEB in-progress (p.176)
<ϟH> High-speed sync (p.175)
<ϟ±> Flash exposure compensation (p.170)
AF point selection
([⁝⁝⁝] AF, SEL [ ], SEL AF)
Card full warning (Card)
Card error warning (Card)
No card warning (Card)
Shutter speed (p.144)
FE lock (FEL)
Busy (buSY)
Multi function lock warning (L)
Aperture (p.146)

The display will show only the settings currently applied.

Mode Dial

Turn the Mode Dial while holding down the Mode Dial center (Mode Dial lock release button).



Creative Zone

These modes give you more control for shooting various subjects.

P : Program AE (p.142)
Tv : Shutter-priority AE (p.144)
Av : Aperture-priority AE (p.146)
M : Manual exposure (p.148)
B : Bulb (p.154)

Basic Zone

All you do is press the shutter button. The camera sets everything to suit the subject or scene.

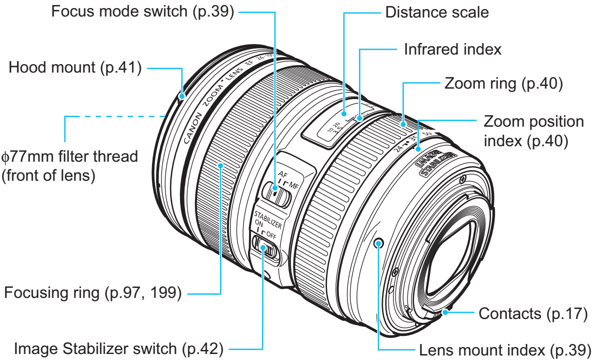
A+ : **Scene Intelligent Auto** (p.66)
CA : **Creative Auto** (p.71)
SCN : Special scene (p.74)
  : Portrait (p.75)
  : Landscape (p.76)
  : Close-up (p.77)
  : Sports (p.78)
  : Night Portrait (p.79)
  : Handheld Night Scene (p.80)
  : HDR Backlight Control (p.81)

Custom shooting mode

You can register the shooting mode (**P**/**Tv**/**Av**/**M**/**B**), AF operation, menu settings, etc., to the C1 or C2 Mode Dial setting and shoot (p.328).

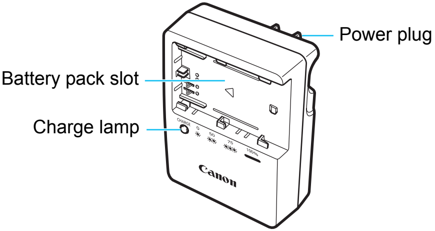
Lens

EF24-105mm f/4L IS USM


Focus mode switch (p.39)
Distance scale
Infrared index
Hood mount (p.41)
Zoom ring (p.40)
Zoom position index (p.40)
ϕ77mm filter thread (front of lens)
Focusing ring (p.97, 199)
Contacts (p.17)
Image Stabilizer switch (p.42)
Lens mount index (p.39)

Battery Charger LC-E6

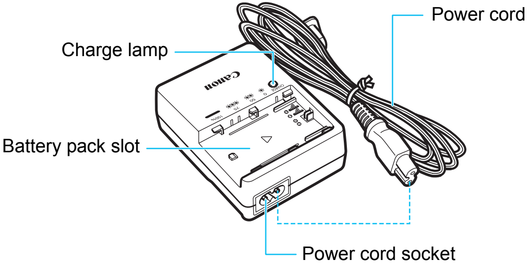
Charger for Battery Pack LP-E6 (p.28).


Power plug
Battery pack slot
Charge lamp
CHARGE
0
50
75
100%
Canon

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS-SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS. DANGER-TO REDUCE THE RISK OF FIRE OR ELECTRIC SHOCK, CAREFULLY FOLLOW THESE INSTRUCTIONS.
For connection to a supply not in the U.S.A., use an attachment plug adapter of the proper configuration for the power outlet, if needed.

Battery Charger LC-E6E

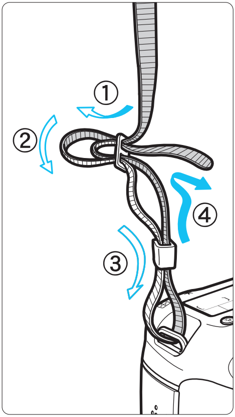
Charger for Battery Pack LP-E6 (p.28).


Power cord
Charge lamp
Battery pack slot
Power cord socket
Canon

1

Getting Started

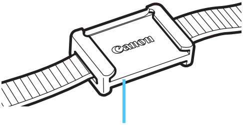
This chapter explains preparatory steps before you start shooting and basic camera operations.



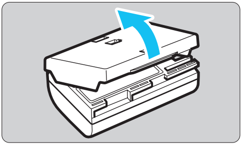
Attaching the Strap

Pass the end of the strap through the camera's strap mount eyelet from the bottom. Then pass it through the strap's buckle as shown in the illustration. Pull the strap to take up any slack and make sure the strap will not loosen from the buckle.

- The eyepiece cover is also attached to the strap (p.166).

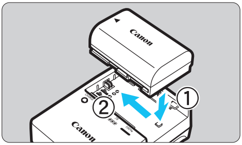


Charging the Battery



1 Remove the protective cover.

- Detach the protective cover provided with the battery.

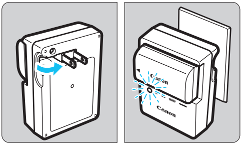


2 Attach the battery.

- As shown in the illustration, attach the battery securely to the charger.
- To detach the battery, follow the above procedure in reverse.

3 Recharge the battery.

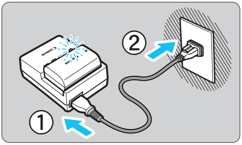
LC-E6



For LC-E6

- As shown by the arrow, flip out the battery charger’s prongs and insert the prongs into a power outlet.

LC-E6E



For LC-E6E

- Connect the power cord to the charger and insert the plug into a power outlet.

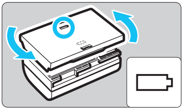
▶ Recharging starts automatically and the charge lamp blinks in orange.

Charge Level	Charge Lamp	
	Color	Indicator
0 - 49%	Orange	Blinks once per second
50 - 74%		Blinks twice per second
75% or higher		Blinks three times per second
Fully charged	Green	Lights up

- **It takes approx. 2.5 hours to fully recharge a completely exhausted battery at room temperature (23°C / 73°F). The time required to recharge the battery will vary greatly depending on the ambient temperature and the battery’s remaining capacity.**
- For safety reasons, recharging in low temperatures (5°C - 10°C / 41°F - 50°F) will take longer (up to approx. 4 hours).

Tips for Using the Battery and Charger

- **Upon purchase, the battery is not fully charged.**
  Recharge the battery before using.
- **Recharge the battery on the day before or on the day it is to be used.**
  Even during storage, a charged battery will gradually drain and lose its capacity.
- **After recharging the battery, detach it and disconnect the charger from the power outlet.**
- **You can attach the cover in a different orientation to indicate whether the battery has been recharged or not.**
  If the battery has been recharged, attach the cover so that the battery-shaped hole <▭> is aligned over the blue sticker on the battery. If the battery is exhausted, attach the cover in the opposite orientation.



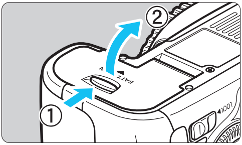
- **When not using the camera, remove the battery.**
  If the battery is left in the camera for a prolonged period, a small amount of power current is released, resulting in excess discharge and shorter battery life. Store the battery with the protective cover attached. Storing the battery when it is fully charged may lower the battery's performance.
- **The battery charger can also be used in foreign countries.**
  The battery charger is compatible with a 100 V AC to 240 V AC 50/60 Hz power source. If necessary, attach a commercially-available plug adapter for the respective country or region. Do not attach any portable voltage transformer to the battery charger. Doing so can damage the battery charger.
- **If the battery becomes exhausted quickly even after being fully charged, the battery has reached the end of its service life.**
  Check the battery's recharge performance (p.334) and purchase a new battery.

- After disconnecting the charger's power plug, do not touch the prongs for at least 3 sec.
- If the battery's remaining capacity (p.334) is 94% or higher, the battery will not be recharged.
- The charger cannot charge any battery other than Battery Pack LP-E6.

Installing and Removing the Battery

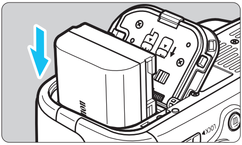
Load a fully charged Battery Pack LP-E6 into the camera.

Installing the Battery



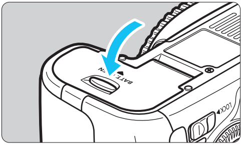
1 Open the cover.

- Slide the lever as shown by the arrows and open the cover.



2 Insert the battery.

- Insert the end with the battery contacts.
- Insert the battery until it locks in place.

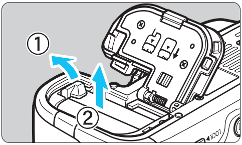


3 Close the cover.

- Press the cover until it snaps shut.

Only Battery Pack LP-E6 can be used.

Removing the Battery



Open the cover and remove the battery.

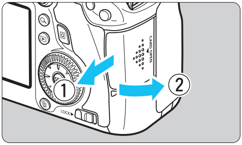
- Press the battery lock lever as shown by the arrow and remove the battery.
- To prevent short circuiting of the battery contacts, be sure to attach the provided protective cover (p.28) to the battery.

Installing and Removing the Card

The camera can use an SD, SDHC, or SDXC memory card. UHS-I Speed Class SDHC and SDXC memory cards can also be used. The captured images are recorded onto the card.

Make sure the card's write-protect switch is set upward to enable writing/erasing.

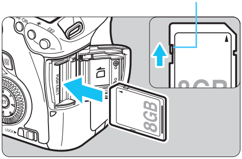
Installing the Card



1 Open the cover.

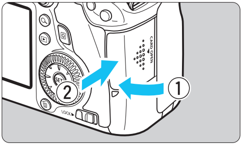
- Slide the cover as shown by the arrows to open it.

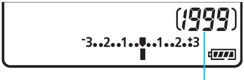
Write-protect switch



2 Insert the card.

- **As shown by the illustration, face the card's label side toward you and insert it until it clicks in place.**





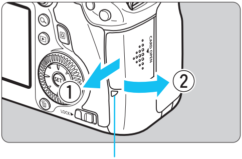
Possible shots

3 Close the cover.

- Close the cover and slide it in the direction shown by the arrows until it snaps shut.
- When you set the power switch to <ON>, the number of possible shots (p.35) will be displayed on the LCD monitor.

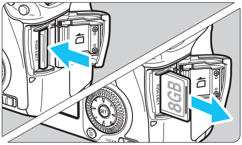
- The number of possible shots depends on the remaining capacity of the card, image-recording quality, ISO speed, etc.
- Setting [**📷1: Release shutter without card**] to [**Disable**] will prevent you from forgetting to insert a card (p.346).

Removing the Card



1 Open the cover.

- Set the power switch to <OFF>.
- **Make sure the access lamp is off, then open the cover.**
- If [**Recording...**] is displayed, close the cover.



2 Remove the card.

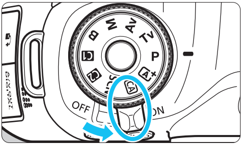
- Gently push in the card, then let go to eject it.
- Pull the card straight out, then close the cover.

- **When the access lamp is lit or blinking, it indicates that images are being written to or read by the card, being erased, or data is being transferred. Do not open the card slot cover during this time. Also, never do any of the following while the access lamp is lit or blinking. Otherwise, it can damage the image data, card, or camera.**
  - **Removing the card.**
  - **Removing the battery.**
  - **Shaking or banging the camera around.**
- If the card already contains recorded images, the image number may not start from 0001 (p.136).
- If a card-related error message is displayed on the LCD monitor, remove and reinsert the card. If the error persists, use a different card.

  If you can transfer all the images on the card to a computer, transfer all the images and then format the card with the camera (p.53). The card may then return to normal.
- Do not touch the card's contacts with your fingers or metal objects.

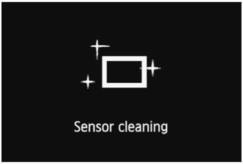
Turning on the Power

If you turn on the power switch and the Date/Time/Zone setting screen appears, see page 36 to set the Date/Time/Zone.



<ON> : The camera turns on.
<OFF> : The camera is turned off and does not operate. Set to this position when not using the camera.

About the Automatic Self-Cleaning Sensor



Sensor cleaning

- Whenever you set the power switch to <ON> or <OFF>, sensor cleaning will be executed automatically. (A small sound may be heard.) During the sensor cleaning, the LCD monitor will display <▭>.
- You can still shoot during sensor cleaning by pressing the shutter button halfway (p.44) to stop the sensor cleaning and take a picture.
- If you repeatedly turn the power switch <ON>/<OFF> at a short interval, the <▭> icon may not be displayed. This is normal and not a problem.

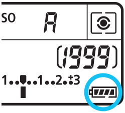
MENU About Auto Power Off

- To save battery power, the camera turns off automatically after 1 minute of non-operation. To turn on the camera again, just press the shutter button halfway (p.44).
- You can set the auto power off time with [**🔧2: Auto power off**] (p.55).

If you set the power switch to <OFF> while an image is being recorded to the card, [**Recording...**] will be displayed and the power will turn off after the card finishes recording the image.

▮▮▮▮ Checking the Battery Level

When the power switch is set to <ON>, the battery level will be indicated in one of six levels. A blinking battery icon (▮) indicates that the battery will be exhausted soon.



Icon	▮▮▮▮	▮▮▮	▮▮	▮	▮	▯
Level (%)	100 - 70	69 - 50	49 - 20	19 - 10	9 - 1	0

Number of Possible Shots [Approx. number of shots]

Temperature	Room Temperature (23°C / 73°F)	Low Temperature (0°C / 32°F)
Possible shots	1090	980

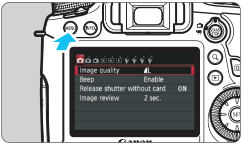
- The figures above are based on a fully-charged Battery Pack LP-E6, no Live View shooting, and CIPA (Camera & Imaging Products Association) testing standards.
- Possible shots with Battery Grip BG-E13
  - With LP-E6 x 2: approx. twice the shots without the battery grip.
  - With size-AA/LR6 alkaline batteries at room temperature (23°C / 73°F): approx. 480 shots.

- The number of possible shots will decrease with any of the following operations:
  - Pressing the shutter button halfway for a prolonged period.
  - Activating the AF frequently without taking a picture.
  - Using the lens Image Stabilizer.
  - Using the LCD monitor often.
- The number of possible shots may decrease depending on the actual shooting conditions.
- The lens operation is powered by the camera's battery. Depending on the lens used, the number of possible shots may be lower.
- For the number of possible shots with Live View shooting, see page 181.
- See [**🔧4: Battery info.**] to check the battery's condition in detail (p.334).
- If size-AA/LR6 batteries are used in Battery Grip BG-E13, a four-level indicator will be displayed. ([▮▮▮/▮] will not be displayed.)

MENU Setting the Date, Time, and Zone

When you turn on the power for the first time or if the date/time/zone have been reset, the Date/Time/Zone setting screens will appear. Follow the steps below to set the time zone first. If you set the camera to the correct time zone for where you currently live, when you travel to another time zone you can simply set the camera to the correct time zone for your destination to update the camera's date/time automatically.

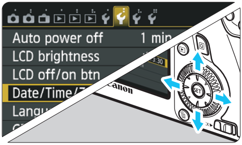
Note that the date/time appended to recorded images will be based on this date/time setting. Be sure to set the correct date/time.



MENU
INFO
START/STOP
SET
Image quality
Beep
Enable
Release shutter without card
ON
Image review
2 sec.
Canon

1 Display the menu screen.

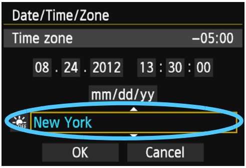
- Press the <MENU> button to display the menu screen.



Auto power off
1 min
LCD brightness
LCD off/on btn
Date/Time/Z
Langu
SET
Canon

2 Under the [🔧2] tab, select [Date/Time/Zone].

- Press the <◄►> key to select the [🔧2] tab.
- Press the <▲▼> key to select [**Date/Time/Zone**], then press <SET>.



Date/Time/Zone

Time zone –05:00

08 . 24 . 2012 13 : 30 : 00

mm/dd/yy

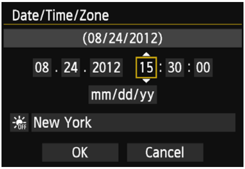
New York

OK Cancel

3 Set the time zone.

- **[London] is set by default.**
- Press the <◄►> key to select the time zone box.
- Press <SET> so <⬍> is displayed.
- Press the <▲▼> key to select the time zone, then press <SET>. (Returns to <□>.)

- The menu setting procedure is explained on pages 51-52.
- The time displayed on the upper right is the time difference compared with Coordinated Universal Time (UTC). If you do not see your time zone, set the time zone while referring to the difference with UTC.



Date/Time/Zone

(08/24/2012)

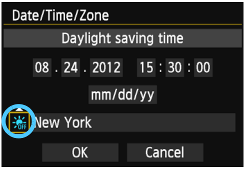
08 . 24 . 2012 15 : 30 : 00

mm/dd/yy

☀OFF New York

4 Set the date and time.

- Press the <◄►> key to select the number.
- Press <SET> so <⬍> is displayed.
- Press the <▲▼> key to set the number, then press <SET>. (Returns to <□>.)



Date/Time/Zone

Daylight saving time

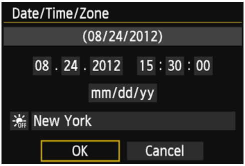
08 . 24 . 2012 15 : 30 : 00

mm/dd/yy

☀OFF New York

5 Set the Daylight Saving Time.

- Set it if necessary.
- Press the <◄►> key to select [☀OFF].
- Press <SET> so <⬍> is displayed.
- Press the <▲▼> key to select [☀], then press <SET>.
- When the daylight saving time is set to [☀], the time set in step 4 will advance by 1 hour. If [☀OFF] is set, the daylight saving time will be canceled and the time will go back by 1 hour.



Date/Time/Zone

(08/24/2012)

08 . 24 . 2012 15 : 30 : 00

mm/dd/yy

☀OFF New York

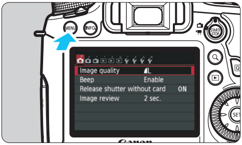
6 Exit the setting.

- Press the <◄►> key to select [**OK**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The Date/Time/Zone and daylight saving time will be set and the menu will reappear.

If you store the camera without the battery or if the camera's battery becomes exhausted, the date/time/zone may be reset. If this happens, set the time zone and date/time again.

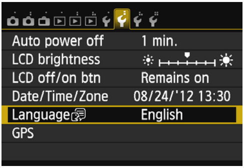
- The date/time that was set will start from when you press <SET> in step 6.
- After changing the time zone, check that the correct date/time has been set.

MENU Selecting the Interface Language

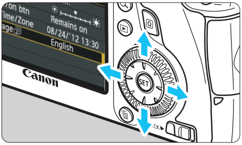

MENU
INFO.
Image quality
Beep Enable
Release shutter without card ON
Image review 2 sec.
Canon

1 Display the menu screen.

- Press the <MENU> button to display the menu screen.

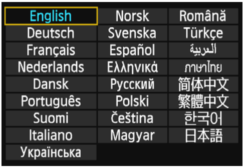


Auto power off	1 min.
LCD brightness	
LCD off/on btn	Remains on
Date/Time/Zone	08/24/'12 13:30
Language	English
GPS	



2 Under the [🔧2] tab, select [Language].

- Press the <◄►> key to select the [🔧2] tab.
- Press the <▲▼> key to select [Language], then press <SET>.



English
Deutsch
Français
Nederlands
Dansk
Português
Suomi
Italiano
Українська
Norsk
Svenska
Español
Ελληνικά
Русский
Polski
Čeština
Magyar
Română
Türkçe
العربية
ภาษาไทย
简体中文
繁體中文
한국어
日本語

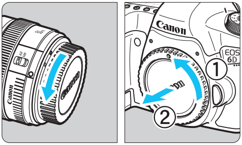
3 Set the desired language.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select the language, then press <SET>.

▶ The interface language will change.

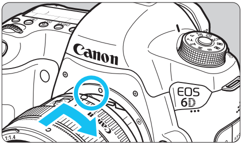
Attaching and Detaching a Lens

The camera is compatible with all Canon EF lenses. **The camera cannot be used with EF-S and EF-M lenses.**



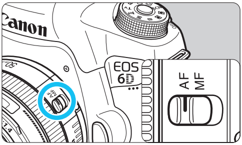
1 Remove the caps.

- Remove the rear lens cap and the body cap by turning them as shown by the arrows.



2 Attach the lens.

- Align the red dots on the lens and camera and turn the lens as shown by the arrow until it clicks in place.



3 Set the lens focus mode switch to <AF>.

- <**AF**> stands for Autofocus.
- If it is set to <**MF**> (manual focus), autofocus will not operate.

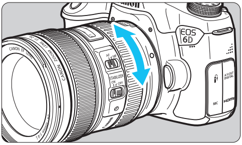
4 Remove the front lens cap.

Minimizing Dust

- When changing lenses, do it quickly in a place with minimal dust.
- When storing the camera without a lens attached, be sure to attach the body cap to the camera.
- Remove dust on the body cap before attaching it.

- Do not look at the sun directly through any lens. Doing so may cause loss of vision.
- If the front part (focusing ring) of the lens rotates during autofocusing, do not touch the rotating part.

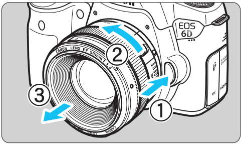
About Zooming



To zoom, turn the zoom ring on the lens with your fingers.

If you want to zoom, do it before focusing. Turning the zoom ring after achieving focus may throw off the focus slightly.

Detaching the Lens



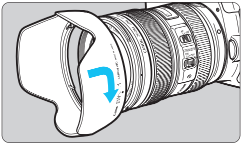
While pressing the lens release button, turn the lens as shown by the arrows.

- Turn the lens until it stops, then detach it.
- Attach the rear lens cap to the detached lens.

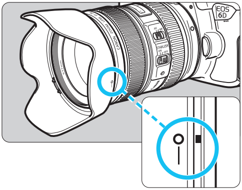
Attaching a Lens Hood

A lens hood can block unwanted light and protect the front of the lens from rain, snow, dust, etc. Before storing the lens in a bag, etc., you can attach the hood in reverse.

If the Lens Hood and Lens Have a Mount Index



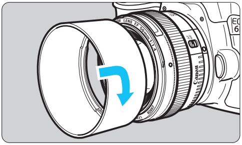
1 Align the red dots on the hood and lens edges, and turn the hood as shown by the arrow.



2 Turn the hood as shown in the illustration.

- Turn the hood clockwise until it attaches securely.

If Neither the Lens Hood Nor the Lens Have a Mount Index



Attach the hood.

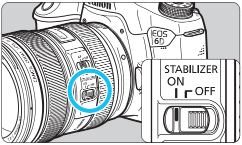
- Turn the hood as shown by the arrow until it attaches securely.

- If the lens has a mount index and you do not attach the hood properly, it may obstruct the image's periphery, making it look dark.
- When attaching or detaching the hood, grasp the base of the hood when turning it. Grasping the hood's edges when turning it may deform the hood, resulting in failure to turn.

About the Lens Image Stabilizer

When you use the IS lens' built-in Image Stabilizer, camera shake is corrected to obtain a sharper shot. The procedure explained here is based on the EF24-105mm f/4L IS USM lens as an example.

* IS stands for Image Stabilizer.



1 Set the Image Stabilizer switch to <ON>.

- Also set the camera's power switch to <ON>.

2 Press the shutter button halfway.

▶ The Image Stabilizer will operate.

3 Take the picture.

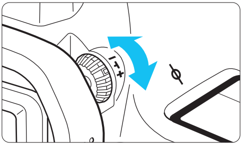
- When the picture looks steady in the viewfinder, press the shutter button completely to take the picture.

- The Image Stabilizer cannot correct "subject blur", when the subject moves at the time of exposure.
- For bulb exposures, set the IS switch to <OFF>. If <ON> is set, Image Stabilizer misoperation may occur.
- The Image Stabilizer may not be effective for excessive shaking such as on a rocking boat.
- The Image Stabilizer may not be effective when you use the EF24-105mm f/4L IS USM lens for panned shots.

- The Image Stabilizer can operate with the lens focus mode switch set to either <**AF**> or <**MF**>.
- When using a tripod, you can still shoot with the IS switch set to <ON> with no problem. However, to save battery power, setting the IS switch to <OFF> is recommended.
- The Image Stabilizer is effective even when the camera is mounted on a monopod.

Basic Operation

Adjusting the Viewfinder Clarity



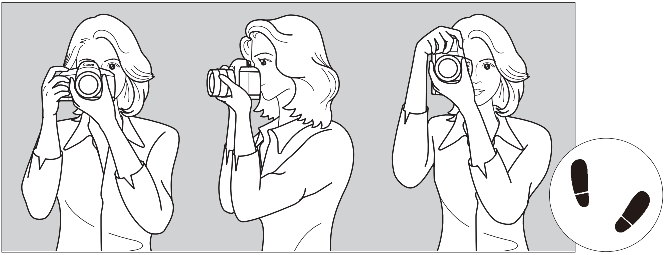
Turn the dioptric adjustment knob.

- Turn the knob left or right so that the AF points in the viewfinder look sharp.
- If the knob is difficult to turn, remove the eyecup (p.166).

If the camera's dioptric adjustment still cannot provide a sharp viewfinder image, using E-series Dioptric Adjustment Lenses (10 types, sold separately) is recommended.

Holding the Camera

To obtain sharp images, hold the camera still to minimize camera shake.



Horizontal shooting

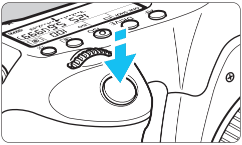
Vertical shooting

1. Wrap your right hand around the camera grip firmly.
2. Hold the lens bottom with your left hand.
3. Rest your hand's right index finger lightly on the shutter button.
4. Press your arms and elbows lightly against the front of your body.
5. To maintain a stable stance, place one foot slightly ahead of the other.
6. Press the camera against your face and look through the viewfinder.

To shoot while looking at the LCD monitor, see page 179.

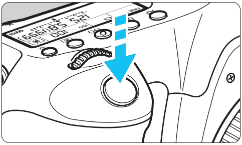
Shutter Button

The shutter button has two steps. You can press the shutter button halfway. Then you can further press the shutter button completely.



Pressing halfway

This activates autofocusing and the automatic exposure system that sets the shutter speed and aperture.
The exposure setting (shutter speed and aperture) is displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel (⏱4).



Pressing completely

This releases the shutter and takes the picture.

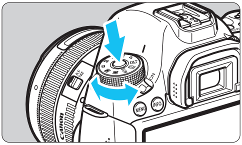
Preventing Camera Shake

Hand-held camera movement during the moment of exposure is called camera shake. It can cause blurred pictures. To prevent camera shake, note the following:

- Hold and steady the camera as shown on the preceding page.
- Press the shutter button halfway to autofocus, then slowly press the shutter button completely.

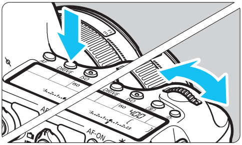
- In Creative Zone modes, pressing the <AF-ON> button is the same as pressing the shutter button halfway.
- If you press the shutter button completely without pressing it halfway first or if you press the shutter button halfway and then press it completely immediately, the camera will take a moment before it takes the picture.
- Even during menu display, image playback, or image recording, you can instantly go back to shooting-ready by pressing the shutter button halfway.

Mode Dial



Turn the dial while holding down the lock release button at the center of the dial.

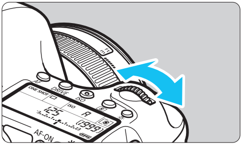
⚙ Main Dial



(1) After pressing a button, turn the <⚙> dial.

When you press a button such as <AF> <DRIVE> <ISO>, the respective function remains selected for the duration of the timer (⏱6). During this time, you can turn the <⚙> dial to set the desired setting.
When the function selection ends or if you press the shutter button halfway, the camera will be ready to shoot.

- Use this dial to select or set the AF operation, drive mode, ISO speed, metering mode, AF point selection, etc.



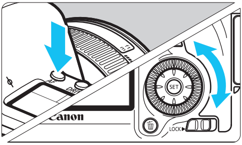
(2) Turn the <⚙> dial only.

While looking at the viewfinder or LCD panel, turn the <⚙> dial to set the desired setting.

- Use this dial to set the shutter speed, aperture, etc.

The operations in (1) are also possible while the <LOCK▶> switch is set to the right (Multi function lock, p.47).

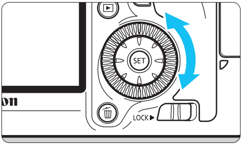
◎ Quick Control Dial



(1) After pressing a button, turn the <◎> dial.

When you press a button such as <AF> <DRIVE> <ISO>, the respective function remains selected for the duration of the timer (⏱6). During this time, you can turn the <◎> dial to set the desired setting.
When the function selection ends or if you press the shutter button halfway, the camera will be ready to shoot.

- Use this dial to select or set the AF operation, drive mode, ISO speed, metering mode, AF point selection, etc.



(2) Turn the <◎> dial only.

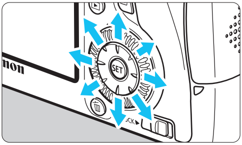
While looking at the viewfinder or LCD panel, turn the <◎> dial to set the desired setting.

- Use this dial to set the exposure compensation amount, the aperture setting for manual exposures, etc.

The operations in (1) are also possible while the <LOCK▶> switch is set to the right (Multi function lock, p.47).

✥ Multi-controller

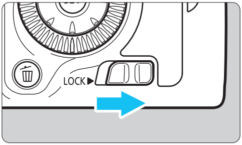
The Multi-controller <✥> has eight keys which tilt in the directions shown by the arrows.



- Use the eight keys to select the AF point, correct the white balance, move the AF point or magnifying frame during Live View shooting, scroll around magnified images during playback, etc.
- For menus and the Quick Control, the Multi-controller works only in the vertical and horizontal directions <▲▼> <◀▶>. It does not work in diagonal directions.

LOCK▶ Multi function Lock

With [**C.Fn III -3: Multi function lock**] set (p.313) and the <LOCK▶> switch set to the right, it prevents the Main Dial, Quick Control Dial, and Multi-controller from moving and changing a setting inadvertently.

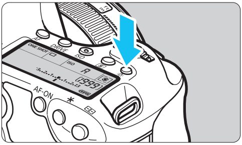


<LOCK▶> switch set to the left: Lock released

<LOCK▶> switch set to the right: Lock engaged

If the <LOCK▶> switch is set to the right and you try to use one of the locked camera controls, <**L**> will be displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel. On the shooting function settings display (p.48), [**LOCK**] will be displayed.

☼ LCD Panel Illumination


AF
DRIVE
ISO
ONE SHOT
AF-ON

Turn on (⏱6)/off the LCD panel illumination by pressing the <☼> button. During a bulb exposure, pressing the shutter button completely will turn off the LCD panel illumination.

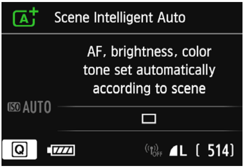
Displaying Shooting Function Settings

After you press the <INFO.> button a number of times, the shooting function settings will be displayed.

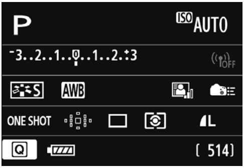
With the shooting settings displayed, you can turn the Mode Dial to see the settings for each shooting mode (p.333).

Pressing the <Q> button enables Quick Control of the shooting function settings (p.49).

Press the <INFO.> button again to turn off the display.

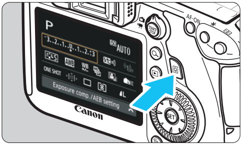

Scene Intelligent Auto

AF, brightness, color tone set automatically according to scene
A+
ISO AUTO
Q
L
[514]


P
ISO AUTO
-3..2..1..0..1..2.+3
OFF
S
AWB
ONE SHOT
L
Q
[514]

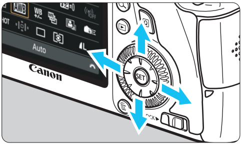
Q Quick Control for Shooting Functions

You can directly select and set the shooting functions displayed on the LCD monitor. This is called the Quick Control screen.


P
ISO AUTO
ONE SHOT
Exposure comp./AEB setting
Canon
AF-ON
SET

1 Press the <Q> button.

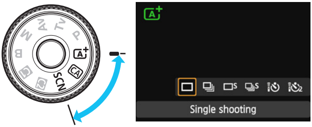
- ▶ The Quick Control screen will appear (⏱10).


AWB
WB
Auto
Canon
SET

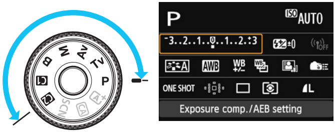
2 Set the desired function.

- Press the <▲▼> <◄►> key to select a function.
- ▶ The setting of the selected function is displayed.
- Turn the <⚙> or <◎> dial to change the setting.

Basic Zone modes


M
Av
Tv
P
B
SCN
CA
A+
Single shooting

Creative Zone modes

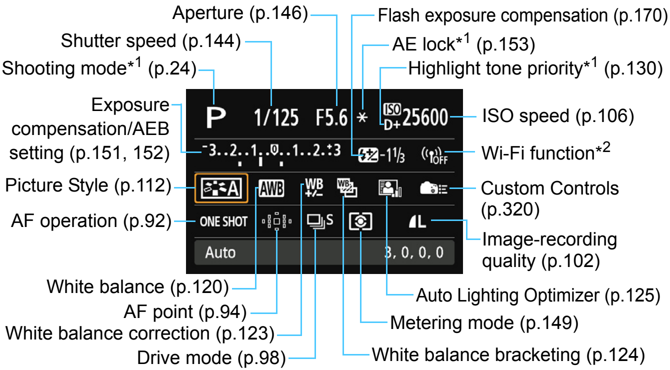

B
M
Av
Tv
P
SCN
CA
A+
P
ISO AUTO
-3..2..1..0..1..2.:3
±0
AWB
WB
ONE SHOT
L
Exposure comp./AEB setting

3 Take the picture.

- Press the shutter button completely to take the picture.
- ▶ The captured image will be displayed.

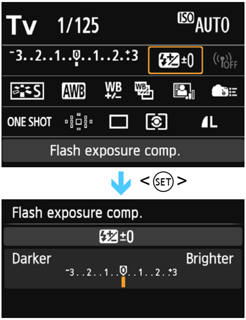
For the functions settable in Basic Zone modes and the setting procedure, see page 83.

Sample Quick Control Screen


Aperture (p.146)
Shutter speed (p.144)
Shooting mode*1 (p.24)
Flash exposure compensation (p.170)
AE lock*1 (p.153)
Highlight tone priority*1 (p.130)
Exposure compensation/AEB setting (p.151, 152)
ISO speed (p.106)
Wi-Fi function*2
Picture Style (p.112)
Custom Controls (p.320)
AF operation (p.92)
Image-recording quality (p.102)
P
1/125
F5.6
✱
ISO D+ 25600
-3..2..1..0..1..2..+3
-1⅓
ONE SHOT
AWB
Auto
3, 0, 0, 0
White balance (p.120)
AF point (p.94)
White balance correction (p.123)
Drive mode (p.98)
Auto Lighting Optimizer (p.125)
Metering mode (p.149)
White balance bracketing (p.124)

*1: These functions cannot be set with the Quick Control screen.
*2: Refer to the Wi-Fi Function Instruction Manual for Wi-Fi function settings.

Function Setting Screen


Tv
1/125
ISO AUTO
-3..2..1..0..1..2..+3
±0
AWB
ONE SHOT
<SET>

Flash exposure comp.

Flash exposure comp.

±0

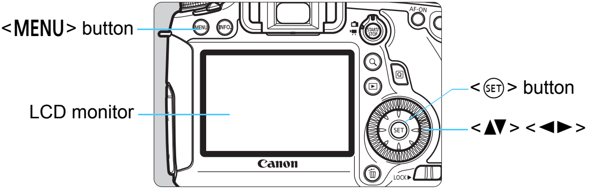
Darker
Brighter

-3..2..1..0..1..2..+3

- Select the desired function and press <SET>. The function's setting screen will appear.
- Turn the <◠> or <◯> dial to change the setting. You can also press the <◄►> key to change some of the settings. Also, some functions can be set by pressing the <**INFO.**> button.
- Press <SET> to finalize the setting and return to the Quick Control screen.
- When you select <📷☰> (Custom Controls, p.320) or <⁞⊡⁞> (AF point, p.94) and press the <**MENU**> button, the shooting function settings display will reappear.

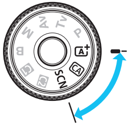
MENU Menu Operations

You can set various settings with the menus such as the image-recording quality, date/time, etc. While looking at the LCD monitor, use the <MENU> button, <▲▼> <◄►> keys, and <SET> button on the camera back.



<MENU> button
LCD monitor
<SET> button
<▲▼> <◄►>

Menus in Basic Zone Modes



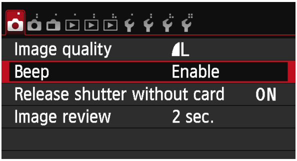
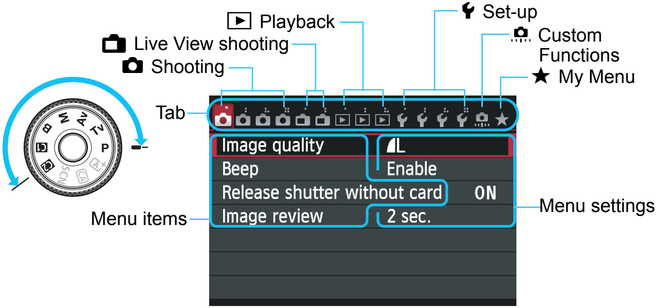


Image quality ◢L
Beep Enable
Release shutter without card ON
Image review 2 sec.

*** Some menu tabs and menu items are not displayed in Basic Zone modes.**

Menus in Creative Zone Modes



▶ Playback
Live View shooting
Shooting
Set-up
Custom Functions
★ My Menu
Tab
Menu items
Menu settings

Image quality ◢L
Beep Enable
Release shutter without card ON
Image review 2 sec.

Menu Setting Procedure

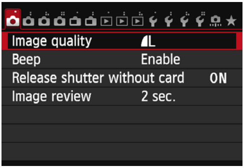


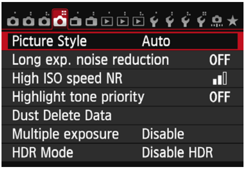
Image quality L
Beep Enable
Release shutter without card ON
Image review 2 sec.

1 Display the menu screen.

- Press the <MENU> button to display the menu screen.

2 Select a tab.

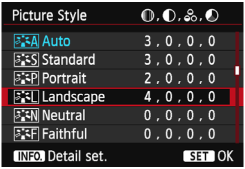
- Press the <◄►> key to select a menu tab.
- For example, the [📷**4**] tab refers to the screen displayed when the forth tab from the left [📷::] is selected.



Picture Style Auto
Long exp. noise reduction OFF
High ISO speed NR
Highlight tone priority OFF
Dust Delete Data
Multiple exposure Disable
HDR Mode Disable HDR

3 Select the desired item.

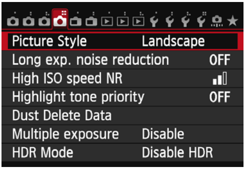
- Press the <▲▼> key to select the item, then press <SET>.



Picture Style	◑, ◐, ♣, ◐
Auto	3 , 0 , 0 , 0
Standard	3 , 0 , 0 , 0
Portrait	2 , 0 , 0 , 0
Landscape	4 , 0 , 0 , 0
Neutral	0 , 0 , 0 , 0
Faithful	0 , 0 , 0 , 0

4 Select the setting.

- Press the <▲▼> or <◄►> key to select the desired setting. (Some settings require you to press either the <▲▼> or <◄►> key to select them.)
- The current setting is indicated in blue.



Picture Style Landscape
Long exp. noise reduction OFF
High ISO speed NR
Highlight tone priority OFF
Dust Delete Data
Multiple exposure Disable
HDR Mode Disable HDR

5 Set the desired setting.

- Press <SET> to set it.

6 Exit the setting.

- Press the <MENU> button to return to the shooting function settings display.

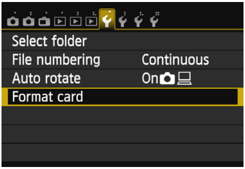
- In step 2, you can also turn the <⚙> dial to select a menu tab. In step 4, you can also turn the <◎> dial to select certain settings.
- The explanation of menu functions hereinafter assumes that you have pressed the <MENU> button to display the menu screen.
- To cancel, press the <MENU> button.
- For details about each menu item, see page 346.

Before You Start

MENU Formatting the Card

If the card is new or was previously formatted by another camera or computer, format the card with the camera.

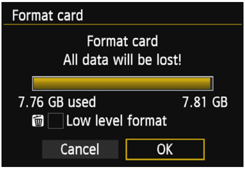
When the card is formatted, all images and data in the card will be erased. Even protected images will be erased, so make sure there is nothing you need to keep. If necessary, transfer the images and data to a computer, etc., before formatting the card.



Select folder
File numbering Continuous
Auto rotate On
Format card

1 Select [Format card].

- Under the [🔧**1**] tab, select [**Format card**], then press <SET>.



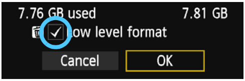
Format card

Format card
All data will be lost!

7.76 GB used 7.81 GB
☐ Low level format
Cancel OK

2 Format the card.

- Select [**OK**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The card will be formatted.
- ▶ When the formatting is completed, the menu will reappear.



7.76 GB used 7.81 GB
☑ Low level format
Cancel OK

- For low-level formatting, press the <🗑> button to append [**Low level format**] with a checkmark <✓>, then select [**OK**].

Execute [Format card] in the following cases:

- **The card is new.**
- **The card was formatted by a different camera or a computer.**
- **The card is full with images or data.**
- **A card-related error is displayed** (p.370)**.**

About Low-level Formatting

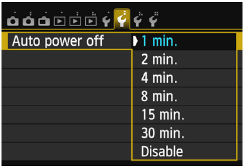
- Perform low-level formatting if the card's recording or reading speed seems slow or if you want to totally erase data in the card.
- Since low-level formatting will format all recordable sectors in the card, the formatting will take slightly longer than normal formatting.
- You can stop the low-level formatting by selecting [**Cancel**]. Even in this case, normal formatting will be completed and you can use the card as usual.

- Cards with 128 GB or lower capacity will be formatted in FAT format. Cards with a capacity higher than 128 GB will be formatted in exFAT format. If you format a card with a capacity higher than 128 GB with this camera and then insert it into another camera, an error may be displayed and you may not be able to use the card. Also, depending on the computer's OS or card reader, it may not recognize a card formatted in exFAT format.
- When the card is formatted or data is erased, only the file management information is changed. The actual data is not completely erased. Be aware of this when selling or discarding the card. When discarding the card, execute low-level formatting or destroy the card physically to prevent the personal data from being leaked.
- **Before using a new Eye-Fi card, the software in the card must be installed in your computer. Then format the card with the camera.**

- The card capacity displayed on the card format screen may be smaller than the capacity indicated on the card.
- This device incorporates exFAT technology licensed from Microsoft.

MENU Setting the Power-off Time/Auto Power Off

To save battery power, the camera turns off automatically after a set time of idle operation elapses. If you do not want the camera to turn off automatically, set this to [**Disable**]. After the power turns off, you can turn on the camera again by pressing the shutter button or other buttons.



1 Select [Auto power off].

- Under the [🔧**2**] tab, select [**Auto power off**], then press <SET>.

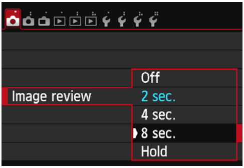
2 Set the desired time.

- Select the desired setting, then press <SET>.

Even if [**Disable**] is set, the LCD monitor will turn off automatically after 30 min. to save power. (The camera's power does not turn off.)

MENU Setting the Image Review Time

You can set how long the image is displayed on the LCD monitor immediately after capture. To keep the image displayed, set [**Hold**]. To not have the image displayed, set [**Off**].



1 Select [Image review].

- Under the [📷**1**] tab, select [**Image review**], then press <SET>.

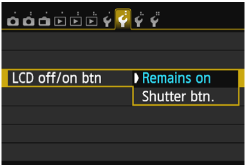
2 Set the desired time.

- Select the desired setting, then press <SET>.

If [**Hold**] is set, the image will be displayed until the auto power off time elapses.

MENU Turning the LCD Monitor Off/On

The shooting settings display (p.48) can be set to remain on even when you press the shutter button halfway.

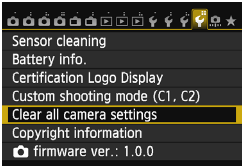

LCD off/on btn
Remains on
Shutter btn.

Under the [🔧2] tab, select [**LCD off/on btn**], then press <SET>. The available settings are described below. Select one, then press <SET>.

- **[Remains on]** : Display remains on even when you press the shutter button halfway. To turn off display, press the <INFO.> button.
- **[Shutter btn.]** : When you press the shutter button halfway, the display will turn off. When you let go of the shutter button, the display will turn on.

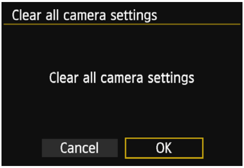
MENU Reverting the Camera to the Default Settings ☆

The camera's shooting settings and menu settings can be reverted to their defaults.


Sensor cleaning
Battery info.
Certification Logo Display
Custom shooting mode (C1, C2)
Clear all camera settings
Copyright information
firmware ver.: 1.0.0

1 Select [Clear all camera settings].

- Under the [🔧4] tab, select [**Clear all camera settings**], then press <SET>.


Clear all camera settings
Clear all camera settings
Cancel
OK

2 Select [OK].

- Select [**OK**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ Setting [**Clear all camera settings**] will reset the camera to the following default settings:

Shooting Settings

AF operation	One-Shot AF
AF point selection	Automatic selection
Metering mode	◉ (Evaluative metering)
ISO speed	Auto
ISO speed range	Minimum limit: 100 Maximum limit: 25600
Auto ISO range	Minimum limit: 100 Maximum limit: 12800
ISO Auto minimum shutter speed	Auto

Drive mode	□ (Single shooting)
Exposure compensation/AEB	Canceled
Flash exposure compensation	0 (Zero)
Multiple exposure	Disable
HDR Mode	Disable HDR
Mirror lockup	Disable
Custom Functions	Unchanged
Flash function settings	Unchanged

Image-recording Settings

Image quality	◢L
Picture Style	Auto
Auto Lighting Optimizer	Standard
Peripheral illumination correction	Enable/ Correction data retained
Chromatic aberration correction	Enable/ Correction data retained
White balance	AWB (Auto)
Custom White Balance	Canceled
White balance correction	Canceled
White balance bracketing	Canceled
Color space	sRGB
Long exposure noise reduction	Disable
High ISO speed noise reduction	Standard
Highlight tone priority	Disable
File numbering	Continuous
Auto cleaning	Enable
Dust Delete Data	Erase

Camera Settings

Auto power off	1 min.
Beep	Enable
Release shutter without card	Enable
Image review	2 sec.
Highlight alert	Disable
AF point display	Disable
Playback grid	Off
Histogram display	Brightness
Magnification (Approx.)	2x
Control over HDMI	Disable
Image jump w/ ⚙	↷10 (10 images)
Auto rotate	On 📷 💻
LCD brightness	☼ ├┼┼▼┼┼┼┤ ☀
LCD off/on button	Remains on
Date/Time/Zone	Unchanged
Language	Unchanged
Video system	Unchanged
Feature guide	Enable
INFO button display options	All items selected
Custom shooting mode	Unchanged
Copyright information	Unchanged
Eye-Fi transmission	Disable
My Menu settings	Unchanged
Display from My Menu	Disable
GPS	Disable
Wi-Fi	Disable

Wi-Fi and GPS settings are explained in their respective instruction manuals.

Live View Shooting Settings

Live View shooting	Enable
AF method	FlexiZone - Single
Grid display	Off
Aspect ratio	3:2
Exposure simulation	Enable
Silent LV shooting	Mode 1
Metering timer	16 sec.

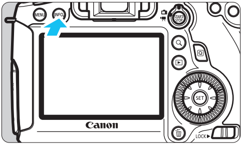
Movie Shooting Settings

AF method	FlexiZone - Single
Silent LV shooting	Mode 1
Metering timer	16 sec.
Grid display	Off
Movie recording size	1920x1080/IPB
Sound recording	Auto
Time code	
Count up	Unchanged
Start time setting	Unchanged
Movie recording count	Unchanged
Movie playback count	Unchanged
Drop frame	Unchanged
Video snapshot	Disable

Displaying the Electronic Level

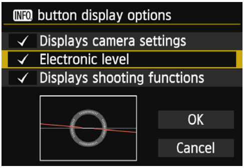
You can display the electronic level on the LCD monitor, and in the viewfinder or on the LCD panel to help correct camera tilt. Note that you can check only the horizontal tilt and not the forward/backward tilt.

Displaying the Electronic Level on the LCD Monitor



1 Press the <INFO.> button.

- Each time you press the <INFO.> button, the screen display will change.
- Display the electronic level.



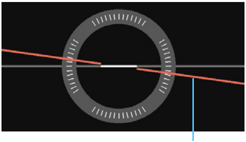
INFO. button display options

✓ Displays camera settings

✓ Electronic level

✓ Displays shooting functions

- If the electronic level does not appear, set [🔧**3: INFO. button display options**] so that the electronic level can be displayed (p.332).



Horizontal level

2 Check the camera's tilt.

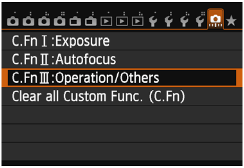
- The horizontal tilt is displayed in 1° increments.
- When the red line turns green, it indicates that the tilt is corrected.

- Even when the tilt is corrected, there may be a margin of error of ±1°.
- If the camera is very tilted, the electronic level's margin of error will be bigger.

With this same procedure, you can display the electronic level during Live View shooting and before shooting a movie (p.182, 210). Note that the electronic level cannot be displayed during movie shooting. (The electronic level will disappear when you start shooting a movie.)

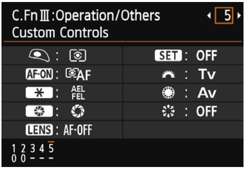
Displaying the Electronic Level in the Viewfinder

The electronic level display in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel uses the exposure level indicator. Note that the electronic level is only displayed when shooting in horizontal orientation. It is not displayed in vertical orientation.


C.Fn I :Exposure
C.Fn II :Autofocus
C.Fn III :Operation/Others
Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)

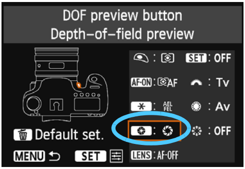
1 Select Custom Functions III.

- Under the [📷] tab, select [**C.Fn III: Operation/Others**], then press <SET>.


C.Fn III :Operation/Others
5
Custom Controls
SET : OFF
AF-ON : AF
AEL FEL
Tv
Av
OFF
LENS : AF-OFF
1 2 3 4 5
0 0 - - -

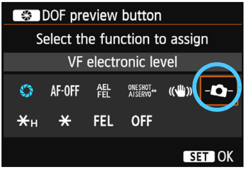
2 Select C.Fn III -5 [Custom Controls].

- Press the <◄►> key to select [**5: Custom Controls**], then press <SET>.


DOF preview button
Depth-of-field preview
SET : OFF
AF-ON : AF
Tv
AEL FEL
Av
OFF
Default set.
MENU ↩
SET
LENS : AF-OFF

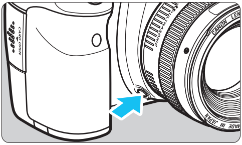
3 Select [◉].

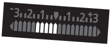
- Select [◉: **DOF preview button**], then press <SET>.


DOF preview button
Select the function to assign
VF electronic level
AF-OFF
AEL FEL
ONESHOT AISERVO
-📷-
✱H
✱
FEL
OFF
SET OK

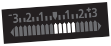
4 Select [-📷-].

- Select [-📷-: **VF electronic level**], then press <SET>.
- Press the <MENU> button to exit the menu.

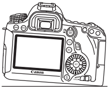


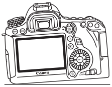


4° right tilt



4° left tilt





5 Display the electronic level.

- Press the Depth-of-field preview button.
- ▶ The horizontal tilt up to ±9° in 1° increments will be displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel using the exposure level indicator.
- Pressing the shutter button halfway displays the exposure level.

- Even when the tilt is corrected, there may be a margin of error of ±1°.
- If the camera is very tilted, the electronic level’s margin of error will be bigger.
- If the Depth-of-field preview button has been assigned with the [**VF electronic level**], depth-of-field preview will not work.

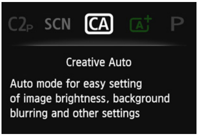
Feature Guide and Help

While you set some function, the feature's description can be displayed.

Feature Guide

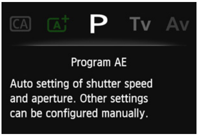
The Feature guide displays a simple description of the respective shooting mode, function or option. It appears when you change the shooting mode or set a shooting function, Live View shooting, Movie shooting, or Quick Control for playback. When you select a function or option on the Quick Control screen, the Feature guide description appears. When you proceed with the operation, the Feature guide will disappear.

- **Shooting mode** (Sample)



Creative Auto

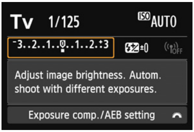
Auto mode for easy setting of image brightness, background blurring and other settings



Program AE

Auto setting of shutter speed and aperture. Other settings can be configured manually.

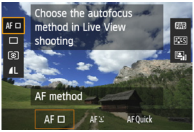
- **Quick Control** (Sample)



Adjust image brightness. Autom. shoot with different exposures.

Exposure comp./AEB setting

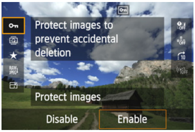
Shooting settings



Choose the autofocus method in Live View shooting

AF method

Live View shooting



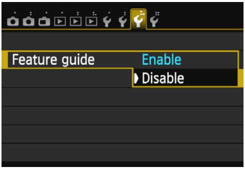
Protect images to prevent accidental deletion

Protect images

Disable Enable

Playback

MENU Disabling the Feature Guide



Feature guide Enable

Disable

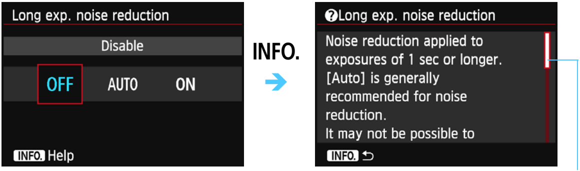
Select [Feature guide].

- Under the [🔧3] tab, select [**Feature guide**], then press <SET>.
- Select [**Disable**], then press <SET>.

? Help

When [INFO. **Help**] is displayed at the bottom of the menu screen, pressing the <INFO.> button displays the function's description (Help). If the Help fills more than one screen, a scroll bar will appear on the right edge. You can turn the <◎> dial to scroll down.

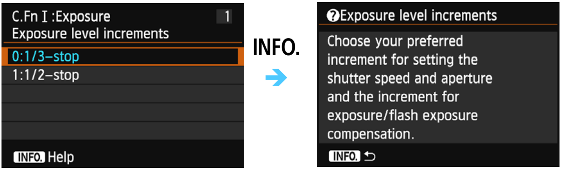
- **Example: [📷4: Long exp. noise reduction]**


Long exp. noise reduction
Disable
OFF
AUTO
ON
INFO. Help
INFO. →
?Long exp. noise reduction
INFO. ⮌

Noise reduction applied to exposures of 1 sec or longer. [Auto] is generally recommended for noise reduction. It may not be possible to

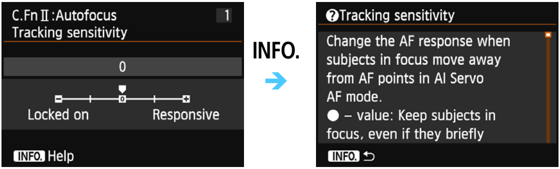
Scroll bar

- **Example: [C.Fn I -1: Exposure level increments]**


C.Fn I :Exposure
1
Exposure level increments
0:1/3-stop
1:1/2-stop
INFO. Help
INFO. →
?Exposure level increments
INFO. ⮌

Choose your preferred increment for setting the shutter speed and aperture and the increment for exposure/flash exposure compensation.

- **Example: [C.Fn II -1: Tracking sensitivity]**


C.Fn II :Autofocus
1
Tracking sensitivity
0
Locked on
Responsive
INFO. Help
INFO. →
?Tracking sensitivity
INFO. ⮌

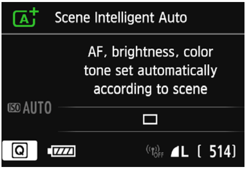
Change the AF response when subjects in focus move away from AF points in AI Servo AF mode.
● – value: Keep subjects in focus, even if they briefly

2

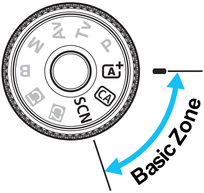
Basic Shooting

This chapter explains how to use the Basic Zone modes on the Mode Dial for best results.

With Basic Zone modes, all you do is point and shoot while the camera sets everything automatically (p.83, 342). Also, to prevent botched pictures due to mistaken operations, the main shooting function settings cannot be changed.

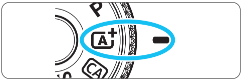

Scene Intelligent Auto

AF, brightness, color tone set automatically according to scene



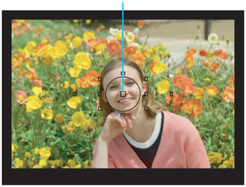
A+ Fully Automatic Shooting (Scene Intelligent Auto)

<A+> is a fully automatic mode. The camera analyzes the scene and sets the optimum settings automatically. It also adjusts focus automatically by detecting whether the subject is still or moving (p.69).



1 Set the Mode Dial to <A+>.

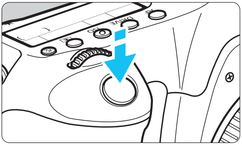
- Turn the Mode Dial while holding down the lock release button at the center.

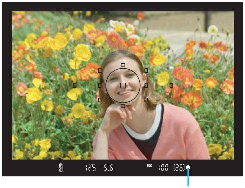


AF point

2 Aim any AF point over the subject.

- All the AF points will be used to focus, and generally the closest object will be focused.
- Aiming the center AF point over the subject will make focusing easier.



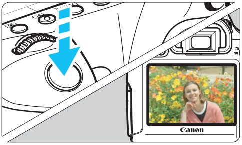


Focus confirmation light

3 Focus the subject.

- Press the shutter button halfway, and the lens focusing ring will rotate to focus.

▶ The AF point achieving focus flashes briefly in red. At the same time, the beeper will sound and the focus confirmation light <●> in the viewfinder will light up.



4 Take the picture.

- Press the shutter button completely to take the picture.
- ▶ The captured image will be displayed for 2 sec. on the LCD monitor.

The <A+> mode makes the colors look more impressive in nature, outdoor, and sunset scenes. If the desired color tone is not obtained, use a Creative Zone mode and select a Picture Style other than <A> and shoot (p.112).

? FAQ

- **The focus confirmation light <●> blinks and focus is not achieved.**
  Aim the AF point over an area having good contrast, then press the shutter button halfway (p.44). If you are too close to the subject, move away and try again.
- **Multiple AF points flash simultaneously.**
  This indicates that focus is achieved at all those AF points. When the AF point covering the desired subject flashes, take the picture.
- **The beeper continues to beep softly. (The focus confirmation light <●> does not light up.)**
  It indicates that the camera is focusing continuously on a moving subject. (The focus confirmation light <●> does not light up.) You can take sharp pictures of a moving subject.
  Note that focus lock (p.69) will not work in this case.
- **Pressing the shutter button halfway does not focus the subject.**
  If the focus mode switch on the lens is set to <**MF**> (manual focus), set it to <**AF**> (autofocus).

- **The shutter speed display is blinking.**
  Since it is too dark, taking the picture may result in a blurred subject due to camera shake. Using a tripod or a Canon EX-series Speedlite (p.170) (sold separately) is recommended.
- **When the external flash was used, the bottom part of the picture came out unnaturally dark.**
  If a hood is attached to the lens, it can obstruct the flash coverage. If the subject is close, detach the hood before taking the picture with flash.

In Basic Zone modes except < >, using a Canon EX-series Speedlite (sold separately) in low-light or backlit conditions can capture the subject brightly while avoiding camera shake or reduce backlit shadows.

A+ Full Auto Techniques (Scene Intelligent Auto)

Recomposing the Shot

Depending on the scene, position the subject toward the left or right to create a balanced background and good perspective.

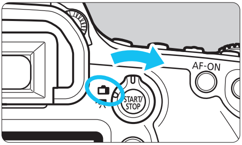
In the <A+> mode, while you press the shutter button halfway to focus a still subject, the focus will be locked. You can then recompose the shot and press the shutter button completely to take the picture. This is called “focus lock”. Focus lock is also possible in other Basic Zone modes (except <🏃> Sports).

Shooting a Moving Subject

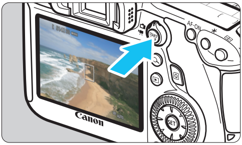
In the <A+> mode, if the subject moves (distance to camera changes) while or after you focus, AI Servo AF will take effect to focus the subject continuously. (The beeper will continue beeping softly.) As long as you keep aiming the AF point on the subject while pressing the shutter button halfway, the focusing will be continuous. When you want to take the picture, press the shutter button completely.

📷 Live View Shooting

You can shoot while viewing the image on the LCD monitor. This is called “Live View shooting”. For details, see page 179.

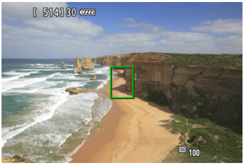


1 Set the Live View shooting/Movie shooting switch to <📷>.



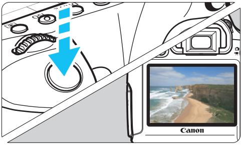
2 Display the Live View image on the LCD monitor.

- Press the <START/STOP> button.
- ▶ The Live View image will appear on the LCD monitor.



3 Focus the subject.

- Aim the center AF point <□> on the subject.
- Press the shutter button halfway to focus.
- ▶ When focus is achieved, the AF point will turn green and the beeper will sound.

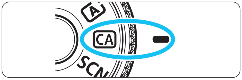


4 Take the picture.

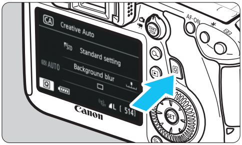
- Press the shutter button completely.
- ▶ The picture will be taken and the captured image is displayed on the LCD monitor.
- ▶ After the image review ends, the camera will return to Live View shooting automatically.
- Press the <START/STOP> button to end the Live View shooting.

CA Creative Auto Shooting

In the <CA> mode, you can easily change the depth of field and drive mode. You can also choose the ambience you want to convey in your images. The default settings are the same as the <A+> mode.
* CA stands for Creative Auto.



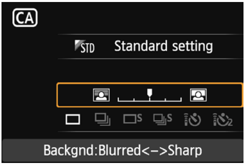
1 Set the Mode Dial to <CA>.



CA Creative Auto
STD Standard setting
AUTO
Background blur
Q
Canon
AF-ON
SET

2 Press the <Q> button. (⏱10)

▶ The Quick Control screen will appear.



STD Standard setting

Backgnd:Blurred<–>Sharp

3 Set the desired function.

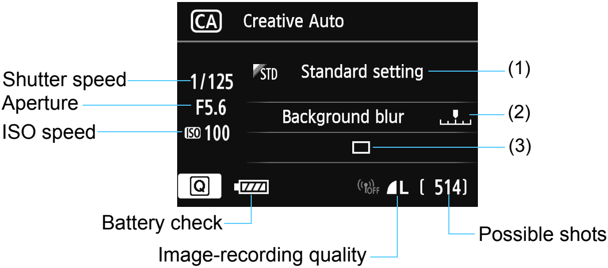
- Press the <▲▼> key to select a function.

▶ The selected function and Feature guide (p.63) will appear.

- For setting procedure and details on each function, see pages 72-73.

4 Take the picture.

- Press the shutter button completely to take the picture.

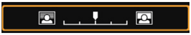

CA Creative Auto
Shutter speed
1/125
Aperture
F5.6
ISO speed
ISO 100
STD Standard setting
(1)
Background blur
(2)
(3)
Q
Battery check
Image-recording quality
L [514]
Possible shots

Pressing the <Q> button enables you to set the following:

(1) Ambience-based shots

You can choose the ambience you want to convey in your images. Turn the <⚙> or <◎> dial to select the desired ambience. You can also select it from a list by pressing <SET>. For details, see page 84.

(2) Blurring/sharpening the background



If you move the index mark toward the left, the background will look more blurred. If you move it toward the right, the background will look more in focus. If you want to blur the background, see "Shooting Portraits" on page 75. Set it by pressing the <◄►> key. You can also use the <⚙> or <◎> dial to move the mark.
Depending on the lens and shooting conditions, the background may not look so blurred.

(3) Drive mode: Press the <◄►> key to select the desired drive mode. You can also select the drive mode by turning the <⚙> or <◎> dial, or pressing <SET> to select it from a list.

<□> **Single shooting**:
Shoot one image at a time.

<⧉> **Continuous shooting**:
While you hold down the shutter button completely, shots will be taken continuously. You can shoot up to approx. 4.5 shots per second.

<□S> **Silent single shooting**:
Single shooting with less shooting sound than <□>.

<⧉S> **Silent continuous shooting**:
Continuous shooting (max. approx. 3.0 shots per second) with less shooting sound than <⧉>.

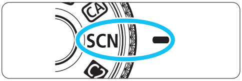
<⏲> **Self-timer: 10 sec./Remote control**:

<⏲2> **Self-timer: 2 sec./Remote control**:
The picture is taken 10 seconds or 2 seconds after you press the shutter button. A remote controller can also be used.

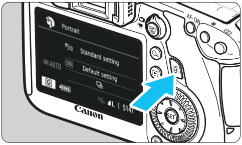
📝 When using the self-timer, see the 📝 notes on page 100.

SCN: Special Scene Mode

When you set a shooting mode suiting the scene, the camera sets the optimum settings automatically.

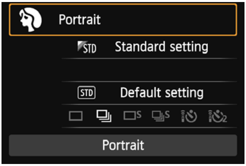


1 Set the Mode Dial to <SCN>.



2 Press the <Q> button. (⏱10)

▶ The Quick Control screen will appear.



Portrait

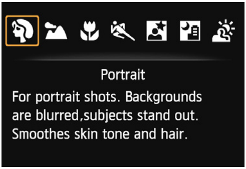
STD Standard setting

STD Default setting

Portrait

3 Select the shooting mode.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select the shooting mode section.
- Turn the <⚙> or <◎> dial to select a shooting mode.



Portrait

For portrait shots. Backgrounds are blurred,subjects stand out. Smoothes skin tone and hair.

- You can also select a shooting mode from a list by selecting the shooting mode section and pressing <SET>.

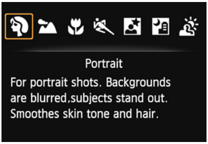
Available Shooting Modes in the <SCN> Mode

Shooting Mode		Page
	Portrait	p.75
	Landscape	p.76
	Close-up	p.77
	Sports	p.78

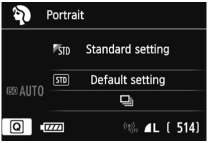
Shooting Mode		Page
	Night Portrait	p.79
	Handheld Night Scene	p.80
	HDR Backlight Control	p.81

Shooting Portraits

The < > (Portrait) mode blurs the background to make the human subject stand out. It also makes skin tones and the hair look softer.



Portrait
For portrait shots. Backgrounds are blurred,subjects stand out. Smoothes skin tone and hair.



Portrait

STD Standard setting

STD Default setting

ISO AUTO

Q

L [514]

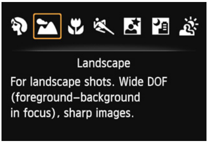
Shooting Tips

- **The further the distance between the subject and background, the better.**
  The further the distance between the subject and background, the more blurred the background will look. The subject will also stand out better in front of a plain, dark background.
- **Use a telephoto lens.**
  If you have a zoom lens, use the telephoto end to fill the frame with the subject from the waist up. Move in closer if necessary.
- **Focus the face.**
  Check that the AF point covering the face flashes in red. For close-ups of the face, focus the eyes.

The default setting is < > (Continuous shooting). If you hold down the shutter button, you can shoot continuously to obtain different poses and facial expressions (max. approx. 4.5 shots/sec.).

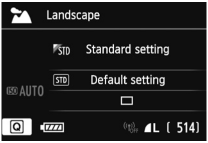
⛰ Shooting Landscapes

Use the <⛰> (Landscape) mode for wide scenery or to have everything in focus from near to far. For vivid blues and greens, and very sharp and crisp images.



Landscape

For landscape shots. Wide DOF (foreground–background in focus), sharp images.



Landscape

STD Standard setting

STD Default setting

ISO AUTO

Q

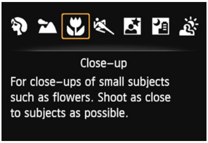
L [514]

Shooting Tips

- **With a zoom lens, use the wide-angle end.**
  When using the wide-angle end of a zoom lens, objects near and far will be in focus better than at the telephoto end. It also adds breadth to landscapes.
- **Shooting night scenes.**
  When shooting night scenes, use a tripod to prevent camera shake.

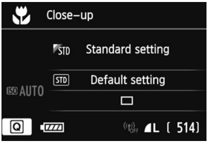
✿ Shooting Close-ups

When you want to photograph flowers or small things up close, use the <✿> (Close-up) mode. To make small things appear much larger, use a macro lens (sold separately).



Close–up

For close–ups of small subjects such as flowers. Shoot as close to subjects as possible.



✿ Close–up

STD Standard setting

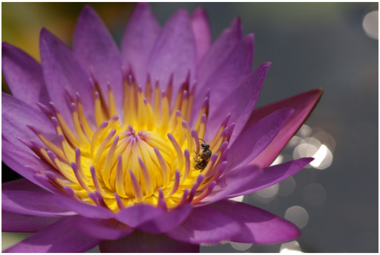
STD Default setting

ISO AUTO

▭

Q

L [514]



Shooting Tips

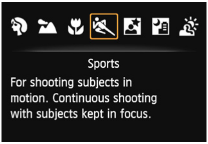
- **Use a simple background.**
  A simple background makes the flower, etc., stand out better.

- **Move as close as possible to the subject.**
  Check the lens for its minimum focusing distance. Some lenses have indications such as <**✿0.25m/0.8ft**>. The lens minimum focusing distance is measured from the <⊖> (focal plane) mark on the top left of the camera to the subject. If you are too close to the subject, the focus confirmation light <●> will blink.

- **With a zoom lens, use the telephoto end.**
  If you have a zoom lens, using the telephoto end will make the subject look larger.

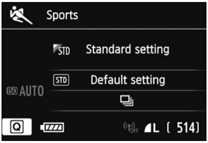
Shooting Moving Subjects

To photograph a moving subject, whether it is a child running or a moving vehicle, use the < > (Sports) mode.



Sports

For shooting subjects in motion. Continuous shooting with subjects kept in focus.



Shooting Tips

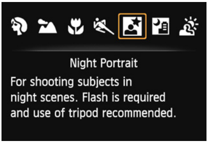
- **Use a telephoto lens.**
  Using a telephoto lens is recommended so you can shoot from afar.

- **Use the center AF point to focus.**
  Aim the center AF point over the subject, then press the shutter button halfway to autofocus. During autofocusing, the beeper will continue beeping softly. If focus cannot be achieved, the focus confirmation light <●> will blink.
  The default setting is < > (Continuous shooting). When you want to take the picture, press the shutter button completely. If you hold down the shutter button, continuous shooting (max. approx. 4.5 shots per sec.) and autofocusing will take effect to capture the movement of the subject.

Under low light when camera shake is prone to occur, the viewfinder’s shutter speed display on the bottom left will blink. Hold the camera steady and shoot.

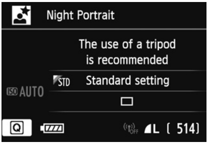
Shooting Night Portraits (With a Tripod)

To shoot people at night and obtain a natural-looking night scene in the background, use the < > (Night Portrait) mode. Flash is required. Using a tripod is also recommended.



Night Portrait

For shooting subjects in night scenes. Flash is required and use of tripod recommended.



Night Portrait

The use of a tripod is recommended

STD Standard setting

ISO AUTO

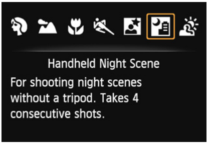
Shooting Tips

- **Use a wide-angle lens, Speedlite, and a tripod.**
  When using a zoom lens, use the wide-angle end to obtain a wide night view. Also, use a tripod to prevent camera shake.
- **Also shoot in another shooting modes.**
  Since camera shake is prone to occur with night shots, shooting also with <A+> and < > is recommended.

- Tell the subject to keep still even after the flash fires.
- If you use the self-timer together with flash, the self-timer lamp will light up briefly after the picture is taken.
- During Live View shooting, it may be difficult to focus dots of light such as in a night scene. In such a case, you should set the AF method to [**Quick mode**] and shoot. If it is still difficult to focus, set the lens' focus mode switch to [**MF**] and focus manually.

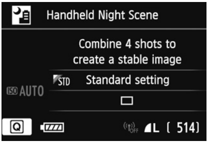
Shooting Night Scenes (Handheld)

Normally, a tripod is necessary to steady your camera when shooting a night scene. However, with the <> (Handheld Night Scene) mode, you can shoot night scenes while handholding the camera. In this mode, four shots are taken continuously for each picture, and a resulting bright image with reduced camera shake is recorded.



Handheld Night Scene

For shooting night scenes without a tripod. Takes 4 consecutive shots.



Handheld Night Scene

Combine 4 shots to create a stable image

STD Standard setting

ISO AUTO

Shooting Tips

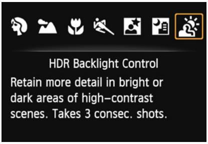
- **Hold the camera firmly.**
  While shooting, hold the camera firmly and steadily. If any of the four shots are greatly misaligned due to camera shake, etc., they may not align properly in the final image.

- **When including a human subject:**
  With flash, you can shoot both the human subject and night scene background while handholding the camera. To take a nice portrait, the first shot will use flash. Tell the person not to move until all four continuous shots are taken.

See the cautions on page 82.

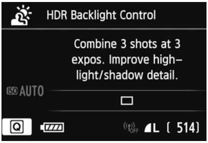
Shooting Backlit Scenes

When shooting a scene having both bright and dark areas, use the <☼> (HDR Backlight Control) mode. When you take a picture, three continuous shots are taken at different exposures, and the resulting image with the least loss of shadow detail due to backlighting and widest tonal range is recorded.



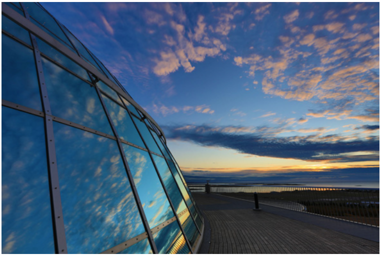
HDR Backlight Control

Retain more detail in bright or dark areas of high-contrast scenes. Takes 3 consec. shots.



HDR Backlight Control

Combine 3 shots at 3 expos. Improve highlight/shadow detail.



Shooting Tips

- **Hold the camera firmly.**
  While shooting, hold the camera firmly and steadily. If any of the three shots are greatly misaligned due to camera shake, etc., they may not align properly in the final image.

- Even if a Speedlite is attached to the camera, it will not fire.
- See the cautions on page 82.

HDR stands for High Dynamic Range.

Cautions for <🌃> (Handheld Night Scene)

- During Live View shooting, it may be difficult to focus dots of light such as in a night scene. In such a case, you should set the AF method to [**Quick mode**] and shoot. If it is still difficult to focus, set the lens' focus mode switch to [**MF**] and focus manually.
- When shooting flash photography, if the subject is too close to the camera, the picture may come out extremely bright (overexposure).
- If you use flash when shooting dimly lit night scenes, or human subjects in situations where the subject and background are both near enough to be illuminated by the flash, the shots may not align correctly. This can result in a blurry photo.
- Regarding flash coverage:
  - When using a Speedlite with automatic flash coverage setting, the zoom position will be fixed to the wide end, regardless of the lens' zoom position.
  - When using a Speedlite with manual flash coverage switch, shoot with the flash head retracted to the wide (normal) position.

Cautions for <☀> (HDR Backlight Control)

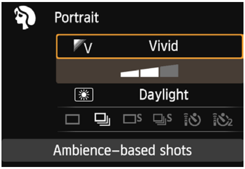
- Note that the image may not be rendered with a smooth gradation and may look irregular or have significant noise.
- HDR Backlight Control may not be effective for excessively backlit scenes or extremely high-contrast scenes.

Cautions for both <🌃> (Handheld Night Scene) and <☀> (HDR Backlight Control)

- Compared with other shooting modes, the shooting area will be smaller.
- You cannot select RAW and RAW+JPEG. In other shooting modes, if RAW is set, the image quality will be ◢L. Also, if RAW+JPEG is set, the image will be recorded in the set JPEG quality.
- If you shoot a moving subject, the subject's movement will leave afterimages.
- The image alignment may not function properly with repetitive patterns (lattice, stripes, etc.), flat or single-tone images, or greatly misaligned shots caused by camera shake.
- Recording the image to the card will take longer than with normal shooting. During the processing of the images, "**buSY**" will be displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel and you cannot take another picture until the processing is completed.
- If the shooting mode is set to <🌃> or <☀>, direct printing is not possible. Select another shooting mode and do direct printing.

Q Quick Control

Example: Portrait mode



Portrait

Vivid

Daylight

Ambience–based shots

In Basic Zone modes when the shooting function settings screen is displayed, you can press the <Q> button to display the Quick Control screen. The table below indicates the functions that can be set with the Quick Control screen in each Basic Zone mode.

---

1 Set the Mode Dial to a Basic Zone mode.

2 Press the <Q> button. (⏱10)

▶ The Quick Control screen will appear.

3 Set the function.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select a function. (This step is not necessary in the A+ mode.)

▶ The selected function and Feature guide (p.63) will appear.

- Functions can also be selected with the <⚙> or <◎> dial.

Settable Functions in Basic Zone Modes

●: Default setting ○: User selectable ☐: Not selectable

Function			A+	CA	SCN						
Drive mode (p.98)	□: Single shooting		●	●	○	●	●	○	●	●	●
	⧉: Continuous shooting		○	○	●	○	○	●	○	○	○
	□S: Silent single shooting		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	⧉S: Silent continuous shooting		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Self-timer (p.100)	⏱	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
		⏱2	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Ambience-based shots (p.84)				○	○	○	○	○	○	○	
Light/scene-based shots (p.87)					○	○	○	○			
Blurring/sharpening the background (p.72)				○							

* If you change the shooting mode or set the power switch to <OFF>, it will revert to the default settings (except the self-timer).

Shoot by Ambience Selection

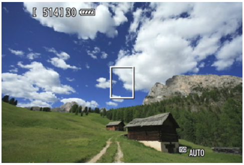
Except in the <A+> and <🚫⚡> Basic Zone modes, you can select the ambience for shooting.

Ambience	CA	SCN						Ambience Effect
		👤	⛰	🌷	🏃	👤★	🌃	
STD Standard setting	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	No setting
V Vivid	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Low / Standard / Strong
S Soft	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Low / Standard / Strong
W Warm	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Low / Standard / Strong
I Intense	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Low / Standard / Strong
C Cool	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Low / Standard / Strong
B Brighter	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Low / Medium / High
D Darker	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Low / Medium / High
M Monochrome	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Blue / B/W / Sepia

1 Set the shooting mode to <CA> or <SCN>.

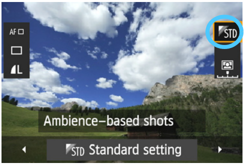
- If the shooting mode is <SCN>, set one of the following: <👤>, <⛰>, <🌷>, <🏃>, <👤★>, or <🌃>.

2 Set the Live View shooting/Movie shooting switch to <📷>.



3 Display the Live View image.

- Press the <START/STOP> button to display the Live View image.
- ▶ You can check the ambience effect on the screen.



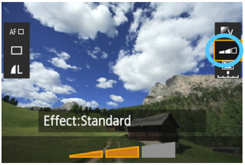
Ambience-based shots

STD Standard setting

4 On the Quick Control screen, select the desired ambience.

- Press the <Q> button (⏱10).
- Press the <▲▼> key to select [STD **Standard setting**]. [**Ambience-based shots**] will appear on the screen.

- Press the <◄►> key to select the desired ambience.
- ▶ The LCD monitor will display how the image will look with the selected ambience.



Effect:Standard

5 Set the ambience effect.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select the effect bar so that [**Effect**] appears at the bottom.
- Press the <◄►> key to select the desired effect.

6 Take the picture.

- Press the shutter button completely to take the picture.
- To return to viewfinder shooting, press the <START/STOP> button to exit Live View shooting. Then press the shutter button completely to take the picture.
- If you change the shooting mode or set the power switch to <OFF>, the setting will revert back to [STD **Standard setting**].

- The Live View image shown with the ambience setting applied will not look exactly the same as the actual photo.
- Using flash may minimize the ambience effect.
- In bright outdoors, the Live View image you see on the screen may not have exactly the same brightness or ambience as the actual photo. Set [**¥2: LCD brightness**] to 4 and look at the Live View image while the screen is unaffected by stray light.

If you do not want the Live View image to be displayed when setting functions, press the <Q> button after step 1. When you press the <Q> button, the Quick Control screen is displayed and you can set [**Ambience-based shots**] and [**Effect**], then shoot with the viewfinder.

Ambience Settings

STD Standard setting

Standard image characteristics for the respective shooting mode. Note that <> has image characteristics geared for portraits and <> is geared for landscapes. Each ambience is a modification of the respective shooting mode's image characteristics.

V Vivid

The subject will look sharp and vivid. It makes the photo look more impressive than with [STD **Standard setting**].

S Soft

The subject will look softer and more dainty. Good for portraits, pets, flowers, etc.

W Warm

The subject will look softer with warmer colors. Good for portraits, pets, and other subjects to which you want to give a warm look.

I Intense

While the overall brightness is slightly lowered, the subject is emphasized for a more intense feeling. Makes the human or living subject stand out more.

C Cool

The overall brightness is slightly lowered with a cooler color cast. A subject in the shade will look more calm and impressive.

B Brighter

The picture will look brighter.

D Darker

The picture will look darker.

M Monochrome

The picture will be monochrome. You can select the monochrome color to be black and white, sepia, or blue. <!> can be displayed on the lower left in the viewfinder when [**Monochrome**] is set (p.313).

Shoot by Lighting or Scene Type

In the <👤>, <⛰>, <🌷>, and <🏃> Basic Zone modes, you can shoot while the settings match the lighting or scene type. Normally, [STD **Default setting**] is adequate, but if the settings match the lighting condition or scene, the picture will look more accurate to your eye.
For Live View shooting, if you set both [**Light/scene-based shots**] and [**Ambience-based shots**] (p.84), you should first set [**Light/scene-based shots**]. This will make it easier to see the resulting effect on the LCD monitor.

Lighting or Scene	**SCN**			
	👤	⛰	🌷	🏃
STD Default setting	○	○	○	○
☀ Daylight	○	○	○	○
⌂ Shade	○	○	○	○
☁ Cloudy	○	○	○	○
💡 Tungsten light	○		○	○
▥ Fluorescent light	○		○	○
🌅 Sunset	○	○	○	○

1 Set the shooting mode to <SCN>.

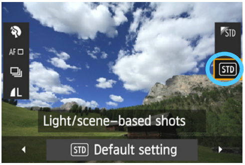
- Set one of the following: <👤>, <⛰>, <🌷>, or <🏃>.

2 Set the Live View shooting/Movie shooting switch to <📷>.

3 Display the Live View image.

[514] 30
ISO AUTO

- Press the <START/STOP> button to display the Live View image.
- ▶ You can check the resulting effect on the screen.



Light/scene-based shots

STD Default setting

4 On the Quick Control screen, select the lighting or scene type.

- Press the <Q> button (⏱10).
- Press the <▲▼> key to select [STD **Default setting**]. [**Light/scene-based shots**] will appear on the screen.
- Press the <◄►> key to select the desired lighting or scene type.
- ▶ The resulting image with the selected lighting or scene type will be displayed.

5 Take the picture.

- Press the shutter button completely to take the picture.
- To return to viewfinder shooting, press the <START/STOP> button to exit Live View shooting. Then press the shutter button completely to take the picture.
- If you change the shooting mode or set the power switch to <OFF>, the setting will revert back to [STD **Default setting**].

- If you use flash, the setting will switch to [STD **Default setting**]. (However, the shooting information will display the lighting or scene type that was set.)
- If you want to set this together with [**Ambience-based shots**], set the lighting or scene type best matches the ambience you have set. In the case of [**Sunset**], for example, warm colors will become prominent so the ambience you set may not work well.

If you do not want the Live View image to be displayed when setting functions, press the <Q> button after step 1. Pressing the <Q> button will display the Quick Control screen. You can then set [**Light/scene-based shots**] and shoot with the viewfinder.

Lighting or Scene Type Settings

Default setting
Default setting suited for most subjects.

Daylight
For subjects under sunlight. Gives more natural-looking blue skies and greenery and reproduces light-colored flowers better.

Shade
For subjects in the shade. Suitable for skin tones, which may look too bluish, and for light-colored flowers.

Cloudy
For subjects under overcast skies. Makes skin tones and landscapes, which may otherwise look dull on a cloudy day, look warmer. Also effective for light-colored flowers.

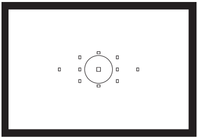
Tungsten light
For subjects lit under tungsten lighting. Reduces the reddish-orange color cast caused by tungsten lighting.

Fluorescent light
For subjects under fluorescent lighting. Suited for all types of fluorescent lighting.

Sunset
Suitable when you want to capture the sunset’s impressive colors.

3

Setting the AF and Drive Modes



The viewfinder has 11 AF points. By selecting the optimum AF point, you can compose the picture as desired while autofocusing.

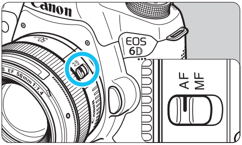
You can also select the AF operation and drive mode that best match the shooting conditions and subject.

- The ☆ icon at the upper right of the page title indicates that the function is available only in Creative Zone modes (**P**/ **Tv**/**Av**/**M**/**B**).
- In Basic Zone modes, the AF operation and AF point are set automatically.

<**AF**> stands for autofocus. <**MF**> stands for manual focus.

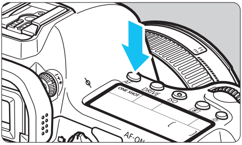
AF: Selecting the AF Operation☆

You can select the AF operation characteristics to suit the shooting conditions or subject. In Basic Zone modes, the optimum AF operation is set automatically for the respective shooting mode.

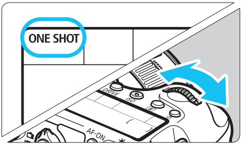


1 Set the lens focus mode switch to <AF>.

2 Turn the Mode Dial to a Creative Zone mode.



3 Press the <AF> button. (⏱6)



4 Select the AF operation.

- While looking at the LCD panel, turn the <⚙> or <◎> dial.

ONE SHOT : One-Shot AF
AI FOCUS : AI Focus AF
AI SERVO : AI Servo AF

One-Shot AF for Still Subjects

Suited for still subjects. When you press the shutter button halfway, the camera will focus only once.

- When focus is achieved, the AF point(s) that achieved focus will light up in red, and the focus confirmation light <●> in the viewfinder will be displayed.
- With evaluative metering, the exposure setting will be set at the same time focus is achieved.
- While you hold down the shutter button halfway, the focus will be locked. You can then recompose the shot if desired.

- If focus cannot be achieved, the focus confirmation light <●> in the viewfinder will blink. If this occurs, the picture cannot be taken even if the shutter button is pressed completely. Recompose the shot and try to focus again, or see “When Autofocus Fails” (p.96).
- If [**📷1: Beep**] is set to [**Disable**], the beeper will not sound when focus is achieved.
- After achieving focus with One-Shot AF, you can lock the focus on a subject and recompose the shot. This is called “focus lock”. This is convenient when you want to focus a peripheral subject not covered by the AF points.

AI Servo AF for Moving Subjects

This AF operation is suited for moving subjects when the focusing distance keeps changing. While you hold down the shutter button halfway, the subject will be focused continuously.

- The exposure is set at the moment the picture is taken.
- When the AF point selection (p.94) is automatic, the camera first uses the center AF point to focus. During autofocusing, if the subject moves away from the center AF point, focus tracking continues as long as the subject is covered by another AF point.

With AI Servo AF, the beeper will not sound even when focus is achieved. Also, the focus confirmation light <●> in the viewfinder will not light up.

AI Focus AF for Switching the AF Operation Automatically

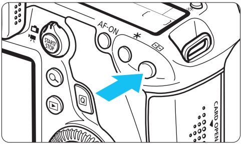
AI Focus AF switches the AF operation from One-Shot AF to AI Servo AF automatically if a still subject starts moving.

- After the subject is focused in One-Shot AF, if the subject starts moving, the camera will detect the movement, change the AF operation automatically to AI Servo AF, and keep tracking the moving subject.

When focus is achieved with AI Focus AF with the Servo operation active, the beeper will continue beeping softly. However, the focus confirmation light <●> in the viewfinder will not light up. Note that focus will not be locked in this case.

⊞ Selecting AF Points☆

You can select an AF point for focusing from among eleven AF points. In Basic Zone modes, the AF point will be selected automatically and you cannot select the AF point.



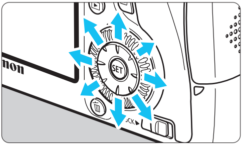
1 Press the <⊞> button. (⏱6)

- ▶ The selected AF point will be displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel.
- When all the AF points light up, automatic AF point selection will be set.

2 Select an AF point.

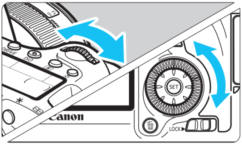
- You can either use <✥> or turn the <⚙> or <◯> dial to select an AF point.

Selecting with the Multi-controller



- You can use <✥> to select an AF point.
- If all the AF points light up, automatic AF point selection will be set.
- Press <SET> to toggle between the center AF point and automatic selection.

Selecting with the Dials



- Turn the <⚙> dial to select an AF point on the left or right or turn the <◎> dial to select an AF point above or below.
- If all the AF points light up, automatic AF point selection will be set.

- When you press the <⊞> button, the LCD panel displays the following:
  - Automatic selection: **[⁚⁚] AF**
  - Manual selection: **SEL [ ]** (Center)/**SEL AF** (Off center)
- When using an EOS-dedicated external Speedlite, if focus cannot be achieved with the AF-assist beam, select the center AF point.

AF Operation and Maximum Lens Apertures

Maximum lens aperture: f/3.2 - f/5.6

Cross-type focusing (vertical and horizontal lines detected simultaneously) is possible with the center AF point. The other AF points are either vertical- or horizontal-line sensitive.

Maximum lens aperture: f/1.0 - f/2.8

Besides cross-type focusing (vertical and horizontal lines detected simultaneously), the center AF point can also perform high-precision, vertical-line sensitive AF.* The other AF points are either vertical- or horizontal-line sensitive.

* Except with the EF28-80mm f/2.8-4L USM, and EF50mm f/2.5 Compact Macro.

If you use an Extender (sold separately) together with the lens and the f/number becomes higher than f/5.6, AF shooting will not be possible (except in [**FlexiZoneAF□** (Single)] and [☺ **Live mode**] during Live View shooting). For details, refer to the Extender's instruction manual.

When Autofocus Fails

Autofocus can fail to achieve focus (viewfinder's focus confirmation light <●> blinks) with certain subjects such as the following:

Subjects difficult to focus

- Very low-contrast subjects
  (Example: Blue sky, solid-color walls, etc.)
- Subjects in very low light
- Extremely backlit and reflective subjects
  (Example: Car with a highly reflective body, etc.)
- Near and far subjects covered by an AF point
  (Example: Animal in a cage, etc.)
- Repetitive patterns
  (Example: Skyscraper windows, computer keyboards, etc.)

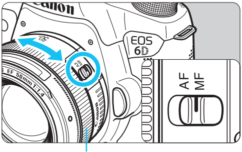
In such cases, do either of the following:

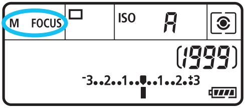
(1) With One-Shot AF, focus an object at the same distance as the subject and lock the focus before recomposing the shot (p.69).

(2) Set the lens focus mode switch to <**MF**> and focus manually (p.97).

For conditions where AF can fail to achieve focus with [**FlexiZoneAF□** (Single)]/[☺ **Live mode**] during Live View shooting, see page 196.

MF: Manual Focusing


Canon
EOS 6D
AF
MF
Focusing ring


M FOCUS
ISO
A
(1999)
-3..2..1..0..1..2..+3

1 Set the lens focus mode switch to <MF>.

- <M FOCUS> will be displayed on the LCD panel.

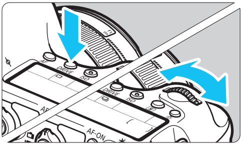
2 Focus the subject.

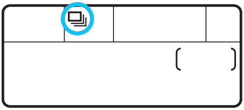
- Focus by turning the lens focusing ring until the subject looks sharp in the viewfinder.

If you press the shutter button halfway during manual focusing, the AF point which achieved focus will flash briefly in red and the focus confirmation light <●> will light up in the viewfinder.

⧉ Selecting the Drive Mode

Single and continuous drive modes are provided.





1 Press the <DRIVE> button. (⏱6)

2 Select the drive mode.

- While looking at the LCD panel, turn the <⚙> or <◎> dial.

□ : **Single shooting**
When you press the shutter button completely, only one shot will be taken.

⧉ : **Continuous shooting** (Max. approx. 4.5 shots/sec.)
While you hold down the shutter button completely, shots will be taken continuously.

□S : **Silent single shooting**
Single shooting with less shooting sound than <□>.

⧉S : **Silent continuous shooting** (Max. approx. 3.0 shots/sec.)
Continuous shooting with less shooting sound than <⧉>.

⏲ : **10-sec. self-timer/Remote control**

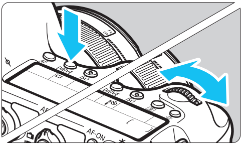
⏲2 : **2-sec. self-timer/Remote control**
For self-timer shooting, see page 100. For remote control shooting, see page 167.

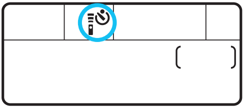
- If <□S> or <⧉S> is set, the time lag from when you press the shutter button completely until the picture is shot will be longer than with normal single or continuous shooting.
- When the battery level is low, the continuous shooting speed may become slightly slower.
- In AI Servo AF operation, the continuous shooting speed may become slightly slower depending on the subject and the lens used.
- ⧉: The maximum continuous shooting speed of approx. 4.5 shots/sec. is attained under the following conditions*: At 1/500 sec. or faster shutter speed, and at the maximum aperture (varies depending on the lens). The continuous shooting speed may decrease due to shutter speed, aperture, subject conditions, brightness, lens, flash use, etc.

  * With the AF mode set to One-Shot AF and the Image Stabilizer turned off when using the following lenses: EF300mm f/4L IS USM, EF28-135mm f/3.5-5.6 IS USM, EF75-300mm f/4-5.6 IS USM, EF100-400mm f/4.5-5.6L IS USM.

⏲ Using the Self-timer

Use the self-timer when you want to be in the picture.



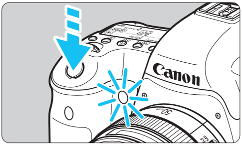


1 Press the <DRIVE> button. (⏱6)

2 Select the self-timer.

- While looking at the LCD panel, turn the <⚙> or <◎> dial to select the self-timer delay.

⏲ : **10-sec. self-timer**
⏲2 : **2-sec. self-timer**



3 Take the picture.

- Look through the viewfinder, focus the subject, then press the shutter button completely.
- ▶ You can check the self-timer operation with the self-timer lamp, beeper, and countdown display (in seconds) on the LCD panel.
- ▶ Two seconds before the picture is taken, the self-timer lamp will light up and the beeper will sound faster.

If you do not look through the viewfinder when you press the shutter button, attach the eyepiece cover (p.166). If stray light enters the viewfinder when the picture is taken, it may throw off the exposure.

- The <⏲2> enables you to shoot while not touching the camera mounted on a tripod. This prevents camera shake while you shoot still lifes or bulb exposures.
- After taking self-timer shots, playing back the image (p.236) to check focus and exposure is recommended.
- When using the self-timer to shoot only yourself, use focus lock (p.69) on an object at about the same distance as where you will stand.
- To cancel the self-timer after it starts, press the <DRIVE> button.

4

Image Settings

This chapter explains image-related function settings: Image-recording quality, ISO speed, Picture Style, white balance, Auto Lighting Optimizer, lens peripheral illumination correction, chromatic aberration correction, and other functions.

- In Basic Zone modes, only the following can be set as described in this chapter: Image-recording quality, lens peripheral illumination and chromatic aberration correction, folder creation and selection, and image file numbering.
- The ☆ icon at the upper right of the page title indicates that the function is available only in Creative Zone modes (**P**/**Tv**/**Av**/**M**/**B**).

MENU Setting the Image-Recording Quality

You can select the pixel count and the image quality. There are eight JPEG image-recording quality settings: ◢L, ▟L, ◢M, ▟M, ◢S1, ▟S1, S2, S3. There are three RAW image quality settings: RAW, M RAW, S RAW (p.104).

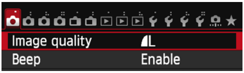


Image quality ◢L
Beep Enable

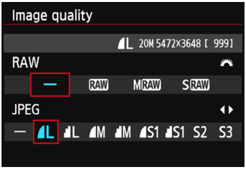


Image quality
◢L 20M 5472x3648 [999]
RAW
—
RAW
M RAW
S RAW
JPEG
◄►
—
◢L
▟L
◢M
▟M
◢S1
▟S1
S2
S3

1 Select [Image quality].

- Under the [📷1] tab, select [**Image quality**], then press <SET>.

2 Select the image-recording quality.

- To select a RAW setting, turn the <⚙> dial. To select a JPEG setting, press the <◄►> key.
- On the upper right, the "****M** (megapixels) ****** x ******" numbers indicate the recorded pixel count, and [***] is the number of possible shots (displayed up to 9999).
- Press <SET> to set it.

Image-recording Quality Setting Examples

◢L only

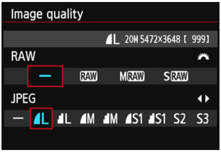


Image quality
◢L 20M 5472x3648 [999]
RAW
—
RAW
M RAW
S RAW
JPEG
—
◢L
▟L
◢M
▟M
◢S1
▟S1
S2
S3

RAW only

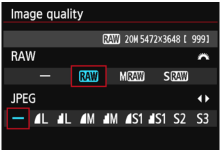


Image quality
RAW 20M 5472x3648 [999]
RAW
—
RAW
M RAW
S RAW
JPEG
—
◢L
▟L
◢M
▟M
◢S1
▟S1
S2
S3

RAW+◢L

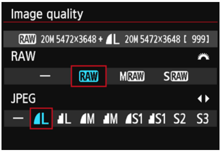


Image quality
RAW 20M 5472x3648 + ◢L 20M 5472x3648 [999]
RAW
—
RAW
M RAW
S RAW
JPEG
—
◢L
▟L
◢M
▟M
◢S1
▟S1
S2
S3

S RAW+◢M

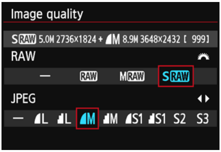


Image quality
S RAW 5.0M 2736x1824 + ◢M 8.9M 3648x2432 [999]
RAW
—
RAW
M RAW
S RAW
JPEG
—
◢L
▟L
◢M
▟M
◢S1
▟S1
S2
S3

- If [-] is set for both RAW and JPEG, ◢L will be set.
- The number of possible shots will be displayed up to 1999 on the LCD panel.

Guide to Image-Recording Quality Settings (Approx.)

Image Quality		Pixels Recorded	Printing Size	File Size (MB)	Possible Shots	Maximum Burst
JPEG	◢L	20M	A2	6.0	1250	73 (1250)
	▟L			3.1	2380	2380 (2380)
	◢M	8.9M	A3	3.2	2300	2300 (2300)
	▟M			1.7	4240	4240 (4240)
	◢S1	5.0M	A4	2.1	3450	3450 (3450)
	▟S1			1.1	6370	6370 (6370)
	S2*1	2.5M	9x13 cm	1.2	6130	6130 (6130)
	S3*2	0.3M	-	0.3	23070	23070 (23070)
RAW	RAW	20M	A2	23.5	300	14 (17)
	M RAW	11M	A3	18.5	380	8 (10)
	S RAW	5.0M	A4	13.0	550	12 (17)
RAW + JPEG	RAW ◢L	20M 20M	A2 A2	23.5+6.0	240	7 (8)
	M RAW ◢L	11M 20M	A3 A2	18.5+6.0	290	8 (9)
	S RAW ◢L	5.0M 20M	A4 A2	13.0+6.0	380	10 (12)

*1: S2 is suitable for playing the images on a digital photo frame.

*2: S3 is suitable for emailing the image or using it on a Web site.

- S2 and S3 will be in ◢ (Fine) quality.
- The file size, possible shots, and maximum burst during continuous shooting are based on Canon's testing standards (3:2 aspect ratio, ISO 100 and Standard Picture Style) using an 8 GB card. **These figures will vary depending on the subject, card brand, aspect ratio, ISO speed, Picture Style, Custom Functions, and other settings.**
- Figures in parentheses apply to an UHS-I class 8 GB card based on Canon's testing standards.

- If you select both RAW and JPEG, the same image will be recorded simultaneously to the card in both RAW and JPEG at the image-recording quality that was set. The two images will be recorded with the same file numbers (file extension .JPG for JPEG and .CR2 for RAW).
- The image-recording quality icons are as follows: RAW (RAW), M RAW (Medium RAW), S RAW (Small RAW), JPEG, ◢ (Fine), ▟ (Normal), L (Large), M (Medium), and S (Small).

About RAW

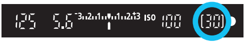
A RAW image is raw data output by the image sensor converted to digital data. It is recorded to the card as is, and you can select the quality as follows: RAW, M RAW, or S RAW.

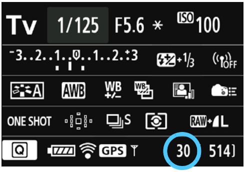
A RAW image can be processed with [▶**1: RAW image processing**] (p.272) and saved as a JPEG image. (M RAW and S RAW images cannot be processed with the camera.) While the RAW image itself does not change, you can process the RAW image according to different conditions to create any number of JPEG images from it.

With all RAW images, you can use Digital Photo Professional (provided software, p.392) to make various adjustments and then generate a JPEG, TIFF, etc., image incorporating those adjustments.

To display RAW images on a computer, using the provided software is recommended. Commercially-available software may not be able to display RAW images. To see if RAW images taken with this camera are compatible with other software, inquire the respective software manufacturer.

Maximum Burst During Continuous Shooting





The approximate maximum burst is displayed on the bottom right in the viewfinder and on the shooting function settings screen.
If the maximum burst for continuous shooting is 99 or higher, “99” will be displayed.

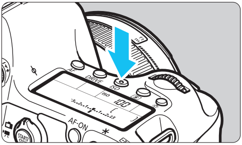
The maximum burst is displayed even when a card is not inserted in the camera. Make sure that a card is inserted before taking a picture.

- If the maximum burst is displayed as “**99**”, it indicates that you can shoot 99 or more shots continuously. If the maximum burst decreases to 98 or lower and the internal buffer memory becomes full, “**buSY**” will be displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel. Shooting will then be disabled temporarily. If you stop continuous shooting, the maximum burst will increase. After all the captured images are written to the card, you can resume continuous shooting and shoot up to the maximum burst listed in the table on page 103.
- Even if you use a UHS-I class card, the maximum burst indicator will not change. The maximum burst in parentheses in the table on page 103 will apply instead.

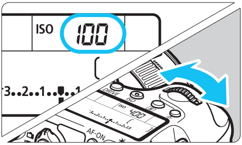
ISO: Setting the ISO Speed☆

Set the ISO speed (image sensor's sensitivity to light) to suit the ambient light level. In Basic Zone modes, the ISO speed is set automatically (p.108).

Regarding the ISO speed during movie shooting, see pages 206 and 209.



1 **Press the <ISO> button.** (⏱6)



2 **Set the ISO speed.**

- While looking at the LCD panel or the viewfinder, turn the <⚙> or <◎> dial.
- ISO speed can be set within ISO 100 - 25600 in 1/3-stop increments.
- "**A**" indicates ISO Auto. The ISO speed will be set automatically (p.108). You can also press the <**INFO.**> button to set it to "**A** (AUTO)".

ISO Speed Guide

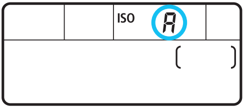
ISO Speed	**Shooting Situation** (No flash)	**Flash Range**
L, ISO 100 - 400	Sunny outdoors	The higher the ISO speed, the farther the flash range will be.
ISO 400 - 1600	Overcast skies or evening time	
ISO 1600 - 25600, H1, H2	Dark indoors or night	

* High ISO speeds will result in grainier images.

- If [**📷4: Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**], you cannot select “**L**” (equivalent to ISO 50), ISO 100/125/160, “**H1**” (equivalent to ISO 51200), and “**H2**” (equivalent to ISO 102400) (p.130).
- Shooting in high temperatures may result in images that look grainier. Long exposures can also cause irregular colors in the image.
- When you shoot at high ISO speeds, noise (such as dots of light and banding) may become noticeable.
- When shooting in conditions that produce an extreme amount of noise, such as a combination of high ISO speed, high temperature and long exposure, images may not be recorded properly.
- As H1 (equivalent to ISO 51200) and H2 (equivalent to 102400) are expanded ISO speed settings, noise (dots of light, banding, etc.) and irregular colors will be more noticeable, and the resolution lower than usual.
- If you use a high ISO speed and flash to shoot a close subject, overexposure may result.
- If you shoot a movie when [**Maximum: 25600**] is set with [**ISO speed range**] and ISO speed is set to ISO 16000/20000/25600, the ISO speed will switch to ISO 12800 (during movie shooting with manual exposure). Even if you switch back to still photo shooting, the ISO speed will not revert to the original setting.
- If you shoot a movie when 1. L (ISO 50) or 2. H1 (ISO 51200)/H2 (ISO 102400) is set, the ISO speed setting will switch to 1. ISO 100 or 2. H (ISO 25600) respectively (during movie shooting with manual exposure). Even if you switch back to still photo shooting, the ISO speed will not revert to the original setting.

- Under [**📷3: ISO speed settings**], you can use [**ISO speed range**] to expand the settable ISO speed range from ISO 50 (L) to ISO 102400 (H2) (p.109).
- <**!**> can be displayed in the viewfinder when you set an expanded ISO speed (L, H1, or H2) (p.313).

ISO Auto



If the ISO speed is set to “**A**” (Auto), the actual ISO speed to be set will be displayed when you press the shutter button halfway.
As indicated below, the ISO speed will be set automatically to suit the shooting mode.

Shooting Mode	ISO Speed Setting
A+/CA/👤/🌷/🏃/🌃/🌆	Automatically set within ISO 100 - 12800
⛰	Automatically set within ISO 100 - 1600
▣	Automatically set within ISO 100 - 25600
P/ **Tv**/ **Av**/ **M**	Automatically set within ISO 100 - 25600*1
B	ISO 400*1
With flash	ISO 400*1*2*3*4

*1: The actual ISO speed range depends on the [**Minimum**] and [**Maximum**] settings set in [**Auto ISO range**].

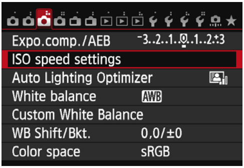
*2: If fill flash will result in overexposure, ISO 100 or a higher ISO will be set.

*3: Except in the A+, 🌃, and ▣ modes.

*4: When using bounce flash with an external Speedlite in the CA, 👤, ⛰, 🌷, 🏃, or <**P**> mode, the ISO speed will be set automatically within ISO 400 - 1600.

MENU Setting the ISO Speed Range

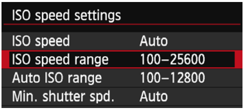
You can set the manually-settable ISO speed range (minimum and maximum limits). You can set the minimum limit within L (ISO 50) to H1 (ISO 51200), and the maximum limit within ISO 100 to H2 (ISO 102400).



Expo.comp./AEB -3..2..1..0..1..2.+3
ISO speed settings
Auto Lighting Optimizer
White balance AWB
Custom White Balance
WB Shift/Bkt. 0,0/±0
Color space sRGB

1 Select [ISO speed settings].

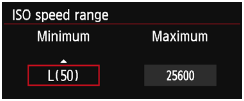
- Under the [📷3] tab, select [**ISO speed settings**], then press <SET>.



ISO speed settings
ISO speed Auto
ISO speed range 100–25600
Auto ISO range 100–12800
Min. shutter spd. Auto

2 Select [ISO speed range].

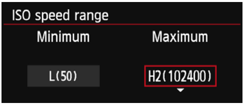
- Select [**ISO speed range**], then press <SET>.



ISO speed range
Minimum L(50)
Maximum 25600

3 Set the minimum limit.

- Select the minimum limit box, then press <SET>.
- Press the <▲▼> key to select an ISO speed, then press <SET>.



ISO speed range
Minimum L(50)
Maximum H2(102400)

4 Set the maximum limit.

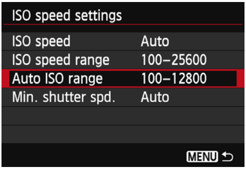
- Select the maximum limit box, then press <SET>.
- Press the <▲▼> key to select an ISO speed, then press <SET>.

5 Exit the setting.

- Press the <◄►> key to select [**OK**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The menu reappears.

MENU Setting the ISO Speed Range for Auto ISO

You can set the automatic ISO speed range for Auto ISO within ISO 100 - 25600. You can set the minimum limit within ISO 100 - 12800, and the maximum limit within ISO 200 - 25600 in whole-stop increments.

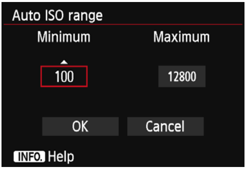


ISO speed settings

ISO speed	Auto
ISO speed range	100–25600
Auto ISO range	100–12800
Min. shutter spd.	Auto

1 Select [Auto ISO range].

- Select [**Auto ISO range**], then press <SET>.



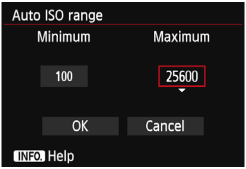
Auto ISO range

Minimum: 100

Maximum: 12800

2 Set the minimum limit.

- Select the minimum limit box, then press <SET>.
- Press the <▲▼> key to select an ISO speed, then press <SET>.



Auto ISO range

Minimum: 100

Maximum: 25600

3 Set the maximum limit.

- Select the maximum limit box, then press <SET>.
- Press the <▲▼> key to select an ISO speed, then press <SET>.

4 Exit the setting.

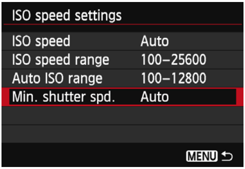
- Press the <◄►> key to select [**OK**], then press <SET>.

▶ The menu reappears.

The [**Minimum**] and [**Maximum**] settings will also apply to the ISO speed safety shift's minimum and maximum ISO speed (p.306).

MENU Setting the Minimum Shutter Speed for Auto ISO

When Auto ISO is set, you can set the minimum shutter speed (1/250 sec. to 1 sec.) so that the automatically-set shutter speed is not too slow.
This is convenient in the <**P**> and <**Av**> modes when you use a wide-angle lens to shoot a moving subject. You can minimize both camera shake and subject blur.

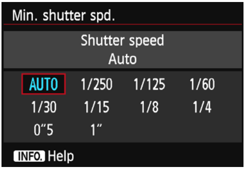


ISO speed settings

ISO speed	Auto
ISO speed range	100–25600
Auto ISO range	100–12800
Min. shutter spd.	Auto

1 Select [Min. shutter spd.].

- Select [**Min. shutter spd.**], then press <SET>.



Min. shutter spd.

Shutter speed
Auto

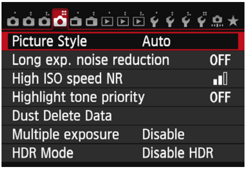
2 Set the desired minimum shutter speed.

- Press the <◄►> key to select the shutter speed, then press <SET>.
- ▶ The menu reappears.

- If a correct exposure cannot be obtained with the maximum ISO speed limit set with [**Auto ISO range**], a shutter speed slower than the [**Min. shutter spd.**] will be set to obtain a standard exposure.
- With flash photography, [**Min. shutter spd.**] will not be applied.

Selecting a Picture Style☆

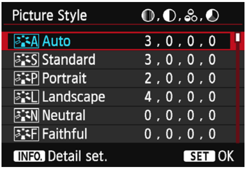
By selecting a Picture Style, you can obtain image characteristics matching your photographic expression or the subject.
In Basic Zone modes, <A> (Auto) is set automatically.



Picture Style	Auto
Long exp. noise reduction	OFF
High ISO speed NR	
Highlight tone priority	OFF
Dust Delete Data	
Multiple exposure	Disable
HDR Mode	Disable HDR

1 Select [Picture Style].

- Under the [📷4] tab, select [**Picture Style**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The Picture Style selection screen will appear.



Picture Style	◐, ◐, ♣, ◑
A Auto	3, 0, 0, 0
S Standard	3, 0, 0, 0
P Portrait	2, 0, 0, 0
L Landscape	4, 0, 0, 0
N Neutral	0, 0, 0, 0
F Faithful	0, 0, 0, 0
INFO. Detail set.	SET OK

2 Select a Picture Style.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select a Picture Style, then press <SET>.
- ▶ The Picture Style will be set and the camera will be ready to shoot.

Picture Style Characteristics

A Auto

The color tone will be adjusted automatically to suit the scene. The colors will look vivid, especially for blue skies, greenery, and sunsets in nature, outdoor, and sunset scenes.

If the desired color tone is not obtained with [**Auto**], use another Picture Style.

S Standard

The image looks vivid, sharp, and crisp. This is a general-purpose Picture Style suitable for most scenes.

P Portrait

For nice skin tones. The image looks softer. Suited for close-up portraits.
By changing the [**Color tone**] (p.115), you can adjust the skin tone.

Landscape

For vivid blues and greens, and very sharp and crisp images. Effective for impressive landscapes.

Neutral

This Picture Style is for users who prefer to process images with their computer. For natural colors and subdued images.

Faithful

This Picture Style is for users who prefer to process images with their computer. When the subject is captured under a color temperature of 5200K, the color is adjusted colorimetrically to match the subject’s color. Images will appear dull and subdued.

Monochrome

Creates black-and-white images.

Black-and-white images shot in JPEG cannot be reverted to color. If you want to later shoot pictures in color, make sure the [**Monochrome**] setting has been canceled.

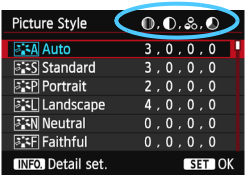
<**!**> can be displayed in the viewfinder when [**Monochrome**] is set (p.313).

User Def. 1-3

You can register a basic style such as [**Portrait**], [**Landscape**], a Picture Style file, etc., and adjust it as desired (p.118). Any User Defined Picture Style that has not been set will have the same default settings as the [**Auto**] Picture Style.

About the Symbols

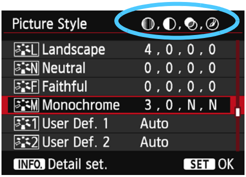
The symbols of the Picture Style selection screen refer to parameters such as [**Sharpness**] and [**Contrast**]. The numerals indicate the parameter settings, such as for [**Sharpness**] and [**Contrast**], for each Picture Style.



Picture Style ◍, ◐, ⚬, ◔

A Auto	3, 0, 0, 0
S Standard	3, 0, 0, 0
P Portrait	2, 0, 0, 0
L Landscape	4, 0, 0, 0
N Neutral	0, 0, 0, 0
F Faithful	0, 0, 0, 0

INFO. Detail set. SET OK



Picture Style ◍, ◐, ◒, ⊘

L Landscape	4, 0, 0, 0
N Neutral	0, 0, 0, 0
F Faithful	0, 0, 0, 0
M Monochrome	3, 0, N, N
1 User Def. 1	Auto
2 User Def. 2	Auto

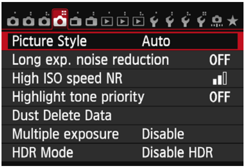
INFO. Detail set. SET OK

Symbols

◍	Sharpness
◐	Contrast
⚬	Saturation
◔	Color tone
◒	Filter effect (Monochrome)
⊘	Toning effect (Monochrome)

Customizing a Picture Style☆

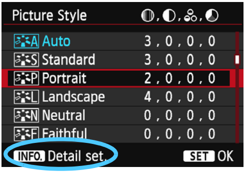
You can customize a Picture Style by adjusting individual parameters such as [**Sharpness**] and [**Contrast**]. To see the resulting effects, take test shots. To customize [**Monochrome**], see page 117.



Picture Style	Auto
Long exp. noise reduction	OFF
High ISO speed NR	
Highlight tone priority	OFF
Dust Delete Data	
Multiple exposure	Disable
HDR Mode	Disable HDR

1 Select [Picture Style].

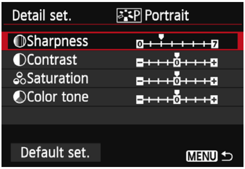
- Under the [📷4] tab, select [**Picture Style**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The Picture Style selection screen will appear.



Picture Style	◑, ◐, ☘, ◑
Auto	3 , 0 , 0 , 0
Standard	3 , 0 , 0 , 0
Portrait	2 , 0 , 0 , 0
Landscape	4 , 0 , 0 , 0
Neutral	0 , 0 , 0 , 0
Faithful	0 , 0 , 0 , 0

2 Select a Picture Style.

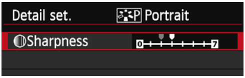
- Select a Picture Style, then press the <INFO.> button.



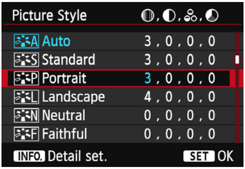
Detail set. Portrait

3 Select a parameter.

- Select a parameter such as [**Sharpness**], then press <SET>.



Detail set. Portrait



Picture Style	◑, ◐, ☘, ◑
Auto	3 , 0 , 0 , 0
Standard	3 , 0 , 0 , 0
Portrait	3 , 0 , 0 , 0
Landscape	4 , 0 , 0 , 0
Neutral	0 , 0 , 0 , 0
Faithful	0 , 0 , 0 , 0

4 Set the parameter.

- Press the <◄►> key to adjust the parameter as desired, then press <SET>.
- Press the <MENU> button to save the adjusted parameters. The Picture Style selection screen will reappear.
- ▶ Any parameter settings different from the default will be displayed in blue.

Parameter Settings and Effects

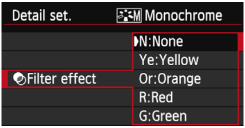
Sharpness	0: Less sharp outline	+7: Sharp outline
Contrast	-4: Low contrast	+4: High contrast
Saturation	-4: Low saturation	+4: High saturation
Color tone	-4: Reddish skin tone	+4: Yellowish skin tone

- By selecting [**Default set.**] in step 3, you can revert the respective Picture Style to its default parameter settings.
- To use the adjusted Picture Style, first select the adjusted Picture Style, then shoot.

Monochrome Adjustment

For Monochrome, you can also set [**Filter effect**] and [**Toning effect**] in addition to [**Sharpness**] and [**Contrast**] explained on the preceding page.

Filter Effect

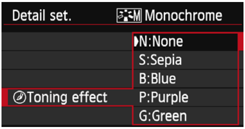

Detail set.
Monochrome
Filter effect
N:None
Ye:Yellow
Or:Orange
R:Red
G:Green

With a filter effect applied to a monochrome image, you can make white clouds or green trees stand out more.

Filter	Sample Effects
N: None	Normal black-and-white image with no filter effects.
Ye: Yellow	The blue sky will look more natural, and the white clouds will look crisper.
Or: Orange	The blue sky will look slightly darker. The sunset will look more brilliant.
R: Red	The blue sky will look quite dark. Fall leaves will look crisper and brighter.
G: Green	Skin tones and lips will appear muted. Tree leaves will look crisper and brighter.

Increasing the [**Contrast**] will make the filter effect more pronounced.

Toning Effect


Detail set.
Monochrome
Toning effect
N:None
S:Sepia
B:Blue
P:Purple
G:Green

By applying a toning effect, you can create a monochrome image in that color. It can make the image look more impressive.
The following can be selected: [**N:None**], [**S:Sepia**], [**B:Blue**], [**P:Purple**] or [**G:Green**].

Registering a Picture Style☆

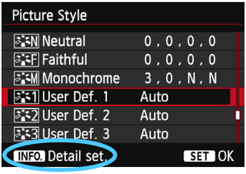
You can select a base Picture Style such as [**Portrait**] or [**Landscape**], adjust its parameters as desired and register it under [**User Def. 1**], [**User Def. 2**], or [**User Def. 3**].
You can create multiple Picture Styles whose parameter settings such as sharpness and contrast are different.
You can also adjust the parameters of a Picture Style that has been registered to the camera with EOS Utility (provided software, p.392).

---

1 Select [Picture Style].

- Under the [📷**4**] tab, select [**Picture Style**], then press <SET>.

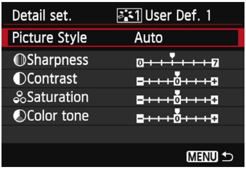
▶ The Picture Style selection screen will appear.



Picture Style
N Neutral 0 , 0 , 0 , 0
F Faithful 0 , 0 , 0 , 0
M Monochrome 3 , 0 , N , N
1 User Def. 1 Auto
2 User Def. 2 Auto
3 User Def. 3 Auto
INFO. Detail set. SET OK

2 Select [User Def. *].

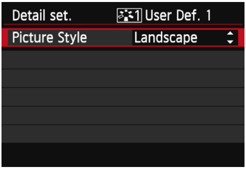
- Select [**User Def. ***], then press <**INFO.**>.



Detail set. 1 User Def. 1
Picture Style Auto
Sharpness
Contrast
Saturation
Color tone
MENU ↩

3 Press <SET>.

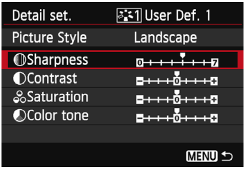
- With [**Picture Style**] selected, press <SET>.



Detail set. 1 User Def. 1
Picture Style Landscape

4 Select the base Picture Style.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select the base Picture Style, then press <SET>.
- To adjust the parameters of a Picture Style that has been registered to the camera with EOS Utility (provided software), select the Picture Style here.



Detail set. User Def. 1

Picture Style Landscape

Sharpness

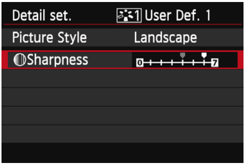
Contrast

Saturation

Color tone

5 Select a parameter.

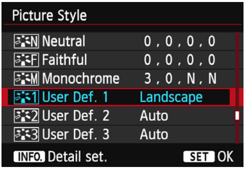
- Select a parameter such as [**Sharpness**], then press <SET>.



Detail set. User Def. 1

Picture Style Landscape

Sharpness



Picture Style

Neutral	0 , 0 , 0 , 0
Faithful	0 , 0 , 0 , 0
Monochrome	3 , 0 , N , N
User Def. 1	Landscape
User Def. 2	Auto
User Def. 3	Auto

6 Set the parameter.

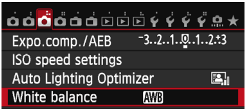
- Press the <◄►> key to adjust the parameter as desired, then press <SET>.
  For details, see “Customizing a Picture Style” on pages 115-117.
- Press the <MENU> button to register the modified Picture Style. The Picture Style selection screen will then reappear.
- ▶ The base Picture Style will be indicated on the right of [**User Def. ***].
- ▶ If the settings in a Picture Style registered under [**User Def. ***] have been modified from the base Picture Style settings, the Picture Style’s name will be displayed in blue.

- If a Picture Style has already been registered under [**User Def. ***], changing the base Picture Style in step 4 will nullify the parameter settings of the registered Picture Style.
- If you execute [**Clear all camera settings**] (p.56), all the [**User Def. ***] settings will revert to their defaults. Picture Style registered via EOS Utility (provided software) will have only their modified parameters reverted to their default settings.

- To use the adjusted Picture Style, select the registered [**User Def. ***], then shoot.
- Regarding the procedure to register a Picture Style file to the camera, refer to the EOS Utility Instruction Manual (p.395).

MENU Setting the White Balance☆

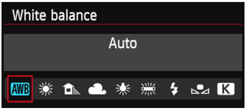
White balance (WB) is for making the white areas look white. Normally, the <AWB> (Auto) setting will obtain the correct white balance. If natural-looking colors cannot be obtained with <AWB>, you can select the white balance to match the light source or set it manually by shooting a white object.
In Basic Zone modes, <AWB> is set automatically.



Expo.comp./AEB -3..2..1..0..1..2.+3
ISO speed settings
Auto Lighting Optimizer
White balance AWB

1 Select [White balance].

- Under the [📷3] tab, select [**White balance**], then press <SET>.



White balance
Auto

2 Select the white balance.

- Select the desired setting, then press <SET>.

Display	Mode	Color Temperature (Approx. K: Kelvin)
AWB	Auto	3000 - 7000
☀	Daylight	5200
⌂	Shade	7000
☁	Cloudy, twilight, sunset	6000
✺	Tungsten light	3200
☷	White fluorescent light	4000
⚡	Flash use	Automatically set*
◢	Custom (p.121)	2000 - 10000
K	Color temperature (p.122)	2500 - 10000

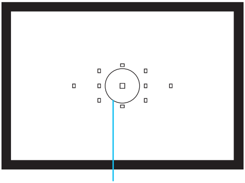
* Applicable with Speedlites having a color temperature transmission function. Otherwise, it will be fixed to approx. 6000K.

About White Balance

To the human eye, a white object looks white regardless of the type of lighting. With a digital camera, the color temperature is adjusted with software to make the white areas look white. This adjustment serves as the basis for the color correction. With this function, pictures with natural color shades can be taken.

Custom White Balance

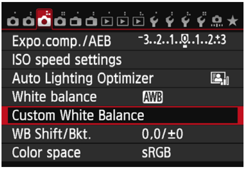
Custom white balance enables you to manually set the white balance for a specific light source for better accuracy. Perform this procedure under the actual light source to be used.



Spot metering circle

1 Photograph a white object.

- The plain, white object should fill the spot metering circle.
- Focus manually and set the standard exposure for the white object.
- You can set any white balance.



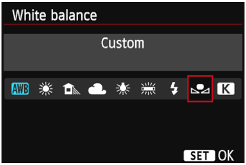
Expo.comp./AEB -3..2..1..0..1..2.+3
ISO speed settings
Auto Lighting Optimizer
White balance AWB
Custom White Balance
WB Shift/Bkt. 0,0/±0
Color space sRGB

2 Select [Custom White Balance].

- Under the [📷3] tab, select [**Custom White Balance**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The custom white balance selection screen will appear.

3 Import the white balance data.

- Turn the <◎> dial to select the image captured in step 1, then press <SET>.
- ▶ On the dialog screen that appears, select [**OK**] and the data will be imported.
- When the menu reappears, press the <MENU> button to exit the menu.



White balance
Custom

4 Select [White balance].

- Under the [📷3] tab, select [**White balance**], then press <SET>.

5 Select the custom white balance.

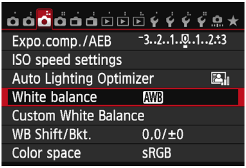
- Select [ ], then press <SET>.

- If the exposure obtained in step 1 differs greatly from the standard exposure, a correct white balance may not be obtained.
- In step 3, the following images cannot be selected: images captured while the Picture Style was set to [**Monochrome**], multiple-exposure images, and images shot with another camera.

- Instead of a white object, an 18% gray card (commercially available) can produce a more accurate white balance.
- The personal white balance registered with the provided software will be registered under [ ]. If you execute step 3, the data for the registered personal white balance will be erased.

K Setting the Color Temperature

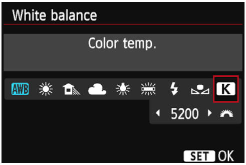
You can set the white balance's color temperature numerically. This is for advanced users.



Expo.comp./AEB -3..2..1..0..1..2.+3
ISO speed settings
Auto Lighting Optimizer
White balance AWB
Custom White Balance
WB Shift/Bkt. 0,0/±0
Color space sRGB

1 Select [White balance].

- Under the [📷3] tab, select [**White balance**], then press <SET>.



2 Set the color temperature.

- Select [K].
- Turn the <◎> dial to set the color temperature, then press <SET>.
- The color temperature can be set from approx. 2500 K to 10000 K in 100 K increments.

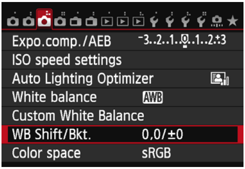
- When setting the color temperature for an artificial light source, set white balance correction (magenta or green) as necessary.
- If you set [K] to the reading taken with a commercially-available color temperature meter, take test shots and adjust the setting to compensate for the difference between the color temperature meter's reading and the camera's color temperature reading.

MENU White Balance Correction☆

You can correct the white balance that has been set. This adjustment will have the same effect as using a commercially-available color temperature conversion filter or color compensating filter. Each color can be corrected to one of nine levels.

This function is for advanced users who are familiar with using color temperature conversion or color compensating filters.

White Balance Correction



Expo.comp./AEB -3..2..1..0..1..2.+3

ISO speed settings

Auto Lighting Optimizer

White balance AWB

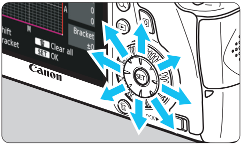
Custom White Balance

WB Shift/Bkt. 0,0/±0

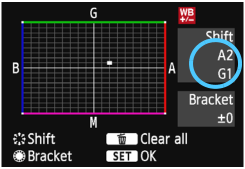
Color space sRGB

1 Select [WB Shift/Bkt.].

- Under the [📷3] tab, select **[WB Shift/Bkt.]**, then press <SET>.



Sample setting: A2, G1



Shift A2 G1

Bracket ±0

✥ Shift

◎ Bracket

🗑 Clear all

SET OK

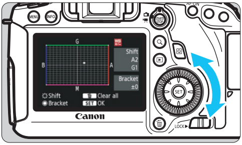
2 Set the white balance correction.

- Use <✥> to move the "■" mark to the desired position.
- B is for blue, A for amber, M for magenta, and G for green. The color in the respective direction will be corrected.
- On the upper right, "**Shift**" indicates the direction and correction amount.
- Pressing the <🗑> button will cancel all the **[WB Shift/Bkt.]** settings.
- Press <SET> to exit the setting and return to the menu.

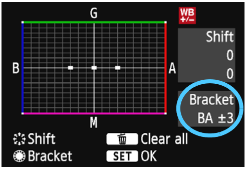
- <**!**> can be displayed on the lower left in the viewfinder when white balance correction is set (p.313).
- One level of the blue/amber correction is equivalent to approx. 5 mireds of a color temperature conversion filter. (Mired: Measuring unit indicating the density of a color temperature conversion filter.)

White Balance Auto Bracketing

With just one shot, three images having a different color tone can be recorded simultaneously. Based on the color temperature of the current white balance setting, the image will be bracketed with a blue/amber bias or magenta/green bias. This is called white balance bracketing (WB-BKT). White balance bracketing is possible up to ±3 levels in single-level increments.



B/A bias ±3 levels



Shift 0 0

Bracket BA ±3

Set the white balance bracketing amount.

- In step 2 for “White Balance Correction”, when you turn the <○> dial, the “■” mark on the screen will change to “■ ■ ■” (3 points). Turning the dial to the right sets the B/A bracketing, and turning it to the left sets the M/G bracketing.

▶ On the right, “**Bracket**” indicates the bracketing direction and correction amount.

- Pressing the <🗑> button will cancel all the [**WB Shift/Bkt.**] settings.
- Press <SET> to exit the setting and return to the menu.

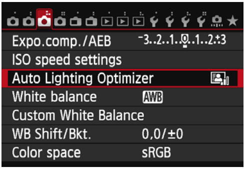
Bracketing Sequence

The images will be bracketed in the following sequence: 1. Standard white balance, 2. Blue (B) bias, and 3. Amber (A) bias, or 1. Standard white balance, 2. Magenta (M) bias, and 3. Green (G) bias.

- During WB bracketing, the maximum burst for continuous shooting will be lower and the number of possible shots will also decrease to one-third the normal number.
- You can also set white balance correction and AEB together with white balance bracketing. If you set AEB in combination with white balance bracketing, a total of nine images will be recorded for a single shot.
- Since three images are recorded for one shot, it takes longer to record the shot to the card.
- You can change the number of shots for white balance bracketing (p.305).
- “**BKT**” stands for bracketing.

MENU Auto Correction of Brightness and Contrast☆

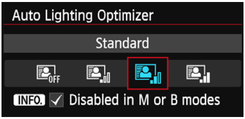
If the image comes out dark or the contrast is low, the brightness and contrast can be corrected automatically. This function is called Auto Lighting Optimizer. The default setting is [**Standard**]. With JPEG images, the correction is applied when the image is captured.
In Basic Zone modes, [**Standard**] is set automatically.



Expo.comp./AEB -3..2..1..0..1..2.+3
ISO speed settings
Auto Lighting Optimizer
White balance AWB
Custom White Balance
WB Shift/Bkt. 0,0/±0
Color space sRGB

1 Select [Auto Lighting Optimizer].

- Under the [📷**3**] tab, select [**Auto Lighting Optimizer**], then press <SET>.



Auto Lighting Optimizer
Standard
INFO. ✓ Disabled in M or B modes

2 Select the setting.

- Select the desired setting, then press <SET>.

3 Take the picture.

- The image will be recorded with the brightness and contrast corrected if necessary.

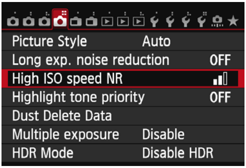
- If [📷**4: Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**], the Auto Lighting Optimizer will be set automatically to [**Disable**] and the setting cannot be changed.
- Depending on the shooting conditions, noise may increase.
- If a setting other than [**Disable**] is set and you use exposure compensation or flash exposure compensation to darken the exposure, the image may still come out bright. If you want a darker exposure, set this function to [**Disable**].
- If the HDR mode (p.155) or multiple exposure shooting (p.158) is set, the Auto Lighting Optimizer will be set automatically to [**Disable**]. When the HDR mode or multiple exposure shooting is canceled, the Auto Lighting Optimizer will revert to the original setting.

In step 2, if you press the <INFO.> button and uncheck <✓> the [**Disabled in M or B modes**] setting, the Auto Lighting Optimizer can be set in the <**M**> and <**B**> modes.

MENU Noise Reduction Settings☆

High ISO Speed Noise Reduction

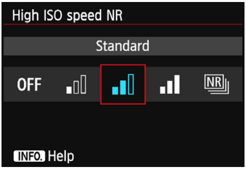
This function reduces the noise generated in the image. Although noise reduction is applied at all ISO speeds, it is particularly effective at high ISO speeds. At low ISO speeds, the noise in the darker parts of the image (shadow areas) is further reduced.



Picture Style Auto
Long exp. noise reduction OFF
High ISO speed NR
Highlight tone priority OFF
Dust Delete Data
Multiple exposure Disable
HDR Mode Disable HDR

1 Select [High ISO speed NR].

- Under the [📷4] tab, select [**High ISO speed NR**], then press <SET>.



High ISO speed NR

Standard

2 Set the level.

- Select the desired noise reduction level, then press <SET>.
- ▶ The setting screen closes and the menu will reappear.

- **[NR: Multi Shot Noise Reduction]**
  Noise reduction with higher image quality than when [**High**] is applied. For a single photo, four shots are taken in a burst and merged automatically into a single JPEG image.

3 Take the picture.

- The image will be recorded with noise reduction applied.

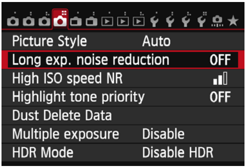
About [Multi Shot Noise Reduction]

- The following functions cannot be set: AEB, WB bracketing, [**📷4: Long exp. noise reduction**], [**📷4: HDR Mode**], [**📷4: Multiple exposure**], and RAW image. If any of these has already been set, [**Multi Shot Noise Reduction**] cannot be set.
- Flash shooting is not possible. The AF-assist beam will be emitted according to the [**⚙C.Fn II -5: AF-assist beam firing**] setting.
- You cannot set [**Multi Shot Noise Reduction**] for bulb exposures.
- If you turn off the power or change the shooting mode to a Basic Zone mode, movie shooting, or bulb, the setting will be changed to [**Standard**].
- If the images are greatly misaligned due to camera shake or if there is a moving subject, the noise reduction effect may be minimal.
- If you are handholding the camera, keep it steady to prevent camera shake. Using a tripod is recommended.
- The image alignment may not function properly with repetitive patterns (lattice, stripes, etc.) or flat, single-tone images.
- Recording the image to the card will take longer than with normal shooting. During the processing of the images, "**buSY**" will be displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel and you cannot take another picture until the processing is completed.
- [**📷4: Dust Delete Data**] cannot be set.
- If [**Multi Shot Noise Reduction**] is set, direct printing is not possible. Select a setting other than [**Multi Shot Noise Reduction**] and perform direct printing.

If you play back a RAW image with the camera or print an image directly, the effect of the high ISO speed noise reduction may look minimal. Check the noise reduction effect or print noise-reduced images with Digital Photo Professional (provided software, p.392).

Long Exposure Noise Reduction

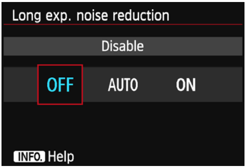
Noise reduction is possible with images exposed for 1 sec. or longer.



Picture Style Auto
Long exp. noise reduction OFF
High ISO speed NR
Highlight tone priority OFF
Dust Delete Data
Multiple exposure Disable
HDR Mode Disable HDR

1 Select [Long exp. noise reduction].

- Under the [📷4] tab, select [**Long exp. noise reduction**], then press <SET>.



Long exp. noise reduction
Disable
OFF AUTO ON

2 Set the desired setting.

- Select the desired setting, then press <SET>.
- ▶ The setting screen closes and the menu will reappear.

- **[Auto]**
  For 1 sec. or longer exposures, noise reduction is performed automatically if noise typical of long exposures is detected. This [**Auto**] setting is effective in most cases.
- **[Enable]**
  Noise reduction is performed for all exposures of 1 sec. or longer. The [**Enable**] setting may be able to reduce noise that cannot be detected with the [**Auto**] setting.

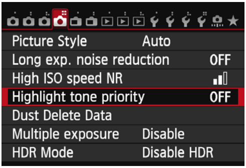
3 Take the picture.

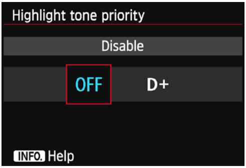
- The image will be recorded with noise reduction applied.

- With [**Auto**] and [**Enable**], the noise reduction process after the picture is taken may take the same amount of time as that for the exposure. During noise reduction, shooting is still possible as long as the maximum burst indicator in the viewfinder shows “1” or higher.
- Images taken at ISO 1600 or higher may look grainier with the [**Enable**] setting than with the [**Disable**] or [**Auto**] setting.
- With [**Enable**], if a long exposure is shot with the Live View image displayed, “**BUSY**” will be displayed during the noise reduction process. The Live View display will not appear until the noise reduction is completed. (You cannot take another picture.)

MENU Highlight Tone Priority☆

You can minimize overexposed highlight areas.


Picture Style Auto
Long exp. noise reduction OFF
High ISO speed NR
Highlight tone priority OFF
Dust Delete Data
Multiple exposure Disable
HDR Mode Disable HDR


Highlight tone priority
Disable

1 Select [Highlight tone priority].

- Under the [📷4] tab, select [**Highlight tone priority**], then press <SET>.

2 Select [Enable].

- Select [**Enable**], then press <SET>.
- Highlight details are improved. The dynamic range is expanded from the standard 18% gray to bright highlights. The gradation between the grays and highlights becomes smoother.

3 Take the picture.

- The image will be recorded with highlight tone priority applied.

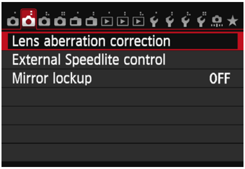
- With [**Enable**], the Auto Lighting Optimizer (p.125) is automatically set to [**Disable**] and the setting cannot be changed. When [**Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Disable**], the Auto Lighting Optimizer will revert to its original setting.
- With [**Enable**], image noise (graininess and bandings, etc.) may increase slightly more than with [**Disable**].

With [**Enable**], the settable range will be ISO 200 - 25600 (ISO 200 - 12800 for movie shooting). Also, the <**D+**> icon will be displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel when highlight tone priority is enabled.

MENU Lens Peripheral Illumination / Chromatic Aberration Correction

Peripheral light fall-off is a phenomenon that makes the image corners look darker due to the lens characteristics. Color fringing along subject outlines is called chromatic aberration. Both lens aberrations can be corrected. The default settings are [**Enable**] for both corrections.

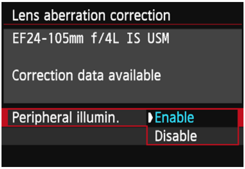
Peripheral Illumination Correction



Lens aberration correction
External Speedlite control
Mirror lockup OFF

1 Select [Lens aberration correction].

- Under the [📷2] tab, select [**Lens aberration correction**], then press <SET>.



Lens aberration correction
EF24-105mm f/4L IS USM
Correction data available
Peripheral illumin. Enable
Disable

2 Select the setting.

- Check that [**Correction data available**] is displayed for the attached lens.
- Select [**Peripheral illumin.**], then press <SET>.
- Select [**Enable**], then press <SET>.
- If [**Correction data not available**] is displayed, see “About the Lens Correction Data” on page 133.

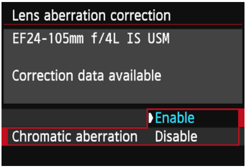
3 Take the picture.

- The image will be recorded with the peripheral illumination corrected.

Depending on shooting conditions, noise may appear on the image periphery.

- The correction amount applied will be slightly lower than the maximum correction amount settable with Digital Photo Professional (provided software, p.392).
- The higher the ISO speed, the lower the correction amount will be.

Chromatic Aberration Correction



Lens aberration correction

EF24-105mm f/4L IS USM

Correction data available

Chromatic aberration Enable

Disable

1 Select the setting.

- Check that [**Correction data available**] is displayed for the attached lens.
- Select [**Chromatic aberration**], then press <SET>.
- Select [**Enable**], then press <SET>.
- If [**Correction data not available**] is displayed, see “About the Lens Correction Data” on the next page.

2 Take the picture.

- The image will be recorded with the chromatic aberration corrected.

If you play back a RAW image shot with the chromatic aberration corrected, the image will be displayed on the camera without the chromatic aberration correction applied. Check the chromatic aberration correction with Digital Photo Professional (provided software, p.392).

About the Lens Correction Data

The camera already contains lens peripheral illumination correction data and chromatic aberration correction data for approx. 25 lenses. If you select [**Enable**], the peripheral illumination correction and chromatic aberration correction will be applied automatically for any lens whose correction data is registered in the camera.

With EOS Utility (provided software), you can check which lenses have their correction data registered in the camera. You can also register the correction data for unregistered lenses. For details, refer to the Software Instruction Manual (CD-ROM) for EOS Utility Instruction Manual (p.395).

Notes for Peripheral Illumination Correction and Chromatic Aberration Correction

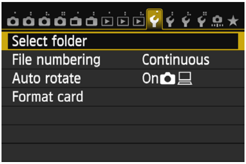
- Peripheral illumination correction and chromatic aberration correction cannot be applied to JPEG images already taken.
- When using a non-Canon lens, setting the corrections to [**Disable**] is recommended, even if [**Correction data available**] is displayed.
- If you use the magnified view during Live View shooting, the peripheral illumination correction and chromatic aberration correction will not be reflected in the image shown on the screen.

- If the effect of the correction is not visible, magnify the image and check it after shooting.
- Corrections can be applied even when an Extender or Life-size Converter is attached.
- If the correction data for the attached lens is not registered to the camera, the result will be the same as when the correction is set to [**Disable**].
- If the lens does not have distance information, the correction amount will be lower.

MENU Creating and Selecting a Folder

You can freely create and select the folder where the captured images are to be saved.
This operation is optional since a folder will be created automatically for saving captured images.

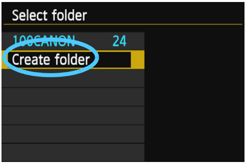
Creating a Folder


Select folder
Format card

File numbering Continuous
Auto rotate On

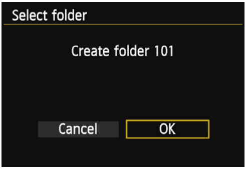
1 Select [Select folder].

- Under the [🔧1] tab, select [**Select folder**], then press <SET>.


Select folder
100CANON 24
Create folder

2 Select [Create folder].

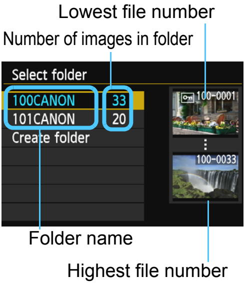
- Select [**Create folder**], then press <SET>.


Select folder
Create folder 101
Cancel
OK

3 Create a new folder.

- Select [**OK**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ A new folder with the folder number increased by one is created.

Selecting a Folder


Lowest file number
Number of images in folder
Select folder
100CANON 33
101CANON 20
Create folder
100-0001
100-0033
Folder name
Highest file number

- With the folder selection screen displayed, select a folder and press <SET>.

▶ The folder where the captured images will be saved is selected.

- Subsequent captured images will be recorded into the selected folder.

About Folders

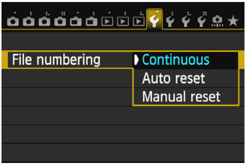
As with “**100CANON**” for example, the folder name starts with three digits (the folder number) followed by five alphanumeric characters. A folder can contain up to 9999 images (file number 0001 - 9999). When a folder becomes full, a new folder with the folder number increased by one is created automatically. Also, if manual reset (p.137) is executed, a new folder will be created automatically. Folders numbered from 100 to 999 can be created.

Creating Folders with a Computer

With the card open on the screen, create a new folder named “**DCIM**”. Open the DCIM folder and create as many folders as necessary to save and organize your images. The folder name must follow the format “**100ABC_D**”. The first three digits are the folder number, from 100 to 999. The final five characters can be any combination of upper- and lower-case letters from A to Z, numerals, and the underscore “_”. The space cannot be used. Also note that two folder names cannot share the same three-digit folder number (for example, “**100ABC_D**” and “**100W_XYZ**”), even if the other five characters in each name are different.

MENU File Numbering Methods

The image files will be numbered from 0001 to 9999 in the order the images are taken, then saved in a folder. You can change how the file number is assigned.
The file number will appear on your computer in this format: **IMG_0001.JPG**.



1 Select [File numbering].

- Under the [🔧1] tab, select **[File numbering]**, then press <SET>.

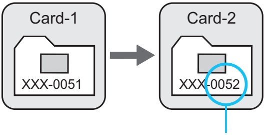
2 Select the file numbering method.

- Select the desired setting, then press <SET>.

Continuous

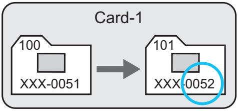
Continues the file numbering sequence even after the card is replaced or a new folder is created.
Even after you replace the card or create a new folder, the file numbering continues in sequence up to 9999. This is convenient when you want to save images numbered anywhere between 0001 to 9999 in multiple cards or folders into one folder in your computer.
If the replacement card or existing folder already contains images recorded previously, the file numbering of the new images may continue from the file numbering of the existing images in the card or folder. If you want to use continuous file numbering, it is recommended that you use a newly-formatted card each time.

File numbering after replacing the card



Next sequential file number

File numbering after creating a folder

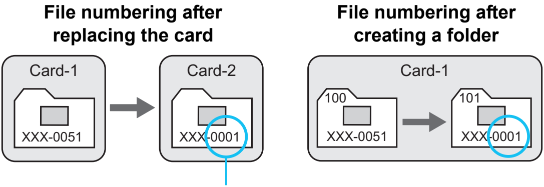


Auto Reset

The file numbering restarts from 0001 each time the card is replaced or a new folder is created.

When you replace the card or create a folder, the file numbering restarts from 0001 for the new images saved. This is convenient if you want to organize images according to cards or folders.

If the replacement card or existing folder already contains images recorded previously, the file numbering of the new images may continue from the file numbering of the existing images in the card or folder. If you want to save images with the file numbering starting from 0001, use a newly formatted card each time.


File numbering after replacing the card
File numbering after creating a folder
Card-1
XXX-0051
Card-2
XXX-0001
Card-1
100
XXX-0051
101
XXX-0001

File numbering is reset.

Manual Reset

To reset the file numbering to 0001 or to start from file number 0001 in a new folder.

When you reset the file numbering manually, a new folder is created automatically and the file numbering of images saved to that folder starts from 0001.

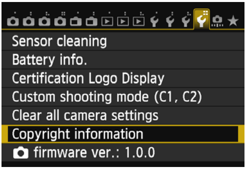
This is convenient if you want to use different folders for the images taken yesterday and the ones taken today, for example. After the manual reset, the file numbering returns to continuous or auto reset. (There will be no manual reset confirmation screen.)

If the file number in folder 999 reaches 9999, shooting will not be possible even if the card still has storage capacity. The LCD monitor will display a message telling you to replace the card. Replace it with a new card.

For both JPEG and RAW images, the file name will start with “IMG_”. Movie file names will start with “MVI_”. The extension will be “.JPG” for JPEG images, “.CR2” for RAW images, and “.MOV” for movies.

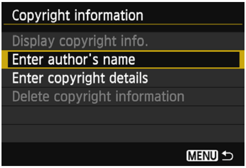
MENU Setting Copyright Information☆

When you set the copyright information, it will be recorded to the image as Exif information.


Sensor cleaning
Battery info.
Certification Logo Display
Custom shooting mode (C1, C2)
Clear all camera settings
Copyright information
firmware ver.: 1.0.0

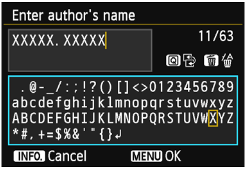
1 Select [Copyright information].

- Under the [🔧4] tab, select [**Copyright information**], then press <SET>.


Copyright information
Display copyright info.
Enter author's name
Enter copyright details
Delete copyright information
MENU ⮌

2 Select the option to be set.

- Select [**Enter author's name**] or [**Enter copyright details**], then press <SET>.


Enter author's name
XXXXX. XXXXX
11/63
. @-_/:;!?()[]<>0123456789
abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
*#,+=$%&'"{}↲
INFO. Cancel
MENU OK

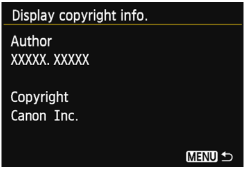
3 Enter text.

- Press the <Q> button, and the text palette will be highlighted in a color frame. Text can be entered.
- Press the <▲▼> <◀▶> keys to move the ☐ and select a character, then press <SET> to enter it.
- You can enter up to 63 characters.
- To delete a character, press the <🗑> button.

4 Exit the setting.

- After entering the text, press the <MENU> button.
- ▶ The information will be saved and the screen will return to step 2.

Checking the Copyright Information


Display copyright info.

Author
XXXXX. XXXXX

Copyright
Canon Inc.

When you select [**Display copyright info.**] in step 2 on the preceding page, you can check the [**Author**] and [**Copyright**] information that you entered.

Deleting the Copyright Information

When you select [**Delete copyright information**] in step 2 on the preceding page, you can delete the [**Author**] and [**Copyright**] information.

You can also set or check the copyright information with EOS Utility (provided software, p.392).

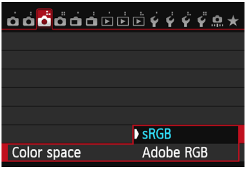
MENU Setting the Color Space☆

The range of reproducible colors is called the color space. With this camera, you can set the color space for captured images to sRGB or Adobe RGB. For normal shooting, sRGB is recommended.
In Basic Zone modes, sRGB is set automatically.

---

1 Select [Color space].

- Under the [**📷3**] tab, select [**Color space**], then press <SET>.


Color space
▸ sRGB
Adobe RGB

2 Set the desired color space.

- Select [**sRGB**] or [**Adobe RGB**], then press <SET>.

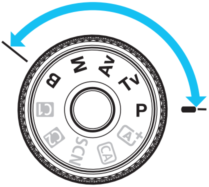
About Adobe RGB

This color space is mainly used for commercial printing and other industrial uses. This setting is not recommended if you do not know about image processing, Adobe RGB, and Design rule for Camera File System 2.0 (Exif 2.21 or higher). The image will look very subdued in a sRGB computer environment and with printers not compatible with Design rule for Camera File System 2.0 (Exif 2.21 or higher). Post-processing of the image with software for computer will therefore be required.

- If the captured still photo was shot in the Adobe RGB color space, the first character in the file name will be an underscore "_".
- The ICC profile is not appended. Refer to explanations about the ICC profile in the Software Instruction Manual (p.395) on the CD-ROM.

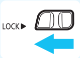
5

Advanced Operations



In Creative Zone modes, you can set the shutter speed and/or aperture to set the exposure as desired. By changing the camera settings, you can obtain various results.

- The ☆ icon at the upper right of the page title indicates that the function is available only in Creative Zone modes (**P**/ **Tv**/**Av**/**M**/**B**).
- After you press the shutter button halfway and let go, the exposure values will remain displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel for 4 sec. (⏱4).
- For the functions settable in each shooting mode, see page 342.



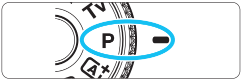
Set the <LOCK▶> switch to the left.

P: Program AE

The camera automatically sets the shutter speed and aperture to suit the subject's brightness. This is called Program AE.

* <**P**> stands for Program.

* AE stands for Auto Exposure.



1 Set the Mode Dial to <P>.

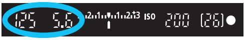
125 5.6 ISO 200 [26]

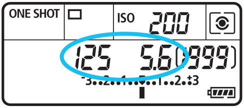
2 Focus the subject.

- Look through the viewfinder and aim the selected AF point over the subject. Then press the shutter button halfway.

▶ The AF point which achieves focus flashes in red, and the focus confirmation light <●> in the viewfinder's bottom right lights up (when in One-Shot AF mode).

▶ The shutter speed and aperture will be set automatically and displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel.



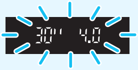


3 Check the display.

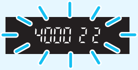
- A standard exposure will be obtained as long as the shutter speed and aperture display do not blink.

4 Take the picture.

- Compose the shot and press the shutter button completely.



- If the “**30"**” shutter speed and the lower f/number blink, it indicates underexposure.
  Increase the ISO speed or use flash.



- If the “**4000**” shutter speed and the higher f/number blink, it indicates overexposure.
  Lower the ISO speed or use an ND filter (sold separately) to reduce the amount of light entering the lens.

Differences Between <**P**> and <A+> Modes

In the <A+> mode, many functions such the AF operation and metering mode are set automatically to prevent spoiled shots. The functions you can set are limited. With <**P**> mode, only the shutter speed and aperture are set automatically. You can freely set the AF operation, metering mode, and other functions (p.342).

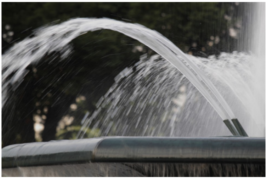
About Program Shift

- In the Program AE mode, you can freely change the shutter speed and aperture combination (Program) set automatically by the camera while maintaining the same exposure. This is called Program shift.
- To shift the program, press the shutter button halfway, then turn the <⚙> dial until the desired shutter speed or aperture is displayed.
- Program shift is canceled automatically after the picture is taken.
- Program shift cannot be used with flash.

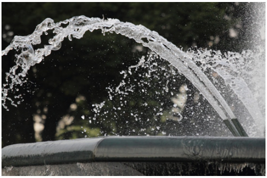
Tv : Shutter-Priority AE

In this mode, you set the shutter speed and the camera automatically sets the aperture to obtain the standard exposure suiting the brightness of the subject. This is called shutter-priority AE. A faster shutter speed can freeze the action or a moving subject. A slower shutter speed can create a blurred effect, giving the impression of motion.

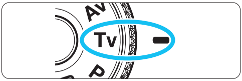
* <**Tv**> stands for Time value.



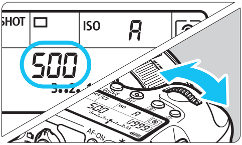
Blurred motion
(Slow shutter speed: 1/30 sec.)



Frozen action
(Fast shutter speed: 1/2000 sec.)



1 Set the Mode Dial to <**Tv**>.

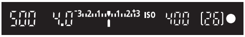


2 Set the desired shutter speed.

- While looking at the LCD panel, turn the <⚙> dial.

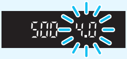
3 Focus the subject.

- Press the shutter button halfway.
- ▶ The aperture is set automatically.

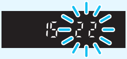


4 Check the viewfinder display and shoot.

- As long as the aperture is not blinking, a standard exposure will be obtained.



- If the lower f/number blinks, it indicates underexposure. Turn the <⚙> dial to set a slower shutter speed until the aperture stops blinking or set a higher ISO speed.



- If the higher f/number blinks, it indicates overexposure. Turn the <⚙> dial to set a faster shutter speed until the aperture stops blinking or set a lower ISO speed.

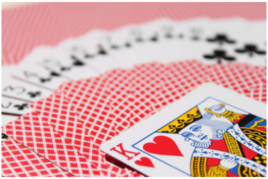
Shutter Speed Display

The shutter speeds from “**4000**” to “**4**” indicate the denominator of the fractional shutter speed. For example, “**125**” indicates 1/125 sec. Also, “**0"5**” indicates 0.5 sec. and “**15"**” is 15 sec.

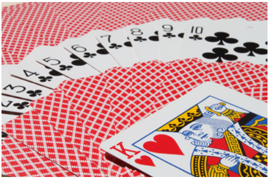
Av : Aperture-Priority AE

In this mode, you set the desired aperture and the camera sets the shutter speed automatically to obtain the standard exposure suiting the subject brightness. This is called aperture-priority AE. A higher f/number (smaller aperture hole) will make more of the foreground and background fall within acceptable focus. On the other hand, a lower f/number (larger aperture hole) will make less of the foreground and background fall within acceptable focus.

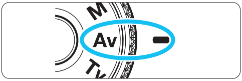
* <**Av**> stands for Aperture value (aperture opening).



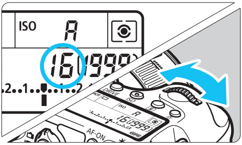
Blurred background
(With a low aperture f/number: f/5.6)



Sharp foreground and background
(With a high aperture f/number: f/32)



1 Set the Mode Dial to <**Av**>.

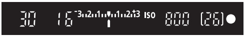


2 Set the desired aperture.

- While looking at the LCD panel, turn the <⚙> dial.

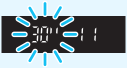
3 Focus the subject.

- Press the shutter button halfway.
- ▶ The shutter speed is set automatically.

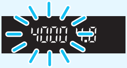


4 Check the viewfinder display and shoot.

- As long as the shutter speed is not blinking, a standard exposure will be obtained.



- If the "**30"**" shutter speed blinks, it indicates underexposure.
  Turn the <⚙> dial to set a larger aperture (lower f/number) until the shutter speed blinking stops or set a higher ISO speed.

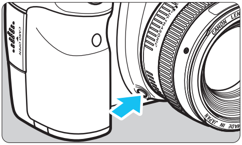


- If the "**4000**" shutter speed blinks, it indicates overexposure.
  Turn the <⚙> dial to set a smaller aperture (higher aperture f/number) until the shutter speed blinking stops or set a lower ISO speed.

Aperture Display
The higher the f/number, the smaller the aperture opening will be. The apertures displayed will differ depending on the lens. If no lens is attached to the camera, "**00**" will be displayed for the aperture.

Depth of Field Preview☆

The aperture opening (diaphragm) changes only at the moment when the picture is taken. Otherwise, the aperture remains fully open. Therefore, when you look at the scene through the viewfinder or on the LCD monitor, the depth of field will look narrow.



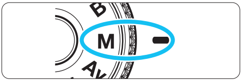
Press the depth-of-field preview button to stop down the lens to the current aperture setting and check the depth of field (range of acceptable focus).

- A higher f/number will make more of the foreground and background fall within acceptable focus. However, the viewfinder will look darker.
- The depth-of-field effect can be clearly seen on the Live View image as you change the aperture and press the depth-of-field preview button (p.180).
- The exposure will be locked (AE lock) while the depth-of-field preview button is pressed.

M: Manual Exposure

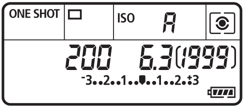
In this mode, you set both the shutter speed and aperture as desired. To determine the exposure, refer to the exposure level indicator in the viewfinder or use a commercially-available exposure meter. This method is called manual exposure.

* <**M**> stands for Manual.



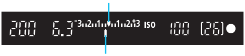
1 Set the Mode Dial to <M>.

2 Set the ISO speed (p.106).



3 Set the shutter speed and aperture.

- To set the shutter speed, turn the <⚙> dial.
- To set the aperture, turn the <◎> dial.
- If it cannot be set, set the <LOCK▶> switch to the left, then turn the <⚙> or <◎> dial.

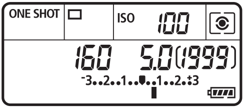


Standard exposure index

Exposure level mark

4 Focus the subject.

- Press the shutter button halfway.
- ▶ The exposure setting will be displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel.
- The exposure level mark <▮> indicates how far the current exposure level is from the standard exposure level.



5 Set the exposure and take the picture.

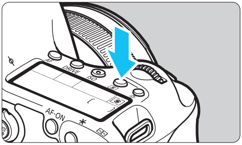
- Check the exposure level indicator and set the desired shutter speed and aperture.
- If the exposure level exceeds ±3 stops, the end of the exposure level indicator will display <◀> or <▶>.

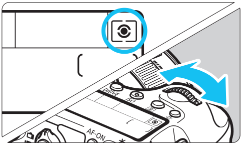
❗ If ISO Auto is set, the ISO speed setting will change to suit the shutter speed and aperture to obtain a standard exposure. Therefore, you may not obtain the desired exposure effect.

- In [**📷3: Auto Lighting Optimizer**], if the checkmark <√> for [**Disabled in M or B modes**] is removed, Auto Lighting Optimizer can be set in the <**M**> and <**B**> modes (p.125).
- When ISO Auto is set, you can press the <✱> button to lock the ISO speed.
- If you press the <✱> button and recompose the shot, you can see the exposure level difference on the exposure level indicator (p.22, 23) compared to when the <✱> button was pressed.

[◉] Selecting the Metering Mode☆

You can select one of four methods to measure the subject brightness. In Basic Zone modes, evaluative metering is set automatically.



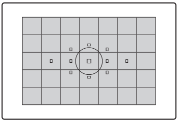


1 Press the <[◉]> button. (⏱6)

2 Select the metering mode.

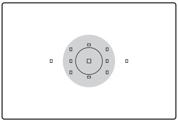
- While looking at the LCD panel, turn the <⚙> or <◯> dial.

[◉]: Evaluative metering
[○]: Partial metering
[•]: Spot metering
[ ]: Center-weighted average metering



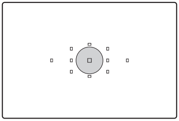
[◉] Evaluative metering

This is a general-purpose metering mode suited even for backlit subjects. The camera sets the exposure automatically to suit the scene.



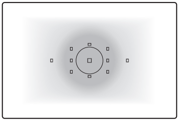
[○] Partial metering

Effective when the background is much brighter than the subject due to backlighting, etc. The metering is weighted at the center covering approx. 8.0% of the viewfinder area.



Spot metering

This is for metering a specific spot of the subject or scene. The metering is weighted at the center covering approx. 3.5% of the viewfinder area.



Center-weighted average metering

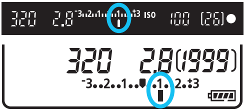
The metering is weighted at the center and then averaged for the entire scene.

- With (Evaluative metering), the exposure setting will be locked when you press the shutter button halfway and focus is achieved. In the (Partial), (Spot), and (Center-weighted average) metering modes, the exposure is set when the photo is taken. (Pressing the shutter button halfway does not lock the exposure.)
- When <> is set, <!> can be displayed on the lower left in the viewfinder (p.313).

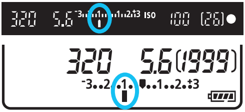
Setting Exposure Compensation ☆

Exposure compensation can brighten (increased exposure) or darken (decreased exposure) the standard exposure set by the camera. Exposure compensation can be set in the **P**/**Tv**/**Av** shooting modes. Although you can set the exposure compensation up to ±5 stops in 1/3-stop increments, the exposure compensation indicator in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel can only display the setting up to ±3 stops. If you want to set the exposure compensation setting beyond ±3 stops, you should use the Quick Control (p.49) or follow the instructions for [**📷3: Expo.comp./AEB**] on the next page.

Increased exposure for a brighter image



Decreased exposure for a darker image



1 Check the exposure level indicator.

- Press the shutter button halfway (⏱4) and check the exposure level indicator.

2 Set the exposure compensation amount.

- While looking at the viewfinder or LCD panel, turn the <◎> dial.
- If it cannot be set, set the <LOCK▶> switch to the left, then turn the <◎> dial.

3 Take the picture.

- To cancel the exposure compensation, set the exposure compensation amount back to <⫶>.

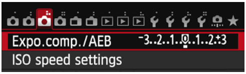
❗ If [**📷3: Auto Lighting Optimizer**] (p.125) is not set to [**Disable**], the image may still look bright even if a darker exposure compensation amount has been set.

- The exposure compensation amount will remain in effect even after you set the power switch to <OFF>.
- After setting the exposure compensation amount, you can set the <LOCK▶> switch to the right to prevent the exposure compensation amount from changing accidentally.
- If the exposure compensation amount exceeds ±3 stops, the end of the exposure level indicator will display <◀> or <▶>.

▨ Auto Exposure Bracketing (AEB)☆

By changing the shutter speed or aperture automatically, the camera brackets the exposure up to ±3 stops in 1/3-stop increments for three successive shots. This is called AEB.

* AEB stands for Auto Exposure Bracketing.

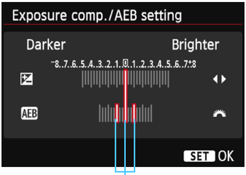


Expo.comp./AEB -3..2..1..0..1..2.+3

ISO speed settings

1 Select [Expo.comp./AEB].

- Under the [📷**3**] tab, select [**Expo.comp./AEB**], then press <SET>.



Exposure comp./AEB setting

Darker Brighter

-8..7..6..5..4..3..2..1..0..1..2..3..4..5..6..7.+8

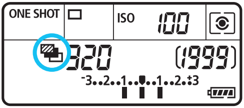
SET OK

AEB range

2 Set the AEB range.

- Turn the <⛭> dial to set the AEB range. Press the <◄►> key to set the exposure compensation amount.
- Press <SET> to set it.

▶ When you exit the menu, <▨> and the AEB range will be displayed on the LCD panel.



3 Take the picture.

- The three bracketed shots will be taken according to the drive mode set in this sequence: Standard exposure, decreased exposure, and increased exposure.
- AEB will not be automatically canceled. To cancel AEB, follow step 2 to turn off the AEB range display.

- During AEB shooting, <✱> in the viewfinder and <▨> on the LCD panel will blink.
- If the drive mode is set to <□> or <□S>, press the shutter button three times for each shot. When <⧉> or <⧉S> is set and you hold down the shutter button completely, the three bracketed shots will be taken continuously and the camera will automatically stop shooting. When <☉> or <☉2> is set, the three bracketed shots will be taken continuously after a 10-sec. or 2-sec. delay.
- You can set AEB in combination with exposure compensation.
- If the AEB range exceeds ±3 stops, the end of the exposure level indicator will display <◄> or <►>.
- AEB cannot be set for bulb exposures, or used with [**Multi Shot Noise Reduction**] or flash.
- AEB will be canceled automatically when you set the power switch to <OFF> or when the flash is ready to fire.

✱ AE Lock☆

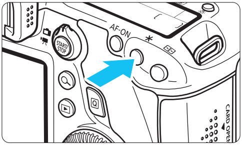
Use AE lock when the area of focus is to be different from the exposure metering area or when you want to take multiple shots at the same exposure setting. Press the <✱> button to lock the exposure, then recompose and take the shot. This is called AE lock. It is effective for backlit subjects.

---

1 Focus the subject.

- Press the shutter button halfway.

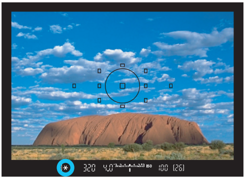
▶ The exposure setting will be displayed.



2 Press the <✱> button. (⏱4)

▶ The <✱> icon lights up in the viewfinder to indicate that the exposure setting is locked (AE lock).

- Each time you press the <✱> button, the current autoexposure setting is locked.



3 Recompose and take the picture.

- If you want to maintain the AE lock while taking more shots, hold down the <✱> button and press the shutter button to take another shot.

AE Lock Effects

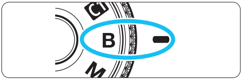
Metering Mode (p.149)	**AF Point Selection Method** (p.94)	
	Automatic Selection	**Manual Selection**
[◉]*	AE lock is applied at the AF point that achieved focus.	AE lock is applied at the selected AF point.
[○] [•] [ ]	AE lock is applied at the center AF point.	

* When the lens' focus mode switch is set to <**MF**>, AE lock is applied at the center AF point.

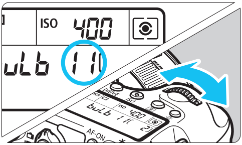
AE lock is not possible with bulb exposures.

B: Bulb Exposures

When bulb is set, the shutter stays open as long as you hold down the shutter button completely, and closes when you let go of the shutter button. This is called bulb exposure. Use bulb exposures for night scenes, fireworks, astronomical objects, and other subjects requiring long exposures.

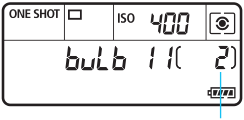


1 Set the Mode Dial to <B>.



2 Set the desired aperture.

- While looking at the LCD panel, turn the <☼> or <◎> dial.



Elapsed exposure time

3 Take the picture.

- The exposure will continue for as long as you keep the shutter button pressed completely.
- ▶ The elapsed exposure time will be displayed on the LCD panel.

- Long exposures produce more noise than usual.
- If ISO Auto is set, the ISO speed will be ISO 400 (p.108).

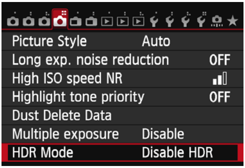
- When [**📷4: Long exp. noise reduction**] is set to [**Auto**] or [**Enable**], noise generated by the long exposure can be reduced (p.128).
- For bulb exposures, using a tripod and Remote Switch RS-80N3 (sold separately) or Timer Remote Controller TC-80N3 (sold separately) is recommended (p.167).
- You can also use a remote controller (sold separately, p.167) for bulb exposures. When you press the remote controller's transmit button, the bulb exposure will start immediately or 2 sec. later. Press the button again to stop the bulb exposure.

HDR: HDR (High Dynamic Range) Shooting☆

You can shoot images preserving a wide tonal range where the highlight and shadow detail would otherwise be lost. HDR shooting is effective for landscape and still-life shots.

With HDR shooting, three images of different exposures (standard exposure, underexposure, and overexposure) are captured for each shot and then merged together automatically. The HDR image is recorded as a JPEG image.

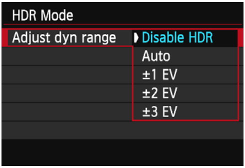
HDR Shooting



Picture Style Auto
Long exp. noise reduction OFF
High ISO speed NR
Highlight tone priority OFF
Dust Delete Data
Multiple exposure Disable
HDR Mode Disable HDR

1 Select [HDR Mode].

- Under the [📷**4**] tab, select [**HDR Mode**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The HDR mode screen will appear.

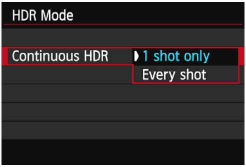


HDR Mode
Adjust dyn range Disable HDR
Auto
±1 EV
±2 EV
±3 EV

2 Set [Adjust dyn range].

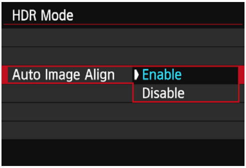
- Select the desired dynamic range setting, then press <SET>.
- Selecting [**Auto**] will have the dynamic range set automatically depending on the image's overall tonal range.
- The higher the number, the wider the dynamic range will be.
- To exit HDR shooting, select [**Disable HDR**].

- Only the merged HDR image will be saved. The three images used to produce the merged HDR image will not be saved.
- You cannot select RAW and RAW+JPEG. The HDR mode cannot be set if RAW or RAW+JPEG is set.
- If you set AEB, white balance bracketing, Multi Shot Noise Reduction, multiple shot exposures or if you shoot bulb exposures or a movie, HDR mode cannot be set.
- Flash will not fire during HDR shooting.


HDR Mode
Continuous HDR
1 shot only
Every shot

3 Set [Continuous HDR].

- Select either [**1 shot only**] or [**Every shot**], then press <SET>.
- With [**1 shot only**], HDR shooting will be canceled automatically after the shooting ends.
- With [**Every shot**], HDR shooting continues until the setting in step 2 is set to [**Disable HDR**].


HDR Mode
Auto Image Align
Enable
Disable

4 Set [Auto Image Align].

- For handheld shooting, select [**Enable**]. When using a tripod, select [**Disable**]. Then, press <SET>.

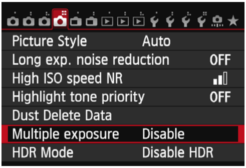
5 Take the picture.

- HDR shooting is possible with viewfinder shooting and Live View shooting.
- ▶ <**HDR**> will be displayed on the LCD panel.
- When you press the shutter button completely, three consecutive images will be captured, and the HDR image will be recorded to the card.

- If you shoot a moving subject, the subject's movement will leave afterimages.
- To prevent camera shake, the ISO speed may be set higher than usual.
- HDR shooting is not possible with ISO expansion. (HDR shooting is possible within the range of ISO 100 - 25600.)
- When shooting HDR images with [**Auto Image Align**] set to [**Enable**], AF point display information (p.240) and Dust Delete data (p.281) will not be appended to the image.
- If [**Auto Image Align**] is set to [**Enable**] and the HDR picture is shot handheld, the edges of the photos will be cropped, lowering the resolution slightly. Also, if the images cannot be aligned properly due to camera shake, etc., auto image alignment may not take effect. Note that when shooting with excessively bright or dark exposure settings, auto image alignment may not work properly.
- If you perform handheld HDR shooting while [**Auto Image Align**] is set to [**Disable**], the 3 images may not be properly aligned and the HDR effect may be minimal. In such a case, using a tripod is recommended.
- Auto image alignment may not work properly with repetitive patterns (lattice, stripes, etc.) or flat, single-tone images.
- The color gradation of the sky or white walls may not be reproduced correctly. Irregular colors or noise may appear.
- HDR shooting under fluorescent or LED lighting may result in unnatural color reproduction of the illuminated areas.
- Since HDR shooting merges the images, it will take a longer time to record the HDR image to the card than with normal shooting. During the processing of the images, "**buSY**" will be displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel and you cannot take another picture until the processing is completed.
- In HDR mode, the options grayed out in the camera menu cannot be set. Note that when you set HDR mode, the Auto Lighting Optimizer, highlight tone priority, and exposure simulation will be set to [**Disable**] before shooting.

Multiple Exposures☆

You can shoot two to nine exposures to be merged into one image. If you shoot multiple-exposure images with Live View shooting (p.179), you can see how the single exposures merge while shooting.

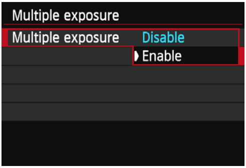


Picture Style Auto
Long exp. noise reduction OFF
High ISO speed NR
Highlight tone priority OFF
Dust Delete Data
Multiple exposure Disable
HDR Mode Disable HDR

1 Select [Multiple exposure].

- Under the [**📷4**] tab, select [**Multiple exposure**], then press <SET>.

▶ The multiple exposure setting screen will appear.

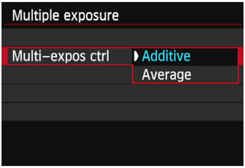


Multiple exposure
Multiple exposure Disable
Enable

2 Set [Multiple exposure].

- Select [**Enable**], then press <SET>.
- To exit shooting multiple exposures, select [**Disable**].

- During continuous shooting, the continuous shooting speed will decrease greatly.
- If you set white balance bracketing, Multi Shot Noise Reduction, the HDR mode or if you shoot a movie, multiple exposure shooting cannot be set.
- When Wi-Fi function is used, multiple exposure shooting cannot be set.
- During multiple-exposure shooting, Auto Lighting Optimizer, highlight tone priority, peripheral illumination correction and chromatic aberration correction will be disabled.
- The image-recording quality, ISO speed, Picture Style, high ISO speed noise reduction and color space, etc. set for the first single exposure will also be set for the subsequent exposures.
- If the Picture Style is [**Auto**], the [**Standard**] Picture Style will be set for shooting.



Multiple exposure

Multi-expos ctrl ▸Additive

Average

3 Set [Multi-expos ctrl].

- Select the desired multiple-exposure control method, then press <SET>.

- **Additive**

  The exposure of each single exposure is added cumulatively. Based on the [**No. of exposures**], set a negative exposure compensation. Refer to the basic guide below to set a negative exposure compensation.

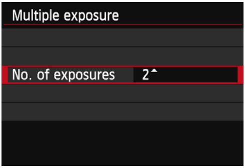
  Exposure Compensation Setting Guide for Multiple Exposures

  Two exposures: -1 stop, three exposures: -1.5 stop, four exposures: -2 stops

  If [**Additive**] is set, the image displayed during shooting may look noisy. However, when you finish shooting the set number of exposures, noise reduction will be applied and the final multiple-exposure image will look less noisy.

- **Average**

  Based on the [**No. of exposures**], negative exposure compensation is set automatically as you shoot multiple exposures. If you shoot multiple exposures of the same scene, the exposure of the subject's background will be automatically controlled to obtain a standard exposure. If you want to change the exposure of each single exposure, select [**Additive**].

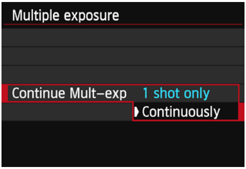


Multiple exposure

No. of exposures 2

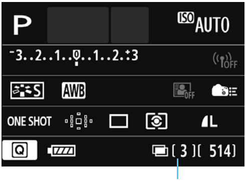
4 Set the [No. of exposures].

- Press the <▲▼> key to select the number of exposures, then press <SET>.
- You can set it from 2 to 9 exposures.



5 Set [Continue Mult-exp].

- Select either [**1 shot only**] or [**Continuously**], then press <SET>.
- With [**1 shot only**], multiple-exposure shooting will be canceled automatically after the shooting ends.
- With [**Continuously**], multiple-exposure shooting continues until the setting in step 2 is set to [**Disable**].



Remaining number of exposures

6 Take the first exposure.

▶ The captured image will be displayed.

▶ The <▣> icon will blink.

- The number of remaining exposures is displayed in brackets [ ] in the viewfinder or on the screen.
- Pressing the <▶> button enables you to view the captured image (p.163).

7 Shoot subsequent exposures.

▶ Captured images will be displayed overlaid on previous images.

- With Live View shooting, the multiple-exposure images merged so far will be displayed. By pressing the <INFO.> button, you can display only the Live View image.
- After you shoot the set number of exposures, multiple-exposure shooting will be canceled. With continuous shooting, after you finish shooting the set number of exposures while holding down the shutter button, the shooting will stop.

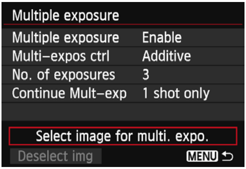
- Only the merged multiple-exposure image will be saved. The images taken in steps 6 and 7 for the multiple-exposure image will not be saved.
- With multiple exposures, the more exposures there are, the more noticeable the noise, irregular colors, and banding will be. Also, as noise increases with higher ISO speeds, shooting at low ISO speeds is recommended.
- If [**Additive**] is set, the image processing after taking the multiple exposures will take time. (The access lamp will light up for longer than usual.)
- If you perform Live View shooting while [**Additive**] is set, the Live View function will stop automatically when the multiple-exposure shooting ends.
- In step 7, the brightness and noise of the multiple-exposure image displayed during Live View shooting will be different from the final multiple-exposure image recorded.
- If the power switch is set to <OFF> or the battery is replaced after you set multiple exposure settings, multiple-exposure shooting will be canceled.
- If you switch the shooting mode to a Basic Zone mode or <C1/C2> while shooting, multiple-exposure shooting will end.
- When multiple exposure is set or while you shoot multiple exposures, you cannot use the functions grayed out in the camera menu.
- If you connect the camera to a computer or printer, multiple-exposure shooting is not possible.

You can press the <▶> button to view the multiple exposures taken so far or delete the last single exposure (p.163).

Merging Multiple Exposures with an Image Recorded in the Card

You can select an image recorded in the card as the first single exposure. The original of the selected image will remain intact.

You can only select RAW images. You cannot select M RAW/S RAW or JPEG images.



Multiple exposure

Multiple exposure Enable

Multi-expos ctrl Additive

No. of exposures 3

Continue Mult-exp 1 shot only

1 Select [Select image for multi. expo.].

- Select [**Select image for multi. expo.**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The images in the card will be displayed.

2 Select an image.

- Turn the <◎> dial to select the image to be used as the first single exposure, then press <SET>.
- Select [**OK**].
- ▶ The file No. of the selected image will be displayed at the bottom of the screen.

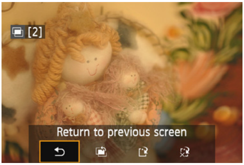
3 Take the picture.

- When you select the first image, the number of remaining exposures as set with [**No. of exposures**] will decrease by 1. For example, if [**No. of exposures**] is 3, you can shoot two exposures.

- Images shot with highlight tone priority set to [**Enable**] and images whose aspect ratio is not 3:2 (p.188) cannot be selected as the first single exposure.
- Auto Lighting Optimizer, peripheral illumination correction and chromatic aberration correction will be disabled, regardless of the settings of the RAW image selected as the first single exposure.
- The ISO speed, Picture Style, high ISO speed noise reduction, and color space, etc. set for the first RAW image will also be set for the subsequent images.
- If the first RAW image's Picture Style is [**Auto**], the [**Standard**] Picture Style will be set for the subsequent images.
- You cannot select an image taken with another camera.

- You can also select a RAW multiple-exposure image as the first single exposure.
- If you select [**Deselect img**], the selected image will be canceled.

Checking and Deleting Multiple Exposures During Shooting



Before you finish shooting the set number of exposures, you can press the <▶> button to view the merged multiple-exposure image so far. You can check how it looks and the exposure.

If you press the <🗑> button, the operations possible during multiple-exposure shooting will be displayed.

Operation	Description
↩ **Return to previous screen**	The operations will disappear and the screen before you pressed the <🗑> button will reappear.
Undo last image	Deletes the last image you shot (shoot another image). The number of remaining exposures will increase by 1.
Save and exit	The images shot so far will be merged and saved as a multiple-exposure image.
Exit without saving	Multiple-exposure shooting will exit without saving the images shot.

During multiple-exposure shooting, you can only play back multiple-exposure images.

? FAQ

- **Are there any restrictions on the image-recording quality?**
  All JPEG image-recording quality settings can be selected. If M RAW or S RAW is set, the merged multiple-exposure will be a RAW image.

Image-Recording Quality Setting	Merged Multiple-Exposure
JPEG	JPEG
RAW	RAW
M RAW/S RAW	RAW
RAW+JPEG	RAW+JPEG
M RAW/S RAW+JPEG	RAW+JPEG

- **Can I merge images recorded in the card?**
  With [**Select image for multi. expo.**], you can select the first single exposure from the images recorded on the card (p.162). Note that you cannot merge multiple images already recorded on the card.

- **Are multiple exposures possible with Live View shooting?**
  Shooting multiple exposures is also possible with Live View shooting (p.179). Note that [**📷1: Aspect ratio**] will be fixed at [**3:2**].

- **Will auto power off take effect during multiple-exposure shooting?**
  As long as [**🔧2: Auto power off**] is not set to [**Disable**], the power will turn off automatically after 30 min. of non-operation. If the auto power off takes effect, multiple-exposure shooting will end, and multiple-exposure settings will be canceled.
  Before starting the multiple-exposure shooting, the auto power off will take effect as set with the camera, and multiple-exposure settings will be canceled.

Mirror Lockup☆

Although using the self-timer or Remote Switch can prevent camera shake, using mirror lockup to prevent camera vibrations (mirror shock) can also help when you use a super telephoto lens or shoot close ups (macro photography).

1 Set [Mirror lockup] to [Enable].

- Under the [**2**] tab, select [**Mirror lockup**], then press <SET>.
- Select [**Enable**], then press <SET>.

2 Focus the subject, then press the shutter button completely.

▶ The mirror will swing up.

3 Press the shutter button completely again.

▶ The picture is taken and the mirror goes back down.

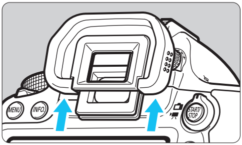
- In very bright light such as at the beach or a ski slope on a sunny day, take the picture promptly after mirror lockup.
- Do not point the camera toward the sun. The sun's heat can scorch and damage the shutter curtains.
- If you use the self-timer and bulb exposure in combination with a mirror lockup, keep pressing the shutter button completely (self-timer delay time + bulb exposure time). If you let go of the shutter button during the self-timer countdown, there will be a shutter-release sound, but no picture will be taken.
- During mirror lockup, shooting function settings and menu operations, etc. are disabled.

- Even if the drive mode is set to continuous shooting, only one shot can be taken.
- You can also use the self-timer with mirror lockup.
- If 30 seconds elapse after the mirror has locked up, it will go back down automatically. Pressing the shutter button completely again locks up the mirror again.
- For mirror lockup, using a tripod and Remote Switch RS-80N3 (sold separately) or Timer Remote Controller TC-80N3 (sold separately) is recommended (p.167).
- You can also use a remote controller (sold separately, p.167). Setting the remote controller to a 2-sec. delay is recommended.

Using the Eyepiece Cover

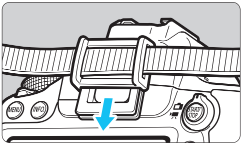
When you use the self-timer, bulb, or Remote Switch and do not look through the viewfinder, stray light entering the viewfinder can cause the image to look dark. To prevent this, use the eyepiece cover (p.27) attached to the camera strap.

During Live View shooting and movie shooting, attaching the eyepiece cover is unnecessary.



1 Detach the eyecup.

- Push the bottom of the eyecup to detach.

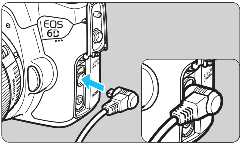


2 Attach the eyepiece cover.

- Slide the eyepiece cover down into the eyepiece groove to attach it.
- After taking the picture, detach the eyepiece cover and attach the eyecup by sliding it down into the eyepiece groove.

Using a Remote Switch

You can connect the Remote Switch RS-80N3, Timer Remote Controller TC-80N3 (both sold separately), or any EOS accessory equipped with an N3-type terminal to the camera for shooting (p.354). To operate the accessory, refer to its instruction manual.



1. **Open the terminal cover.**

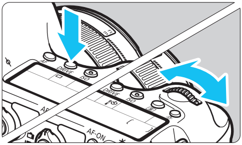
2. **Connect the plug to the remote control terminal.**
   - Connect the plug as shown in the illustration.
   - To disconnect the plug, grasp the silver part and pull.

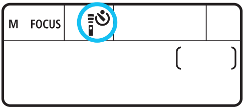
Remote Control Shooting

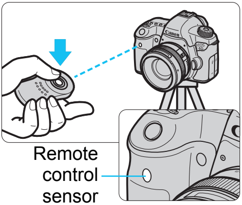
With Remote Controller RC-6 (sold separately), you can shoot remotely up to approx. 5 meters/16.4 feet from the camera. You can either shoot immediately or use a 2-sec. delay.
You can also use Remote Controller RC-1 and RC-5.

1. **Focus the subject.**

2. **Set the lens focus mode switch to <MF>.**
   - You can also shoot with <AF>.







3 Press the <DRIVE> button. (⏱6)

4 Select the self-timer.

- Look at the LCD panel and turn the <⚙> dial to select <▮⏲> or <▮⏲2>.

5 Press the remote controller's transmit button.

- Point the remote controller toward the camera's remote control sensor and press the transmit button.
- ▶ The self-timer lamp lights up and the picture is taken.

Fluorescent or LED lighting may cause camera misoperation by triggering the shutter inadvertently. Try to keep the camera away from such light sources.

Remote control shooting is also possible with devices such as an EX-series Speedlite equipped with a remote-release function.

6

Flash Photography

This chapter explains how to shoot with an EOS-dedicated, EX-series Speedlite (sold separately) or non-Canon flash unit and how to set flash functions on the camera's menu screen.

ϟ Flash Photography

EOS-dedicated, EX-series Speedlites

An EX-series Speedlite (sold separately) makes flash photography as easy as normal shooting.

For detailed instructions, refer to the EX-series Speedlite's instruction manual. This camera is a Type-A camera that can use all the features of EX-series Speedlites.

To set the flash functions and flash Custom Functions with the camera's menu, see pages 172-177.

Shoe-mount Speedlites

Macro Lites

- **FE lock**
  This enables you to attain a proper flash exposure for a specific part of the subject. Aim the viewfinder center over the subject, then press the camera's <✱> button and take the picture.
- **Flash exposure compensation**
  In the same way as normal exposure compensation, flash exposure compensation can be set. You can set flash exposure compensation up to ±3 stops in 1/3-stop increments.
  Set it with the Quick Control screen (p.49) or [**📷2: External Speedlite control**]'s [**Flash function settings**]. When you press the shutter button halfway, the <ϟ±> icon will appear in the viewfinder.

If [**📷3: Auto Lighting Optimizer**] (p.125) is not set to [**Disable**], the image may still look bright even if a darker flash exposure compensation amount has been set.

When it is difficult to achieve focus with autofocus, the EOS-dedicated, external Speedlite may automatically emit the AF-assist beam.

Canon Speedlites Other Than the EX-series

- **With an EZ/E/EG/ML/TL-series Speedlite set to A-TTL or TTL autoflash mode, the flash can be fired at full output only.**
  Set the camera's shooting mode to <**M**> (manual exposure) or <**Av**> (aperture-priority AE) and adjust the aperture setting before shooting.
- When using a Speedlite that has manual flash mode, shoot in the manual flash mode.

Using Non-Canon Flash Units

Sync Speed

The camera can synchronize with non-Canon compact flash units at 1/180 sec. and slower speeds. With large studio flash units, be sure to test the flash synchronization before shooting with the sync speed set within approx. 1/60 sec. to 1/30 sec., since the flash duration of such units is longer than that of compact flash units and vary depending on the models.

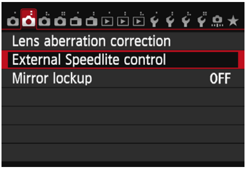
Cautions for Live View shooting

If you use a non-Canon flash unit with Live View shooting, set [**📷2: Silent LV shoot.**] to [**Disable**] (p.190). The flash will not fire if it is set to [**Mode 1**] or [**Mode 2**].

- If the camera is used with a flash unit or flash accessory dedicated to another camera brand, the camera may not operate properly and malfunction may result.
- Do not attach a high-voltage flash unit on the camera's hot shoe. It may not fire.

MENU Setting the Flash☆

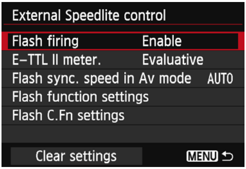
With an EX-series Speedlite having compatible flash function settings, you can use the camera's menu screen to set the Speedlite's functions and Custom Functions. **Attach the Speedlite to the camera and turn on the Speedlite before starting these settings.**
For details on the Speedlite's functions, refer to the Speedlite's instruction manual.



Lens aberration correction
External Speedlite control
Mirror lockup OFF

1 Select [External Speedlite control].

- Under the [📷**2**] tab, select [**External Speedlite control**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The external Speedlite control screen will appear.

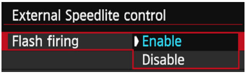


External Speedlite control
Flash firing Enable
E-TTL II meter. Evaluative
Flash sync. speed in Av mode AUTO
Flash function settings
Flash C.Fn settings
Clear settings MENU ↩

2 Select the desired option.

- Select the menu option to be set, then press <SET>.

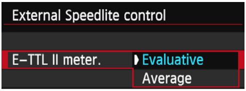
Flash Firing



External Speedlite control
Flash firing ▸Enable
Disable

To enable flash photography, set [**Enable**]. To enable only the AF-assist beam to be emitted, set [**Disable**].

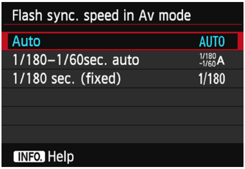
E-TTL II Flash Metering



External Speedlite control
E-TTL II meter. ▸Evaluative
Average

For normal flash exposures, set it to [**Evaluative**]. If [**Average**] is set, the flash exposure will be averaged for the entire metered scene. Flash exposure compensation may be necessary. This setting is for advanced users.

Flash Synchronization Speed in Av Mode



Flash sync. speed in Av mode

Auto	AUTO
1/180–1/60sec. auto	1/180-1/60A
1/180 sec. (fixed)	1/180

INFO. Help

You can set the flash-sync speed for flash photography in the aperture-priority AE (**Av**) mode.

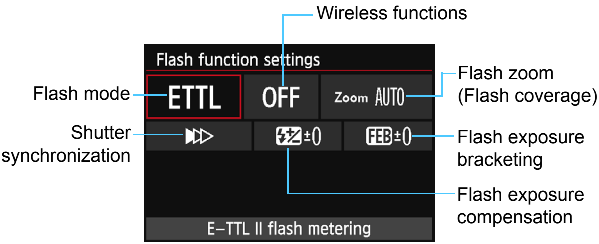
- **AUTO: Auto**
  The flash sync speed is set automatically within a range of 1/180 sec. to 30 sec. to suit the scene's brightness. High-speed sync is also possible.
- **1/180-1/60A: 1/180-1/60 sec. auto**
  Prevents a slow shutter speed from being set in low-light conditions. It is effective for preventing subject blur and camera shake. However, while the subject will be properly exposed with the flash, the background may come out dark.
- **1/180: 1/180 sec. (fixed)**
  The flash-sync speed is fixed at 1/180 sec. This more effectively prevents subject blur and camera shake than with [**1/180-1/60 sec. auto**]. However, in low light, the subject background will come out darker than with [**1/180-1/60 sec. auto**].

If [**1/180-1/60 sec. auto**] or [**1/180 sec. (fixed)**] is set, high-speed sync is not possible in the <**Av**> mode.

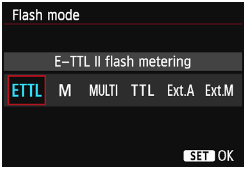
Flash Function Settings

On the screen, the settable functions and the display will differ depending on the Speedlite, current flash mode, flash Custom Function settings, etc.
For details on your Speedlite's flash functions, refer to the Speedlite's instruction manual.

Sample display

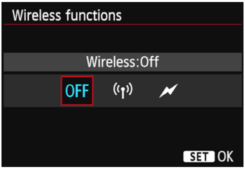

Wireless functions
Flash function settings
Flash mode
ETTL
OFF
Zoom AUTO
Flash zoom (Flash coverage)
Shutter synchronization
±0
FEB±0
Flash exposure bracketing
Flash exposure compensation
E-TTL II flash metering

- **Flash mode**
  You can select the flash mode to suit your desired flash shooting.


Flash mode
E-TTL II flash metering
ETTL
M
MULTI
TTL
Ext.A
Ext.M
SET OK

[**E-TTL II flash metering**] is the standard mode of EX-series Speedlites for automatic flash shooting.
The [**Manual flash**] mode is for setting the Speedlite's [**Flash output level**] yourself.
For other flash modes, refer to the Speedlite's instruction manual.

Wireless functions

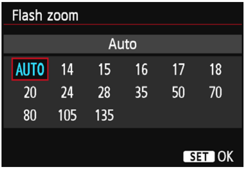


Wireless functions

Wireless:Off

Wireless (multiple) flash shooting is possible with radio or optical transmission. For details on wireless flash, refer to the Speedlite's instruction manual.

Flash zoom (Flash coverage)

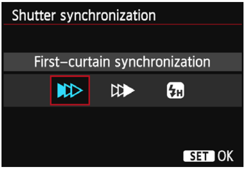


Flash zoom

Auto

With Speedlites having a zooming flash head, you can set the flash coverage. Normally, set this to [**AUTO**] so that the camera will automatically set the flash coverage to match the lens focal length.

Shutter synchronization



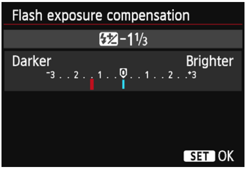
Shutter synchronization

First–curtain synchronization

Normally, set this to [**First-curtain synchronization**] so that the flash fires immediately after the exposure starts.

If [**Second-curtain synchronization**] is set, the flash will fire right before the shutter closes. When this is combined with a slow shutter speed, you can create a trail of light such as from car headlights at night. With Second-curtain synchronization, two flashes will be fired: Once when you press the shutter button completely, and once immediately before the exposure ends.
If [**High-speed synchronization**] is set, the flash can be used at all shutter speeds. This is especially effective for portraits using fill flash when you want to give priority to the aperture setting.

- **Flash exposure compensation**

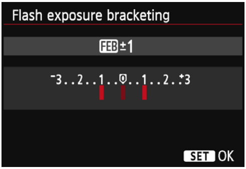


Flash exposure compensation

-1⅓

The same setting as “Flash exposure compensation” on page 170 can be set. For details, refer to the Speedlite’s instruction manual.

- **Flash exposure bracketing**



Flash exposure bracketing

FEB±1

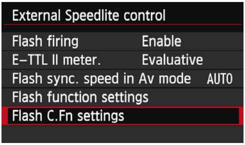
While the flash output is changed automatically, three shots are taken. For details, refer to the instruction manual of a Speedlite compatible with flash exposure bracketing.

When using second-curtain synchronization, set the shutter speed to 1/25 sec. or slower. If the shutter speed is 1/30 sec. or faster, first-curtain synchronization will be used automatically even if [**Second-curtain synchronization**] is set.

- With an EX-series Speedlite not compatible with flash function settings, you can only set the following: [**Flash firing**], [**E-TTL II meter.**], and [**Flash exposure compensation**] under [**Flash function settings**]. ([**Shutter synchronization**] can also be set with certain EX-series Speedlites.)
- If flash exposure compensation is set with the Speedlite, you cannot set the flash exposure compensation on the camera (with the flash function settings). If it is set with both the camera and Speedlite, the Speedlite’s setting overrides the camera’s.

Flash Custom Function Settings

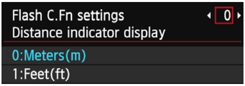
For details on the Speedlite's Custom Functions, refer to the Speedlite's instruction manual.



External Speedlite control
Flash firing Enable
E-TTL II meter. Evaluative
Flash sync. speed in Av mode AUTO
Flash function settings
Flash C.Fn settings

1 Select [Flash C.Fn settings].

- Select [**Flash C.Fn settings**], then press <SET>.

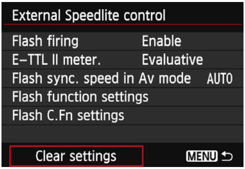


Flash C.Fn settings ◂ 0 ▸
Distance indicator display
0:Meters(m)
1:Feet(ft)

2 Set the functions.

- Press the <◄►> key to select the number, then press <SET>.
- Select the setting, then press <SET>.

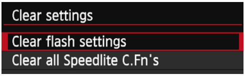
Clear Settings



External Speedlite control
Flash firing Enable
E-TTL II meter. Evaluative
Flash sync. speed in Av mode AUTO
Flash function settings
Flash C.Fn settings
Clear settings MENU ↩

1 Select [Clear settings].

- Under the [**📷2: External Speedlite control**] tab, select [**Clear settings**], then press <SET>.



Clear settings
Clear flash settings
Clear all Speedlite C.Fn's

2 Select the settings to be cleared.

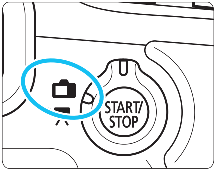
- Select either [**Clear flash settings**] or [**Clear all Speedlite C.Fn's**], then press <SET>.
- When you select [**OK**], the respective flash settings will be cleared.

With an EX-series Speedlite, if the [**Flash metering mode**] Custom Function is set to [**TTL**] (autoflash), the Speedlite will always fire at full output.

The Speedlite's Personal Functions (P.Fn) cannot be set or canceled with the camera's [**External Speedlite control**] screen. Set it with the Speedlite.

7

Shooting with the LCD Monitor (Live View Shooting)



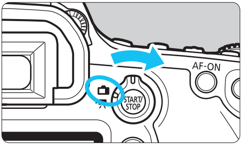
You can shoot while viewing the picture on the camera’s LCD monitor. This is called “Live View shooting”.
Live View shooting is enabled by setting the Live View shooting/ Movie shooting switch to <📷>.

Live View shooting is effective for photos of still subjects. If you handhold the camera and shoot while viewing the LCD monitor, camera shake can cause blurred images. Using a tripod is recommended.

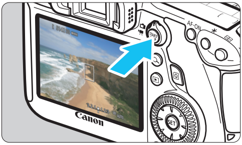
About Remote Live View Shooting

With EOS Utility (provided software, p.392) installed in your computer, you can connect the camera to the computer and shoot remotely while viewing the computer screen. For details, refer to the Software Instruction Manual (p.395) on the CD-ROM.

📷 Shooting with the LCD Monitor

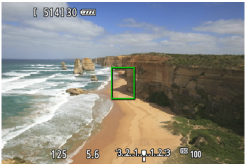


1 Set the Live View shooting/Movie shooting switch to <📷>.



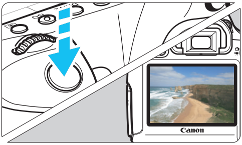
2 Display the Live View image.

- Press the <START/STOP> button.
- ▶ The Live View image will appear on the LCD monitor.
- The Live View image will closely reflect the brightness level of the actual image you capture.



3 Focus the subject.

- When you press the shutter button halfway, the camera will focus with the current AF method (p.192).

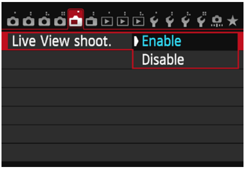


4 Take the picture.

- Press the shutter button completely.
- ▶ The picture will be taken and the captured image is displayed on the LCD monitor.
- ▶ After the image review ends, the camera will return to Live View shooting automatically.
- Press the <START/STOP> button to exit Live View shooting.

- The image's field of view is approx. 100% (with the image-recording quality set to JPEG ◢L).
- In Creative Zone modes, you can check the depth of field by pressing the depth-of-field preview button.
- During continuous shooting, the exposure set for the first shot will also be applied to subsequent shots.
- You can also use a remote controller (sold separately, p.167) for Live View shooting.

Enabling Live View Shooting


Live View shoot. ▸Enable

Disable

Set [**📷1: Live View shoot.**] to [**Enable**].

Number of Possible Shots with Live View Shooting

[Approx. number of shots]

Temperature	Room Temperature (23°C / 73°F)	Low Temperature (0°C / 32°F)
Possible shots	220	190

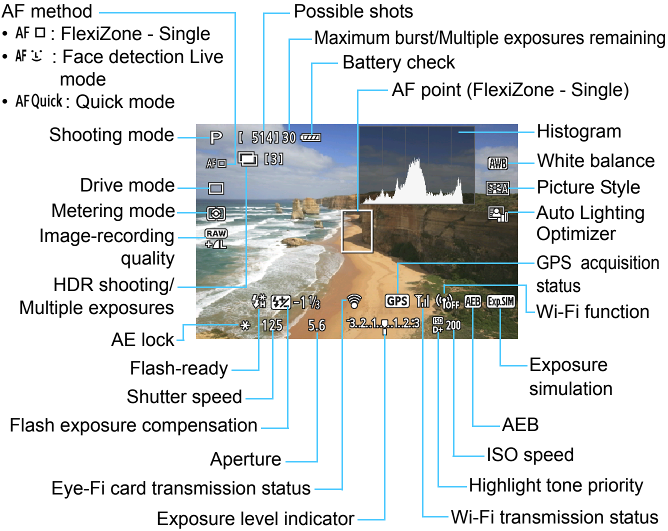
- The figures above are based on a fully-charged Battery Pack LP-E6 and CIPA (Camera & Imaging Products Association) testing standards.
- With a fully-charged Battery Pack LP-E6, continuous Live View shooting is possible for approx. 1 hr. 45 min. at room temperature (23°C / 73°F).

- During Live View shooting, do not point the lens toward the sun. The sun's heat can damage the camera's internal components.
- **Cautions for using Live View shooting are on pages 201-202.**

- You can also focus by pressing the <AF-ON> button.
- When flash is used, there will be two shutter sounds, but only one shot will be taken.
- If the camera is not operated for a prolonged period, the power will turn off automatically as set with [**🔧2: Auto power off**] (p.55). If [**🔧2: Auto power off**] is set to [**Disable**], Live View shooting will end automatically after 30 min. (camera power remains on).
- With the stereo AV cable (provided) or HDMI cable (sold separately), you can display the Live View image on a TV (p.261, 264).

About the Information Display

- Each time you press the <INFO.> button, the information display will change.


AF method
• AF ☐ : FlexiZone - Single
• AF ☺ : Face detection Live mode
• AFQuick : Quick mode
Shooting mode
Drive mode
Metering mode
Image-recording quality
HDR shooting/ Multiple exposures
AE lock
Flash-ready
Shutter speed
Flash exposure compensation
Aperture
Eye-Fi card transmission status
Exposure level indicator
Possible shots
Maximum burst/Multiple exposures remaining
Battery check
AF point (FlexiZone - Single)
Histogram
White balance
Picture Style
Auto Lighting Optimizer
GPS acquisition status
Wi-Fi function
Exposure simulation
AEB
ISO speed
Highlight tone priority
Wi-Fi transmission status
P
[514] 30
[3]
AWB
RAW
+4L
-1⅓
125
5.6
3..2..1..0..1..2.:3
GPS
AEB
Exp.SIM
ISO
D+
200

- The histogram can be displayed when [📷**1: Expo. simulation: Enable**] (p.189) is set.
- You can display the electronic level by pressing the <INFO.> button (p.60). Note that if the AF method is set to [☺ **Live mode**] or the camera is connected to a TV set with an HDMI cable, the electronic level cannot be displayed.
- When <Exp.SIM> is displayed in white, it indicates that the Live View image brightness is close to what the captured image will look like.
- If <Exp.SIM> is blinking, it indicates that the Live View image is not being displayed at the suitable brightness due to low- or bright-light conditions. However, the actual image recorded will reflect the exposure setting.
- If flash is used or bulb is set, the <Exp.SIM> icon and histogram will be grayed out (for your reference). The histogram may not be properly displayed in low- or bright-light conditions.

Scene Icons

During Live View shooting in the <A+> mode, an icon representing the scene detected by the camera will be displayed and the shooting will be adapted to that scene. For certain scenes or shooting conditions, the icon displayed may not match the actual scene.

Subject	Portrait*1		Non-portrait			Background Color
Background		Movement	Nature and Outdoor Scene	Movement	Close*2	
Bright	👤	👤≡	A+	●≡	🌷	Gray
Backlit	👤☀	👤≡☀	☀	●≡☀	🌷☀	
Blue sky included	👤	👤≡	A+	●≡	🌷	Light blue
Backlit	👤☀	👤≡☀	☀	●≡☀	🌷☀	
Sunset	*3		🌅		*3	Orange
Spotlight	▲👤		▲		▲🌷	Dark blue
Dark	👤		A+		🌷	
With tripod	👤🌙 *4*5	*3	🌙 *4*5	*3		

*1: Displayed only when the AF method is set to [☺ **Live mode**]. If another AF method is set, the "Non-portrait" icon will be displayed even if a person is detected.

*2: Displayed when the attached lens has distance information. With an Extension Tube or Closeup Lens, the icon displayed may not match the actual scene.

*3: The icon suiting the scene detected will be displayed.

*4: Displayed when all the following conditions apply: The shooting scene is dark, it is a night scene, and the camera is mounted on a tripod.

<→ Continued on next page>

*5: Displayed with any of the lenses below:

- EF24mm f/2.8 IS USM
- EF300mm f/2.8L IS II USM
- EF500mm f/4L IS II USM
- EF28mm f/2.8 IS USM
- EF400mm f/2.8L IS II USM
- EF600mm f/4L IS II USM
- Image Stabilizer lenses marketed in 2012 or later.

*4 and *5: If the conditions in both *4 and *5 apply, the shutter speed will become slow (as slow as 2 sec.).

Final Image Simulation

The final image simulation reflects the effects of the Picture Style, white balance, etc., in the Live View image so you can see what the captured image will look like.
During shooting, the Live View image will automatically reflect the function settings listed below.

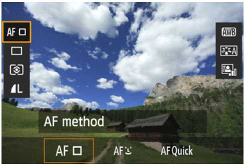
Final Image Simulation During Live View Shooting

- Picture Style
  * All settings such as sharpness, contrast, color saturation, and color tone will be reflected.
- White balance
- White balance correction
- Ambience-based shots
- Light/scene-based shots
- Metering mode
- Exposure (with [**📷1: Expo. simulation: Enable**] set)
- Depth of field (with depth-of-field preview button ON)
- Auto Lighting Optimizer
- Peripheral illumination correction
- Highlight tone priority
- Aspect ratio (image area confirmation)

Shooting Function Settings

Q Quick Control

If you press the <Q> button while the Live View image is displayed in a Creative Zone mode, you can set any of the following: **AF method**, **drive mode**, metering mode, **image-recording quality**, white balance, Picture Style, and Auto Lighting Optimizer.
In Basic Zone modes, you can set the functions in bold and the settings shown in the table on page 83.



1 Press the <Q> button.

▶ The settable functions will be displayed.

2 Select a function and set it.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select a function.

▶ The selected function and Feature guide (p.63) will appear.

- Turn the <⚙> or <◎> dial to change the setting.
- In the <SCN> mode, select the shooting mode box, then press <SET> to select the shooting mode.
- To set the RAW image-recording quality or Picture Style parameters, press the <INFO.> button.

3 Exit the setting.

- Press <SET> to finalize the setting and return to Live View shooting.

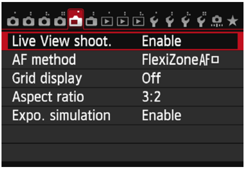
AF / DRIVE / ISO / ◉ / ⊞ Settings

While the Live View image is displayed, if you press the <AF>, <DRIVE>, <ISO>, or <◉> button, the setting screen will appear on the LCD monitor and you can turn the <⚙> or <◯> dial to set the respective shooting function.
When Quick mode is set, you can press the <⊞> button to select the AF point. The operation procedure is the same as with viewfinder shooting.

- When you set ◌ (Partial metering) or ⊡ (Spot metering), a metering circle will be displayed in the center.
- During Live View shooting, the exposure is set at the moment the picture is taken, regardless of the metering mode.

MENU Menu Function Settings

[📷1] Menu



Live View shoot.	Enable
AF method	FlexiZoneAF□
Grid display	Off
Aspect ratio	3:2
Expo. simulation	Enable

Function settings particular to Live View shooting are explained here. Details of menu items under the [📷1] and [📷2] tabs are on pages 187-191. In Basic Zone modes, certain items under the [📷1] tab will not appear and the [📷2] tab will not appear.

The settable functions on this menu screen apply only to Live View shooting. These functions do not take effect during viewfinder shooting.

- **Live View shooting**
  You can set Live View shooting to [**Enable**] or [**Disable**].
- **AF method**
  You can select [**FlexiZoneAF□** (Single)] (p.192), [☺ **Live mode**] (p.193), or [**Quick mode**] (p.197).
- **Grid display**
  With [**3x3** ⌗] or [**6x4** ▦], you can display grid lines. It can help you level the camera vertically or horizontally. Also, with [**3x3+diag** ⋇], the grid is displayed together with diagonal lines to help you align the intersections over the subject for better balance in the composition.

- **Aspect ratio** ☆

  The image’s aspect ratio can be set to [**3:2**], [**4:3**], [**16:9**], or [**1:1**]. The area surrounding the Live View image is masked in black when the following aspect ratios are set: [**4:3**] [**16:9**] [**1:1**].

  JPEG images will be saved with the set aspect ratio. RAW images will always be saved with the [**3:2**] aspect ratio. Since the aspect ratio information is appended to the RAW image, the image can be generated in the respective aspect ratio when you process the RAW image with the camera and the provided software.

Image Quality	Aspect Ratio and Pixel Count (approx.)			
	3:2	**4:3**	**16:9**	**1:1**
L / RAW	5472x3648 (20.0 megapixels)	4864x3648 (17.7 megapixels)	5472x3072* (16.8 megapixels)	3648x3648 (13.3 megapixels)
M RAW	4104x2736 (11.0 megapixels)	3648x2736 (10.0 megapixels)	4104x2310* (9.5 megapixels)	2736x2736 (7.5 megapixels)
M	3648x2432 (8.9 megapixels)	3248x2432* (7.9 megapixels)	3648x2048* (7.5 megapixels)	2432x2432 (5.9 megapixels)
S1/S RAW	2736x1824 (5.0 megapixels)	2432x1824 (4.4 megapixels)	2736x1536* (4.2 megapixels)	1824x1824 (3.3 megapixels)
S2	1920x1280 (2.5 megapixels)	1696x1280* (2.2 megapixels)	1920x1080 (2.1 megapixels)	1280x1280 (1.6 megapixels)
S3	720x480 (350,000 pixels)	640x480 (310,000 pixels)	720x408* (290,000 pixels)	480x480 (230,000 pixels)

- The asterisked image-recording quality settings do not match the respective aspect ratio exactly.
- The image area displayed for the asterisked aspect ratio is slightly larger than the recorded area. Check the captured images on the LCD monitor when shooting.
- If you use a different camera to directly print images shot with this camera in the 1:1 aspect ratio, the images may not be correctly printed.

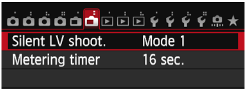
Exposure simulation☆

Exposure simulation simulates and displays how the brightness of the actual image (exposure) will look.

- **Enable (Exp.SIM)**
  The displayed image brightness will be close to the actual brightness (exposure) of the resulting image. If you set exposure compensation, the image brightness will change accordingly.
- **During**
  Normally, the image is displayed at the standard brightness to make the Live View image easy to see. The image will be displayed close to the actual brightness (exposure) of the resulting image only while you hold down the depth-of-field preview button.
- **Disable (DISP)**
  The image is displayed at the standard brightness to make the Live View image easy to see. Even if you set exposure compensation, image is displayed at the standard brightness.

- If you set an expanded ISO speed setting as [**Maximum**] in [**ISO speed range**], Live View shooting will be possible under darker conditions.
- Even if a low ISO speed is set, noise may be noticeable in the displayed Live View image under low light. However, when you shoot, the image recorded will have minimal noise. (The image quality of the Live View image is different from that of the recorded image.)

[📷2] Menu



Silent LV shoot. Mode 1

Metering timer 16 sec.

- **Silent LV shooting** ☆
  - **Mode 1**
    The shooting operation noise is quieter than with normal shooting. Continuous shooting is also possible. If <⧉> is set, you can shoot at a maximum continuous shooting speed of approx. 4.1 fps.
  - **Mode 2**
    When the shutter button is pressed completely, only one shot will be taken. While you keep holding down the shutter button, the camera operation will be suspended. Then when you return to the shutter button's halfway position, the camera operation will resume. The shooting noise is thereby minimized. Even if continuous shooting is set, only a single shot will be taken.
  - **Disable**
    Be sure to set it to [**Disable**] if you use a TS-E lens (other than those listed in 🗒 below) **for shifting or tilting the lens** or if you use an Extension tube. If [**Mode 1**] or [**Mode 2**] is set, the standard exposure may not be obtained or an irregular exposure may result.

- If you use flash, silent shooting will not be possible regardless of the [**Silent LV shoot.**] setting.
- When using a non-Canon flash unit, set it to [**Disable**]. The flash will not fire if it is set to [**Mode 1**] or [**Mode 2**].
- If [**Mode 2**] is set and you use remote control shooting (p.167), the operation will be the same as with [**Mode 1**].

With the TS-E17mm f/4L or TS-E24mm f/3.5L II lens, you can use [**Mode 1**] or [**Mode 2**].

- **Metering timer** ☆

  You can change how long the exposure setting is displayed (AE lock time).

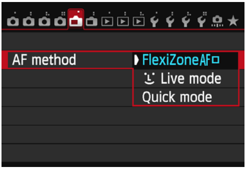
The Live View shooting will stop with any of the following operations. To resume Live View shooting, press the < START/STOP > button again.

- When [**📷4: Dust Delete Data**], [**🔧4: Sensor cleaning**], [**🔧4:Clear all camera settings**], or [**🔧4: 📷 Firmware ver.**] was selected
- When the shooting mode was changed (example: Basic Zone modes ↔ Creative Zone modes)

Using AF to Focus (AF Method)

Selecting the AF Method

The AF methods available are [**FlexiZoneAF□** (Single)], [**Live mode**] (face detection, p.193), and [**Quick mode**] (p.197).
If you want to achieve precise focus, set the lens focus mode switch to <**MF**>, magnify the image, and focus manually (p.199).

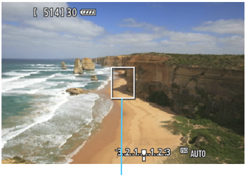


Select the AF method.

- Under the [**📷1**] tab, select [**AF method**].
- While the Live View image is displayed, you can also press the <AF> button to select the AF method on the setting screen.

FlexiZone - Single: AF□

The image sensor is used to focus. Although AF is possible with the Live View image displayed, **the AF operation will take longer than with the Quick mode.** Also, achieving focus may be more difficult than with the Quick mode.



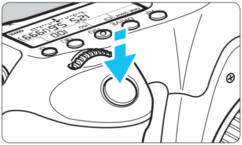
AF point

1 Display the Live View image.

- Press the <START/STOP> button.
- ▶ The Live View image will appear on the LCD monitor.
- ▶ The AF point <□> will appear.

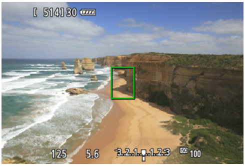
2 Move the AF point.

- You can use <✣> to move the AF point to where you want to focus. (It cannot go to the edges of the picture.)
- To return the AF point to the center, press the <SET> or <🗑> button.



3 Focus the subject.

- Aim the AF point over the subject and press the shutter button halfway.
- ▶ When focus is achieved, the AF point will turn green and the beeper will sound.
- ▶ If focus is not achieved, the AF point will turn orange.

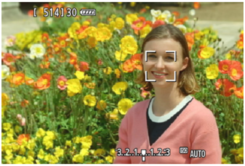


4 Take the picture.

- Check the focus and exposure, then press the shutter button completely to take the picture (p.180).

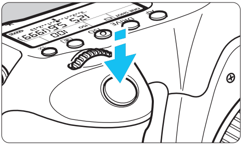
☺ (Face detection) Live mode: AF☺

This is the same AF method as with FlexiZone - Single. It detects the human face and focuses. Have the target person face the camera.



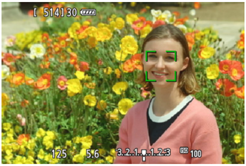
1 Display the Live View image.

- Press the <START/STOP> button.
- ▶ The Live View image will appear on the LCD monitor.
- When a face is detected, the <[ ]> frame will appear over the face to be focused.
- If multiple faces are detected, <◂[ ]▸> will be displayed. Use <✣> to move the <◂[ ]▸> frame over the target face.



2 Focus the subject.

- Press the shutter button halfway and the camera will focus the face covered by the <⌜ ⌟> frame.
- ▶ When focus is achieved, the AF point will turn green and the beeper will sound.
- ▶ If focus is not achieved, the AF point will turn orange.
- If a face cannot be detected, the AF point <□> will be displayed and AF will be executed at the center.



3 Take the picture.

- Check the focus and exposure, then press the shutter button completely to take the picture (p.180).

- If the focus is far off, face detection will not be possible. If the lens enables manual focusing even while the lens focus mode switch is set to <**AF**>, turn the focusing ring to attain rough focus. The face will then be detected and <⌜ ⌟> will be displayed.
- An object other than a human face may be detected as a face.
- Face detection will not work if the face is very small or large in the picture, too bright or too dark, titled horizontally or diagonally, or partially hidden.
- The <⌜ ⌟> may cover only part of the face.

- You can press the <SET> or <🗑> button to switch to FlexiZone - Single (p.192), and use <✥> to move the AF point. To return to ☺ (Face detection) Live mode, press <SET> or the <🗑> button again.
- Since AF is not possible with a face detected near the edge of the picture, the <⌜ ⌟> will be grayed out. Then if you press the shutter button halfway, the center AF point <□> will be used to focus.

FlexiZone - Single and ☺ (Face Detection) Live Mode Notes

AF Operation

- Focusing will take slightly longer.
- Even when focus has been achieved, pressing the shutter button halfway will focus again.
- The image brightness may change during and after the AF operation.
- If the light source changes while the Live View image is displayed, the screen may flicker and focusing may be difficult. If this happens, exit Live View shooting and autofocus under the actual light source.
- If you press the <🔍> button in the FlexiZone - Single, the image will be magnified at the AF point. If focusing is difficult in the magnified view, return to the normal view and autofocus. Note that the AF speed may differ between the normal and magnified views.
- If you magnify the view after focusing with FlexiZone - Single in the normal view, it may not look focused.
- In the ☺ Live mode, pressing the <🔍> button will not magnify the image.

- In the FlexiZone - Single or ☺ (face detection) Live mode, if you shoot a peripheral subject and it is slightly out of focus, aim the center AF point over the subject to focus, then take the picture.
- The external Speedlite will not emit the AF-assist beam. However, if an EX-series Speedlite (sold separately) equipped with an LED light is used, the LED light will turn on automatically for AF-assist when necessary in the FlexiZone - Single and ☺ (face detection) Live mode.

Shooting conditions that make focusing difficult

- Low-contrast subjects such as the blue sky and solid-color, flat surfaces.
- Subjects in low light.
- Stripes and other patterns where there is contrast only in the horizontal direction.
- Under a light source whose brightness, color, or pattern keeps changing.
- Night scenes or points of light.
- Under fluorescent or LED light sources and when the image flickers.
- Extremely small subjects.
- Subjects at the edge of the picture.
- Subjects strongly reflecting light.
- The AF point covers both near and faraway subjects (such as an animal in a cage).
- Subjects that keep moving within the AF point and cannot keep still due to camera shake or subject blur.
- A subject approaching or moving away from the camera.
- Autofocusing while the subject is very far out of focus.
- Soft focus effect is applied with a soft focus lens.
- A special effect filter is used.

If you use AF with any of the following lenses, using [**Quick mode**] is recommended. If you use the [**FlexiZoneAF□** (Single)] or [**☺ Live mode**] for AF, it may take a longer time to achieve focus or the camera may not be able to achieve correct focus.

EF28mm f/2.8, EF35mm f/2, EF50mm f/1.4 USM, EF50mm f/1.8 II, EF50mm f/2.5 Compact Macro, EF135mm f/2.8 (Softfocus), EF75-300mm f/4-5.6 III, EF75-300mm f/4-5.6 III USM

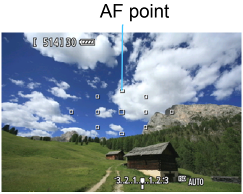
For information on discontinued lenses, refer to your local Canon Web site.

Quick Mode: AFQuick

The dedicated AF sensor is used to focus in One-Shot AF mode (p.92), using the same AF method as with viewfinder shooting.

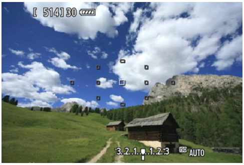
Although you can focus the target area quickly, **the Live View image will be interrupted momentarily during the AF operation.**

You can use eleven AF points to focus (automatically selected). You can also select one AF point to focus and focus only the area covered by that AF point (manually selected). In Basic Zone modes, the AF point will be selected automatically. You cannot select the AF point.



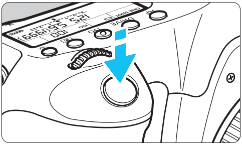
1 Display the Live View image.

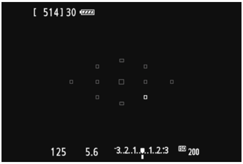
- Press the <START/STOP> button.
- ▶ The Live View image will appear on the LCD monitor.
- The small boxes are the AF points.



2 Select the AF point.☆

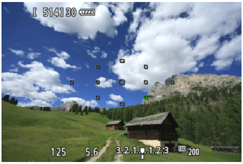
- Press the <⊞> button.
- You can either use <✥> or turn the <⚙> or <◯> dial to select an AF point.
- Press <SET> to toggle between the center AF point and automatic selection.





3 Focus the subject.

- Aim the AF point over the subject and press the shutter button halfway.
- ▶ The Live View image will turn off, the reflex mirror will go back down, and AF will be executed. (No picture is taken.)
- ▶ When focus is achieved, the beeper will sound and the Live View image will reappear.
- ▶ The AF point used to focus will light up in green.
- ▶ If focus is not achieved, the AF point will blink in orange.



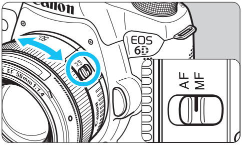
4 Take the picture.

- Check the focus and exposure, then press the shutter button completely to take the picture (p.180).

You cannot take a picture during autofocusing. Take the picture while the Live View image is displayed.

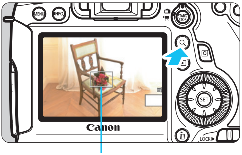
Focusing Manually

You can magnify the image and focus precisely with manual focus.



1 Set the lens focus mode switch to <MF>.

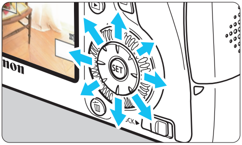
- Turn the lens focusing ring to focus roughly.



Magnifying frame

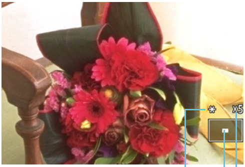
2 Display the magnifying frame.

- Press the <🔍> button.



3 Move the magnifying frame.

- Press <✥> to move the magnifying frame to the position where you want to focus.
- To return the magnifying frame to the center, press <SET> or the <🗑> button.



AE lock

Magnified area position

Magnification

4 Magnify the image.

- Each time you press the <🔍> button, the magnification within the frame will change as follows:

→ 5x → 10x → Normal view → 1x ↩

5 Focus manually.

- While looking at the magnified image, turn the lens focusing ring to focus.
- After achieving focus, press the <🔍> button to return to the normal view.

6 Take the picture.

- Check the focus and exposure, then press the shutter button completely to take the picture (p.180).

Live View Shooting Cautions

Image Quality

- When you shoot at high ISO speeds, noise (such as dots of light and banding) may become noticeable.
- Shooting in high temperatures may cause noise and irregular colors in the image.
- If Live View shooting is used continuously for a long period, the camera's internal temperature may rise, and image quality may deteriorate. Stop Live View shooting when not shooting images.
- If you shoot a long exposure while the camera's internal temperature is high, image quality may deteriorate. Stop Live View shooting and wait a few minutes before shooting again.

White <🌡> and Red <🌡> Internal Temperature Warning Icons

- If the camera's internal temperature increases due to prolonged Live View shooting or under a high ambient temperature, a white <🌡> or red <🌡> icon will appear.
- The white <🌡> icon indicates that the image quality of still photos will deteriorate. You should stop Live View shooting and allow the camera's internal temperature to cool before shooting again.
- The red <🌡> icon indicates that the Live View shooting will soon stop automatically. If this happens, you will not be able to shoot again until the camera's internal temperature decreases. Stop the Live View shooting or turn off the power and let the camera rest for a while.
- Using Live View shooting at a high temperature for a prolonged period will cause the <🌡> or <🌡> icon to appear earlier. When you are not shooting, turn off the camera.
- If the camera's internal temperature is high, the image quality of high ISO speed images or long exposures may deteriorate even before the white <🌡> icon is displayed.

Shooting Result

- If you take the picture in magnified view, the exposure may not come out as desired. Return to the normal view before taking the picture. In magnified view, the shutter speed and aperture will be displayed in orange. Even if you take the picture in magnified view, the image will be captured in the normal view range.
- If [**📷3: Auto Lighting Optimizer**] (p.125) is not set to [**Disable**], the image may look bright even if a decreased exposure compensation or decreased flash exposure compensation is set.

Live View Shooting Cautions

Live View Image

- Under low- or bright-light conditions, the Live View image may not reflect the brightness of the captured image.
- If the light source (illumination) within the image changes, the screen may flicker. If this happens, exit Live View shooting and resume shooting under the actual light source.
- If you point the camera to a different direction, it may throw off the Live View image's correct brightness momentarily. Wait until the brightness level stabilizes before shooting.
- If there is a very bright light source in the picture, the bright area might appear black on the LCD monitor. However, the actual captured image will correctly show the bright area.
- In low light, if you set the [**🔧2: LCD brightness**] to a bright setting, noise or irregular colors may appear in the Live View image. However, the noise or irregular colors will not be recorded in the captured image.
- When you magnify the image, the image sharpness may look more pronounced than in the actual image.

Custom Functions

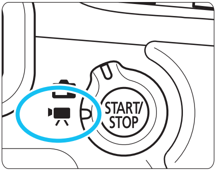
- For Live View shooting, certain Custom Function settings will not take effect (p.303).

Lens and Flash

- The focus preset function is possible for Live View shooting only when using a (super) telephoto lens equipped with the focus preset mode marketed since the second half of 2011.
- FE lock and modeling flash will not work if an external Speedlite is used.

8

Shooting Movies



Movie shooting is enabled by setting the Live View shooting/ Movie shooting switch to <🎥>. The movie recording format will be MOV.

- For cards which can record movies, see page 3.

Under the [🔧3] tab, if you set [**Wi-Fi**] to [**Enable**], you cannot shoot movies. Before shooting movies, set [**Wi-Fi**] to [**Disable**].

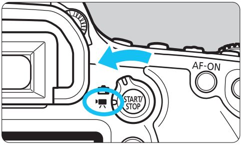
🎥 Shooting Movies

Autoexposure Shooting

When the shooting mode is set to other than <**M**>, autoexposure control will take effect to suit the scene's current brightness.

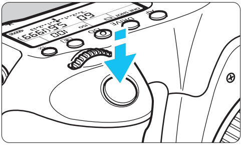
1 Set the shooting mode.

- Set the Mode Dial to any shooting mode except <**M**>.



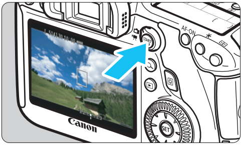
2 Set the Live View shooting/Movie shooting switch to <🎥>.

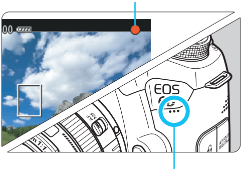
- ▶ The reflex mirror will make a sound, then the image will appear on the LCD monitor.



3 Focus the subject.

- Before shooting a movie, focus with AF or manual focus (p.192-200).
- When you press the shutter button halfway, the camera will focus with the current AF method.





4 Shoot the movie.

- Press the <START/STOP> button to start shooting a movie.
- ▶ While the movie is being shot, the "●" mark will be displayed on the upper right of the screen.
- To stop shooting the movie, press the <START/STOP> button again.

- **Cautions for movie shooting are on pages 233 and 234.**
- **If necessary, also read the Live View shooting cautions on pages 201 and 202.**

- In Basic Zone modes, the shooting result will be the same as in the <A+> mode. Also, the scene icon for the scene detected by the camera is displayed on the upper left (p.207).
- In the <**Tv**>, <**Av**>, or <**B**> shooting modes, the settings will be the same as in the <**P**> mode.
- Settable menu functions will differ between Basic Zone modes and Creative Zone modes (p.353).
- In Creative Zone modes, you can set the Auto Lighting Optimizer. In the Auto Lighting Optimizer's menu, setting [INFO. ☑ **Disabled in M or B modes**] is possible. However, during movie shooting, even if the shooting mode is set to <**B**>, autoexposure shooting will take effect instead of Bulb exposure. Therefore, the Auto Lighting Optimizer setting is possible.
- In Creative Zone modes, you can press the <✱> button (p.153) to lock the exposure (AE lock). The exposure setting display time is set by [**1: Metering timer**]. After applying AE lock during movie shooting, you can cancel it by pressing the <⊞> button. (AE lock setting is retained until you press the <⊞> button.)
- In Creative Zone modes, you can enable exposure compensation by sliding the <LOCK▶> switch to the left and turning the <◎> dial.
- Pressing the shutter button halfway displays the shutter speed, and ISO speed on the screen's bottom. This is the exposure setting for taking a still photo (p.210). The exposure setting for movie shooting is not displayed. Note that the exposure setting for movie shooting may differ from that for still photo shooting.
- If you shoot a movie with autoexposure, the shutter speed and aperture will not be recorded in the image information (Exif).

ISO speed in Basic Zone modes

- The ISO speed will be set automatically within ISO 100 - 12800.

ISO speed in Creative Zone modes

- The ISO speed will be set automatically within ISO 100 - 12800.
- Under [**📷3: ISO speed settings**], if you set [**ISO speed range**]'s [**Maximum**] setting to [**25600/H**] (p.109), the maximum ISO speed for the automatic ISO speed setting will be expanded to H (equivalent to ISO 25600). Be aware that when you set [**Maximum**] to [**25600**], the maximum ISO speed will not be expanded and remains ISO 12800.
- If [**📷4: Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**] (p.130), the ISO speed will be ISO 200 - 12800.
- Under [**📷3: ISO speed settings**], [**Auto ISO range**] or [**Min. shutter spd.**] cannot be set (p.110, 111) for movie shooting.

For [**ISO speed range**], if [**Minimum**] is set to [**L (50)**] and [**Maximum**] to [**H1 (51200)**] or [**H2 (102400)**], and you switch from still photo shooting to movie shooting, the minimum setting for the automatic ISO range will be ISO 100 and the maximum will be H (equivalent to ISO 25600). The ISO speed cannot be expanded to ISO 50 or ISO 51200/102400.

Using an EX-series Speedlite (Sold Separately) Equipped with an LED Light

With autoexposure (mode other than **M**) movie shooting, the camera will automatically turn on the Speedlite's LED light under low-light conditions. **For details, refer to the EX-series Speedlite's instruction manual.**

Scene Icons

During movie shooting in a Basic Zone mode, an icon representing the scene detected by the camera will be displayed and the shooting will be adapted to that scene. For certain scenes or shooting conditions, the icon displayed may not match the actual scene.

Subject Background		Portrait*1	Non-portrait		Background Color
			Nature and Outdoor Scene	Close*2	
Bright		👤	A+	🌷	Gray
	Backlit	👤☀	☀	🌷☀	
Blue sky included		👤	A+	🌷	Light blue
	Backlit	👤☀	☀	🌷☀	
Sunset		*3	☀	*3	Orange
Spotlight		👤	▲	🌷	Dark blue
Dark		👤	A+	🌷	

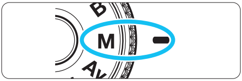
*1: Displayed only when the AF method is set to [☺ **Live mode**]. If another AF method is set, the “Non-portrait” icon will be displayed even if a person is detected.

*2: Displayed when the attached lens has distance information. With an Extension Tube or Closeup Lens, the icon displayed may not match the actual scene.

*3: The icon suiting the scene detected will be displayed.

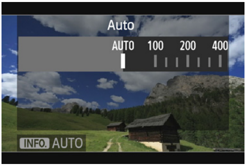
Manual Exposure Shooting

You can manually set the shutter speed, aperture, and ISO speed for movie shooting. Using manual exposure to shoot movies is for advanced users.



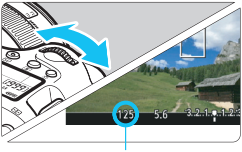
1 Set the Mode Dial to <M>.

2 Set the Live View shooting/Movie shooting switch to <🎥>.

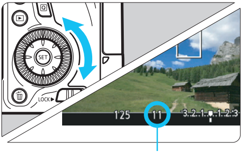

Auto
AUTO 100 200 400
INFO. AUTO

3 Set the ISO speed.

- Press the <ISO> button.
- ▶ The ISO speed setting screen will appear on the LCD monitor.
- Turn the <⛭> dial to set the ISO speed.
- For details on the ISO speed, see the next page.



Shutter speed



Aperture

4 Set the shutter speed and aperture.

- Press the shutter button halfway and check the exposure level indicator.
- To set the shutter speed, turn the <⛭> dial. The settable shutter speeds depend on the frame rate <**>.
  - 30 25 24 : 1/4000 sec. - 1/30 sec.
  - 60 50 : 1/4000 sec. - 1/60 sec.
- To set the aperture, turn the <◎> dial.
- If it cannot be set, set the <LOCK▶> switch to the left, then turn the <⛭> or <◎> dial.

5 Focus and shoot the movie.

- The procedure is the same as steps 3 and 4 for “Autoexposure Shooting” (p.204).

ISO speed during manual-exposure shooting

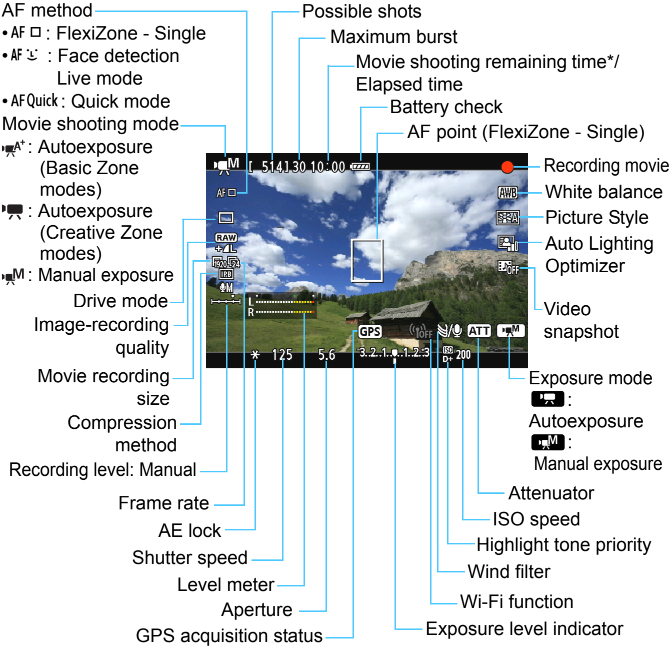
- With [**Auto**] (**A**), the ISO speed will be set automatically within ISO 100 - 12800. Under [**📷3: ISO speed settings**], if you set [**ISO speed range**]’s [**Maximum**] setting to [**25600/H**], the maximum ISO speed will be expanded and the ISO speed will be set automatically within ISO 100 to H.
- You can set the ISO speed manually within ISO 100 - 12800 in 1/3-stop increments. Under [**📷3: ISO speed settings**], if you set [**ISO speed range**]’s [**Maximum**] setting to [**25600/H**], the maximum ISO speed for manual ISO speed setting will be expanded to H (equivalent to ISO 25600). Be aware that when you set [**Maximum**] to [**25600**], the maximum ISO speed will not be expanded and remains ISO 12800.
- If [**📷4: Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**] (p.130), you can set the ISO speed within ISO 200 - 12800 (depending on the [**ISO speed range**] setting).
- Under [**📷3: ISO speed settings**], [**Auto ISO range**] or [**Min. shutter spd.**] cannot be set (p.110, 111) for movie shooting.

- Since shooting a movie at ISO 16000/20000/25600 may result in much noise, it is designated as an expanded ISO speed (displayed as [**H**]).
- If [**Minimum**] is set to [**L (50)**] and [**Maximum**] to [**H1 (51200)**] or [**H2 (102400)**] in [**ISO speed range**], and you switch from still photo shooting to movie shooting, the minimum setting for manual ISO range will be ISO 100 and the maximum will be H (ISO 25600). The ISO speed cannot be expanded to ISO 50 or ISO 51200/102400.
- Changing the shutter speed or aperture during movie shooting is not recommended since the changes in the exposure will be recorded.
- When shooting a movie of a moving subject, a shutter speed of 1/30 sec. to 1/125 sec. is recommended. The faster the shutter speed, the less smooth the subject’s movement will look.
- If you change the shutter speed while shooting under fluorescent or LED lighting, image flicker may be recorded.

- When ISO Auto is set, you can press the <✱> button to lock the ISO speed.
- If you press the <✱> button and recompose the shot, you can see the exposure level difference on the exposure level indicator (p.22, 210) compared to when the <✱> button was pressed.
- By pressing the <INFO.> button, you can display the histogram.

Information Display

- Each time you press the <**INFO.**> button, the information display will change.


AF method
• AF □ : FlexiZone - Single
• AF ☺ : Face detection Live mode
• AF Quick : Quick mode
Movie shooting mode
A⁺ : Autoexposure (Basic Zone modes)
: Autoexposure (Creative Zone modes)
M : Manual exposure
Drive mode
Image-recording quality
Movie recording size
Compression method
Recording level: Manual
Frame rate
AE lock
Shutter speed
Level meter
Aperture
GPS acquisition status
Possible shots
Maximum burst
Movie shooting remaining time*/ Elapsed time
Battery check
AF point (FlexiZone - Single)
Recording movie
White balance
Picture Style
Auto Lighting Optimizer
Video snapshot
Exposure mode
: Autoexposure
M : Manual exposure
Attenuator
ISO speed
Highlight tone priority
Wind filter
Wi-Fi function
Exposure level indicator
M
[514] 30 10:00
AF □
RAW
+◢L
1920 24
IPB
M
L
R
AWB
GPS
ATT
M
✱ 125 5.6 3..2..1..0..1..2.:3 ISO D+ 200

* Applies to a single movie clip.

- You can display the electronic level by pressing the <**INFO.**> button (p.60).
- Note that if the AF method is set to [☺ **Live mode**] or the camera is connected to a TV set with an HDMI cable (p.261), the electronic level cannot be displayed.
- When movie shooting starts, the movie shooting remaining time will change to the elapsed time.

Notes on Movie Shooting

- The camera cannot autofocus continuously like a camcorder.
- Autofocusing during movie shooting is not recommended since it may momentarily throw the focus far off or change the exposure.
- During movie shooting, do not point the lens toward the sun. The sun’s heat can damage the camera’s internal components.
- If <AWB> is set and the ISO speed or aperture changes during movie shooting, the white balance may also change.
- If you shoot a movie under fluorescent or LED lighting, the movie may flicker.
- Zooming the lens during movie shooting is not recommended. Zooming the lens can cause changes in the exposure regardless of whether the lens’ maximum aperture changes or not. Exposure changes may be recorded as a result.
- You cannot magnify the image during movie shooting.
- **Cautions for movie shooting are on pages 233 and 234.**
- **If necessary, also read the Live View shooting cautions on pages 201 and 202.**

- Movie-related settings are under the [**1**] and [**2**] tabs (p.223).
- A movie file is recorded each time you shoot a movie. If the file size exceeds 4 GB, a new file will be created for every subsequent 4 GB.
- The movie image’s field of view is approx. 100% (with movie recording size set to [1920]).
- You can also focus the image by pressing the <AF-ON> button.
- To focus during movie shooting, press the <AF-ON> button. You cannot focus by pressing the shutter button.
- Monaural sound is recorded by the camera’s built-in microphone (p.204).
- Most commercially-available external stereo microphones with a 3.5 mm diameter miniplug can be connected to the camera. If an external microphone has been connected to the camera’s external microphone IN terminal (p.20), it will be given priority over the built-in microphone.

Notes on Movie Shooting

- You can use Remote Controller RC-6 (sold separately, p.167) to start and stop the movie shooting if the drive mode is <⏱> or <⏱2>. Set the shooting timing switch to <**2**> (2-sec. delay), then press the transmit button. If the switch is set to <●> (immediate shooting), still photo shooting will take effect.
- With a fully-charged Battery Pack LP-E6, the total movie shooting time will be as follows: approx. 1 hr. 35 min. at room temperature (23°C/73°F), and approx. 1 hr. 25 min. at low temperature (0°C/32°F).
- When using a (super) telephoto lens equipped with the power focus mode marketed since the second half of 2011, power focusing is possible during movie shooting.

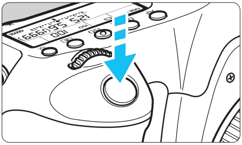
Final Image Simulation

The final image simulation is a function that allows you to see the effects of the Picture Style, white balance, etc., on the image.
During movie shooting, the image displayed will automatically reflect the effects of the settings listed below.

Final Image Simulation for Movie Shooting

- Picture Style
  * All settings such as sharpness, contrast, color saturation, and color tone will be reflected.
- White balance
- White balance correction
- Exposure
- Depth of field
- Auto Lighting Optimizer
- Peripheral illumination correction
- Chromatic aberration correction
- Highlight tone priority

Shooting Still Photos



While shooting a movie, you can also take a still photo by pressing the shutter button completely.

Taking Still Photos during Movie Shooting

- If you take a still photo during movie shooting, the movie will record a still moment lasting approx. 1 sec.
- The captured still photo will be recorded to the card, and the movie shooting will resume automatically when the Live View image is displayed.
- The movie and still photo will be recorded as separate files on the card.
- Functions particular to still photo shooting are shown below. Other functions will be the same as for movie shooting.

Function	Settings
Image-Recording Quality	As set in [**📷1: Image quality**]. When the movie recording size is [**1920x1080**] or [**1280x720**], the aspect ratio will be 16:9. When the size is [**640x480**], the aspect ratio will be 4:3.
ISO Speed*	With autoexposure shooting: ISO 100 - 12800. With manual exposure shooting: See “ISO speed during manual-exposure shooting” on page 209.
Exposure Setting	With autoexposure shooting: Automatically-set shutter speed and aperture. With manual exposure shooting: Manually-set shutter speed and aperture.

* If highlight tone priority is set, the ISO speed range will start from ISO 200.

- AEB cannot be used.
- Even if an external Speedlite is used, it will not fire.
- Continuous still photo shooting is possible during movie shooting. However, the captured images will not be displayed on the screen. Depending on the still photo’s image-recording quality, number of shots during continuous shooting, card performance, etc., movie shooting may stop automatically.

- If you want to shoot still photos continuously during movie shooting, using a high-speed card is recommended. Setting a smaller image-recording quality for still photos and shooting fewer continuous still photos are also recommended.
- You can shoot still photos in all drive modes.
- The self-timer can be used before you start shooting a movie. If used during movie shooting, the self-timer will switch to single-image shooting.

Shooting Function Settings

Q Quick Control

In Creative Zone modes, you can set the following: **AF method**, **drive mode**, **image-recording quality**, **movie-recording size**, sound-recording level (with [Sound recording: Manual] set), white balance, Picture Style, Auto Lighting Optimizer, and **video snapshot**.
In Basic Zone modes, only the functions in bold can be set.

1 Press the <Q> button.

▶ The settable functions will be displayed.

2 Select a function and set it.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select a function.

▶ The selected function and Feature guide (p.63) will appear.

- Set it by pressing the <◄►> key.
- To set the RAW image-recording quality or Picture Style parameters, press the <INFO.> button.

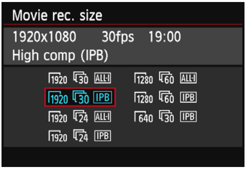
3 Exit the setting.

- Press <SET> to finalize the setting and return to movie shooting.

AF / DRIVE / ISO / ⊞ Settings

While the movie image is displayed on the LCD monitor, if you press the <AF> or <DRIVE> button, the setting screen will appear on the LCD monitor and you can turn the <⚙> or <◎> dial to set the respective shooting function.
When Quick mode is set, you can press the <⊞> button to select the AF point. The procedure is the same as with viewfinder shooting.
During manual-exposure shooting (p.208), you can press the <ISO> button to set the ISO speed.

MENU Setting the Movie-Recording Size


Movie rec. size

1920x1080 30fps 19:00

High comp (IPB)

With [**2: Movie rec. size**], you can set the movie's image size, frame rate per second, and compression method. The frame rate switches automatically depending on the [**3: Video system**] setting.

- **Image size**

1920 [**1920x1080**] : Full High-Definition (Full HD) recording quality. The aspect ratio will be 16:9.

1280 [**1280x720**] : High-Definition (HD) recording quality. The aspect ratio will be 16:9.

640 [**640x480**] : Standard-definition recording quality. The aspect ratio will be 4:3.

- **Frame rate** (fps: frames per second)

30/60 : For areas where the TV format is NTSC (North America, Japan, Korea, Mexico, etc.).

25/50 : For areas where the TV format is PAL (Europe, Russia, China, Australia, etc.).

24 : Mainly for motion pictures.

- **Compression method**

IPB IPB : Compresses multiple frames at a time efficiently for recording. Since the file size will be smaller than with ALL-I, you can shoot longer.

ALL-I ALL-I (I-only) : Compresses one frame at a time for recording. Although the file size will be bigger than with IPB, the movie will be more suited for editing.

Total Movie Recording Time and File Size Per Minute

Movie-Recording Size			Total Recording Time (approx.)			File Size (approx.)
			4 GB Card	8 GB Card	16 GB Card	
1920	30 25 24	IPB	16 min.	32 min.	1 hr. 4 min.	235 MB/min.
	30 25 24	ALL-I	5 min.	11 min.	22 min.	685 MB/min.
1280	60 50	IPB	18 min.	37 min.	1 hr. 14 min.	205 MB/min.
	60 50	ALL-I	6 min.	12 min.	25 min.	610 MB/min.
640	30 25	IPB	48 min.	1 hr. 37 min.	3 hr. 14 min.	78 MB/min.

- **About Movie Files Exceeding 4 GB**

  Even if you shoot a movie exceeding 4 GB, you can keep shooting without interruption.

  During movie shooting, approx. 30 sec. before the movie reaches the 4 GB file size, the elapsed shooting time or time code displayed in the movie-shooting image will start blinking. If you keep shooting until the movie file size exceeds 4 GB, a new movie file will be created automatically and the elapsed shooting time or time code will stop blinking.

  When you play back the movie, you will have to play each movie file individually. Movie files cannot play back consecutively automatically. After the movie playback ends, select the next movie to be played.

- **Movie Shooting Time Limit**

  The maximum recording time of one movie clip is 29 min. 59 sec. If the movie shooting time reaches 29 min. 59 sec., the movie shooting will stop automatically. You can start shooting a movie again by pressing the <START/STOP> button. (A new movie file starts being recorded.)

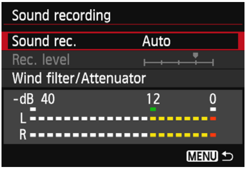
An increase of the camera's internal temperature may cause movie shooting to stop before the maximum recording time shown in the table above (p.233).

About Full HD 1080

Full HD 1080 indicates compatibility with High-Definition featuring 1080 vertical pixels (scanning lines).

FULL HD
1080

MENU Setting the Sound Recording



Sound recording

Sound rec. Auto

Rec. level

Wind filter/Attenuator

You can shoot movies while recording sound with the built-in monaural microphone or a commercially-available stereo microphone. You can also freely adjust the sound-recording level.
Set the sound recording with [**🎥2: Sound recording**].

Sound Recording/Sound-Recording Level

[**Auto**] : The sound-recording level is adjusted automatically. Auto level control will operate automatically in response to the sound level.

[**Manual**] : For advanced users. You can adjust the sound recording level to one of 64 levels.
Select [**Rec. level**] and look at the level meter while turning the <◎> dial to adjust the sound recording level. While looking at the peak hold indicator (3 sec.), adjust so that the level meter sometimes lights up the “12” (-12 dB) mark on the right for the loudest sounds. If it exceeds “0”, the sound will be distorted.

[**Disable**] : Sound will not be recorded.

Wind Filter/Attenuator

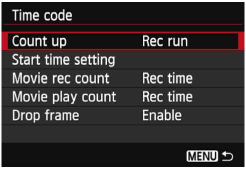
[**Wind filter**] : When [**Enable**] is set, it reduces the wind noise recorded outdoors. This feature takes effect only with the built-in microphone.
Note that [**Enable**] will also reduce low bass sounds, so set this function to [**Disable**] when there is no wind. It will record a more natural sound than with [**Enable**].

[**Attenuator**] : Even if [**Sound recording**] is set to [**Auto**] or [**Manual**] before shooting, sound distortion may still result if there is a very loud sound. In such a case, setting it to [**Enable**] is recommended.

- **Using the microphone**
  The built-in microphone records monaural sound. Stereo sound recording is possible by connecting an external stereo microphone (commercially-available) equipped with a miniature stereo plug (φ3.5 mm) to the camera’s external microphone IN terminal (p.20).

- In Basic Zone modes, the settings available for [**Sound recording**] will be [**On/Off**]. If [**On**] is set, the sound-recording level will be adjusted automatically (same as with [**Auto**]) and the wind filter function will take effect.
- The sound volume balance between L (left) and R (right) cannot be adjusted.
- Both L and R record audio at a 48 kHz/16-bit sampling rate.

MENU Setting the Time Code



Time code

Count up Rec run

Start time setting

Movie rec count Rec time

Movie play count Rec time

Drop frame Enable

The time code is a time reference recorded automatically to synchronize the video and audio during movie shooting. It is recorded at all times in the following units: hours, minutes, seconds, and frames. It is mainly used during movie editing.

Set the time code with [**🎥2: Time code**].

Count Up

[**Rec run**] : The time code counts up only while you are shooting a movie.

[**Free run**] : The time code counts up whether you are shooting or not.

Start Time Setting

You can set the time code's start time.

[**Manual input setting**] : You can freely set the hour, minute, second, and frames.

[**Reset**] : The time set with [**Manual input setting**] and [**Set to camera time**] is reset to 00:00:00:00.

[**Set to camera time**] : Sets hours, minutes, and seconds to match the camera's internal clock. "Frames" will be set to 00.

Movie Recording Count

You can select what to display on the movie-shooting screen.

[**Rec time**] : Indicates the elapsed time from the start of the movie shooting.

[**Time code**] : Indicates the time code during movie shooting.

- Shooting still photos during movie shooting will cause a discrepancy between the actual time and time code.
- If [**Free run**] is set and you change the time, zone, or daylight saving time (p.36), the time code will be affected.
- The time code is not recorded for video snapshots.

Regardless of the [**Movie rec count**] setting, the time code will always be recorded to the movie file.

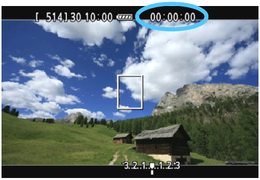
Movie Playback Count

You can select what to display on the movie playback screen.

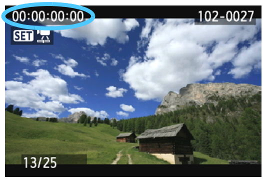
[**Rec time**] : Displays the recording time and playback time during movie playback.

[**Time code**] : Displays the time code during movie playback.

With [Time code] set:



During movie shooting



During movie playback

- If you change the setting for either [**Movie play count**] in [**2: Time code**] or for [▶**3: Movie play count**], the other setting will also change automatically.
- “Frames” are not displayed during movie shooting and movie playback.

Drop Frame

If the frame rate setting is 30 (29.97 fps) or 60 (59.94 fps), the time code's frame count causes a discrepancy between the actual time and time code. This discrepancy can be corrected automatically. This correction function is called drop frame.

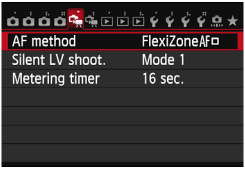
[**Enable**] : The discrepancy is corrected automatically by skipping time code numbers.

[**Disable**] : The discrepancy is not corrected.

If the frame rate is 24 (23.976 fps) or if the [**Video system**] is [**PAL**] (with 50/25 set), the drop frame will not work ([**Drop frame**] will not be displayed).

MENU Menu Function Settings

[🎥1] Menu



AF method FlexiZoneAF□

Silent LV shoot. Mode 1

Metering timer 16 sec.

When the Live View shooting/Movie shooting switch is set to <🎥>, the [🎥**1**] and [🎥**2**] tabs dedicated to movie shooting will be displayed. The menu options are as follows.

- **AF method**

  The AF methods are the same as described on pages 192-198. You can select [**FlexiZoneAF□** (Single)], [☺ **Live mode**], or [**Quick mode**]. Note that continuous focusing of a moving subject is not possible.

  Even if the AF method is set to [**Quick mode**], it will switch to [**FlexiZoneAF□** (Single)] during movie shooting.

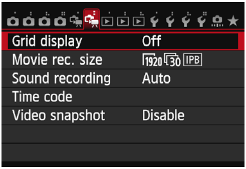
- **Silent LV shooting** ☆

  This function applies to still photo shooting. For details, see page 190.

- **Metering timer** ☆

  You can change how long the exposure setting is displayed (AE lock time).

[🎥2] Menu



Grid display Off

Movie rec. size 1920 30 IPB

Sound recording Auto

Time code

Video snapshot Disable

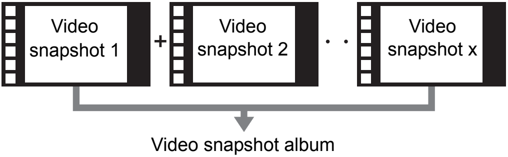
- **Grid display**
  With **[3x3 ⌗]** or **[6x4 ▦]**, you can display grid lines to help you level the camera vertically or horizontally. Also, with **[3x3+diag ⊠]**, the grid is displayed together with diagonal lines to help you align the intersections over the subject for better balance in the composition.
- **Movie recording size**
  You can set the movie recording size (image size, frame rate, and compression method). For details, see page 216.
- **Sound recording**
  You can set sound-recording settings. For details, see page 218.
- **Time code**
  You can set the time code. For details, see page 220.
- **Video snapshot**
  You can shoot video snapshots. For details, see page 225.

MENU Shooting Video Snapshots

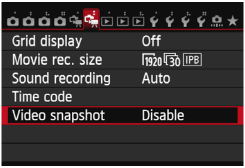
You can easily create a short movie with the video snapshot function. A video snapshot is a short movie clip lasting approx. 2 sec., 4 sec., or 8 sec. A collection of video snapshots is called a video snapshot album and can be saved to the card as a single movie file. By changing the scene or angle in each video snapshot, you can create dynamic short movies.

A video snapshot album can also be played together with background music (p.230, 254).

Video Snapshot Album Concept



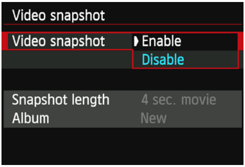
Setting the Video Snapshot Shooting Duration



Grid display Off
Movie rec. size 1920 30 IPB
Sound recording Auto
Time code
Video snapshot Disable

1 Select [Video snapshot].

- Under the [🎥2] tab, select [**Video snapshot**], then press <SET>.



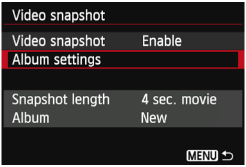
Video snapshot

Video snapshot ▸Enable
Disable

Snapshot length 4 sec. movie
Album New

2 Select [Enable].

- Select [**Enable**], then press <SET>.


Video snapshot

Video snapshot Enable

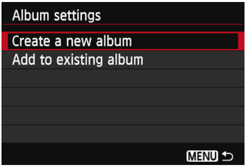
Album settings

Snapshot length 4 sec. movie

Album New

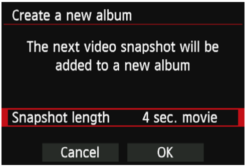
3 Select [Album settings].

- Select [**Album settings**], then press <SET>.
- If you want to continue shooting for an existing album, go to “Adding to Existing Album” (p.229).



4 Select [Create a new album].

- Select [**Create a new album**], then press <SET>.

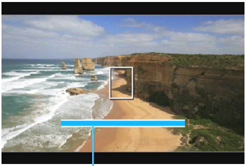

Create a new album

The next video snapshot will be added to a new album

Snapshot length 4 sec. movie

5 Select the snapshot length.

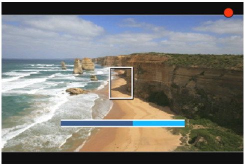
- Press <SET>, press the <▲▼> key to select the snapshot’s length, then press <SET>.


Shooting duration

6 Select [OK].

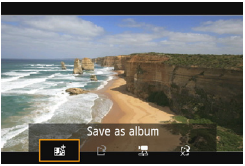
- Select [**OK**], then press <SET>.
- Press the <MENU> button to exit the menu and return to the movie shooting screen. A blue bar will appear to indicate the snapshot length.
- Go to “Creating a Video Snapshot Album” (p.227).

Creating a Video Snapshot Album



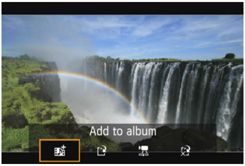
7 Shoot the first video snapshot.

- Press the <START/STOP> button, then shoot.
- ▶ The blue bar indicating the shooting duration will gradually decrease. After the set shooting duration elapses, the shooting stops automatically.
- ▶ After the LCD monitor turns off and the access lamp stops blinking, the confirmation screen will appear (p.228).



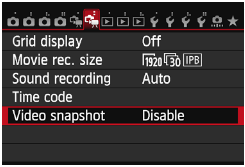
8 Save as a video snapshot album.

- Press the <◄►> key to select [**Save as album**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The movie clip will be saved as the video snapshot album's first video snapshot.



9 Continue to shoot more video snapshots.

- Repeat step 7 to shoot the next video snapshot.
- Press the <◄►> key to select [**Add to album**], then press <SET>.
- To create another video snapshot album, select [**Save as a new album**], then select [**OK**].



Grid display Off
Movie rec. size 1920 30 IPB
Sound recording Auto
Time code
Video snapshot Disable

10 Exit the video snapshot shooting.

- Set [**Video snapshot**] to [**Disable**].
  To return to normal movie shooting, be sure to set [Disable].
- Press the <MENU> button to exit the menu and return to the normal movie shooting screen.

Options in Steps 8 and 9

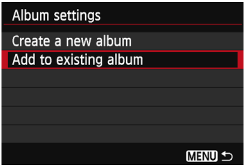
Function	Description
Save as album (Step 8)	The movie clip will be saved as the video snapshot album's first video snapshot.
Add to album (Step 9)	The video snapshot just recorded will be added to the album recorded immediately before.
Save as a new album (Step 9)	A new video snapshot album is created and the movie clip is saved as the first video snapshot. The new album will be a different file from the previously recorded album.
Playback video snapshot (Steps 8 and 9)	The video snapshot just recorded will be played. For playback operations, see the table below.
Do not save to album (Step 8) **Delete without saving to album** (Step 9)	If you want to delete the video snapshot you just recorded and not save it to the album, select [**OK**].

[Playback video snapshot] Operations

Function	Playback Description
▶ **Play**	By pressing <SET>, you can play or pause the just-recorded video snapshot.
⏮ **First frame**	Displays the first scene of the album's first video snapshot.
⏴ **Skip backward***	Each time you press <SET>, the video snapshot skips back by a few seconds.
◀II **Previous frame**	Each time you press <SET>, the previous frame is displayed. If you hold down <SET>, it will rewind the movie.
II▶ **Next frame**	Each time you press <SET>, the movie will play frame-by-frame. If you hold down <SET>, it will fast forward the movie.
⏵ **Skip forward***	Each time you press <SET>, the video snapshot skips forward by a few seconds.
⏭ **Last frame**	Displays the last scene of the album's last video snapshot.
▬	Play back position
mm' ss"	Playback time (minutes:seconds)
🔊 **Volume**	You can adjust the built-in speaker's (p.253) volume by turning the <⚙> dial.
MENU ⮌	Pressing the <MENU> button returns to the previous screen.

* With [**Skip backward/Skip forward**], the skipping duration will correspond to the number of seconds set under [**Video snapshot**] (approx. 2 sec., 4 sec., or 8 sec.).

Adding to Existing Album



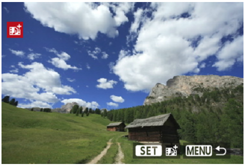
Album settings

Create a new album

Add to existing album

1 Select [Add to existing album].

- Follow step 4 on page 226 to select [**Add to existing album**], then press <SET>.



2 Select an existing album.

- Turn the <◎> dial to select an existing album, then press <SET>.
- After confirming the dialog displayed, select [**OK**] on the screen, then press <SET>.
- ▶ Certain video snapshot settings will change to match the existing album's settings.
- Press the <MENU> button to exit the menu and return to the movie shooting screen.

3 Shoot the video snapshot.

- Go to "Creating a Video Snapshot Album" (p.227).

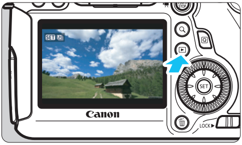
You cannot select an album shot with another camera.

Cautions for Shooting Video Snapshots

- You can add to an album only video snapshots with the same duration (approx. 2 sec., 4 sec., or 8 sec. each).
- Note that if you do any of the following while shooting video snapshots, a new album will be created for subsequent video snapshots.
  - Changing the [**Movie rec. size**] (p.216).
  - Changing the [**Sound rec.**] setting from [**Auto/Manual**] to [**Disable**] or from [**Disable**] to [**Auto/Manual**] (p.218).
  - Updating the firmware.
- You cannot take still photos while shooting a video snapshot.
- The shooting duration of a video snapshot is only approximate. Depending on the frame rate, the shooting duration displayed during playback may not be exact.

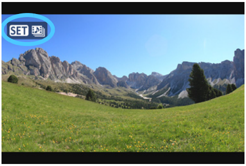
Playing an Album

You can play a completed album in the same way as a normal movie (p.253).



1 Play back the movie.

- Press the <▶> button to display images.



2 Select the album.

- Turn the <○> dial to select an album.
- On the single-image display, the [SET 🎞] icon displayed on the upper left indicates that the image is a video snapshot.

3 Play back the album.

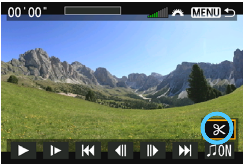
- Press <SET>.
- On the movie playback panel displayed, select [▶] (Play), then press <SET>.

Background Music

- Music recorded on the memory card must be used only for private enjoyment. Do not violate the rights of the copyright holder.
- You can play background music when you play back albums, normal movies, and slide shows on the camera (p.254, 257). To play background music, you must first copy the background music to the card using EOS Utility (provided software). For information on how to copy the background music, refer to the Software Instruction Manual on the CD-ROM.

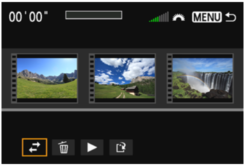
Editing an Album

After shooting, you can rearrange, delete, or play back the video snapshots in the album.



1 On the playback panel, select [✂] (Edit).

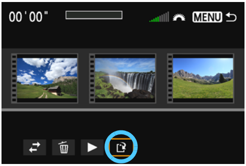
▶ The editing screen will be displayed.



2 Select an editing operation.

- Use the <◄►> keys to select an editing operation, then press <SET>.

Function	Description
⇄ **Move snapshot**	Press the <◄►> key to select the video snapshot you want to move, then press <SET>. Press the <◄►> key to move the snapshot, then press <SET>.
🗑 **Delete snapshot**	Press the <◄►> key to select the video snapshot you want to delete, then press <SET>. The [🗑] icon will be displayed on the selected video snapshot. Pressing <SET> again will cancel the selection and [🗑] will disappear.
▶ **Play snapshot**	Press the <◄►> key to select the video snapshot you want to play, then press <SET>.



3 Save the edited album.

- Press the <MENU> button to return to the Editing panel at the screen's bottom.
- Press the <◄►> key to select [⎘] (Save), then press <SET>.
- ▶ The save screen will appear.
- To save it as a new movie, select [**New file**]. To save it and overwrite the original movie file, select [**Overwrite**]. Then press <SET>.

- If the card does not have enough free space, [**New file**] will not be available.
- When the battery level is low, editing albums is not possible. Use a fully-charged battery.

Provided Software Usable with Albums

- **EOS Video Snapshot Task:** Editing albums is possible. Add-on function for ImageBrowser EX is automatically downloaded from the Internet using auto update function.

Movie Shooting Cautions

White <🌡> and Red <🌡> Internal Temperature Warning Icons

- If the camera’s internal temperature increases due to prolonged movie shooting or under a high ambient temperature, a white <🌡> or red <🌡> icon will appear.
- The white <🌡> icon indicates that the image quality of still photos will deteriorate. You should stop still shooting and allow the camera’s internal temperature to cool before shooting again. Since the movie’s image quality will hardly deteriorate, movie shooting will continue.
- The red <🌡> icon indicates that the movie shooting will soon be terminated automatically. If this happens, you will not be able to shoot again until the camera’s internal temperature decreases. Turn off the power and let the camera rest for a while.
- Shooting a movie at a high temperature for a prolonged period will cause the <🌡> or <🌡> icon to appear earlier. When you are not shooting, turn off the camera.

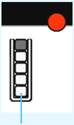
Recording and Image Quality

- If the attached lens has an Image Stabilizer and you set the Image Stabilizer (IS) switch to <ON>, the Image Stabilizer will operate at all times even if you do not press the shutter button halfway. The Image Stabilizer consumes battery power and may shorten the total movie shooting time or decrease the number of possible shots. If you use a tripod or if the Image Stabilizer is not necessary, it is recommended to set the IS switch to <OFF>.
- The camera’s built-in microphone will also pick up camera operation noise. Using a commercially-available external microphone can prevent (or reduce) these noises from being recorded.
- Do not connect anything other than an external microphone to the camera’s external microphone IN terminal.
- If the brightness changes during autoexposure movie shooting, that part may look momentarily still when you play back the movie. In such cases, shoot movies with manual exposure.
- If there is a very bright light source in the picture, the bright area might appear black on the LCD monitor. The will be recorded in almost the same way you see it on the LCD monitor.
- In low light, noise or irregular colors may appear in the image. The movie will be recorded in almost the same way you see it on the LCD monitor.

Movie Shooting Cautions

Recording and Image Quality

- If you use a card with a slow writing speed, a five-level indicator may appear on the right of the screen during movie shooting. It indicates how much data has not yet been written to the card (remaining capacity of the internal buffer memory). The slower the card, the faster the indicator will climb upward. If the indicator becomes full, movie shooting will stop automatically.
  If the card has a fast writing speed, the indicator will either not appear or the level (if displayed) will hardly go upward.
  First, shoot a few test movies to see if the card can write fast enough.



Still Photo Shooting During Movie Shooting

- Regarding the image quality of still photos, see “Image Quality” on page 201.

Playback and TV connection

- If you connect the camera to a TV set (p.261, 264) and shoot a movie, the TV will not output any sound during the shooting. However, the sound will be properly recorded.

Lens

- The focus preset function is possible for movie shooting only when using a (super) telephoto lens equipped with the focus preset mode marketed since the second half of 2011.

9

Image Playback

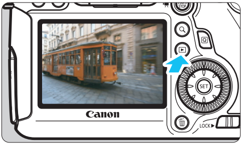
This chapter explains how to play back and erase photos and movies, how to display them on a TV screen, and other playback-related functions.

About images shot and saved with another device

The camera may not be able to properly display images captured with a different camera, edited with a computer, or had their file names changed.

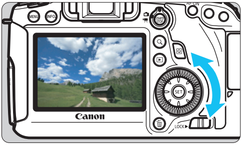
▶ Image Playback

Single-Image Display


Canon
LOCK▸
SET

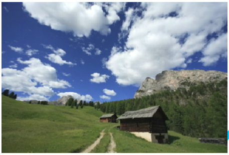
1 Play back the image.

- Press the <▶> button.
- ▶ The last captured image or last image viewed will appear.

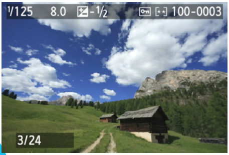

MENU
INFO.
START/STOP
AF-ON
SET
Canon
LOCK▸

2 Select an image.

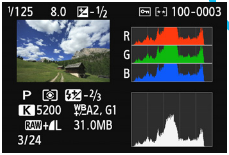
- To play back images starting with the last image, turn the <◎> dial counterclockwise. To play back images starting with the first captured image, turn the dial clockwise.
- Each time you press the <**INFO.**> button, the display format will change.



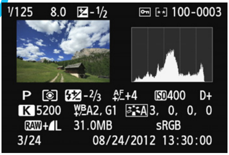
No information


1/125 8.0 ☒-1/2 100-0003
3/24

With basic information


1/125 8.0 ☒-1/2 100-0003
R
G
B
P ☒-2/3
K 5200 WB A2, G1
RAW+L 31.0MB
3/24

Histogram

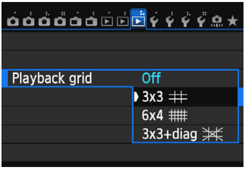

1/125 8.0 ☒-1/2 100-0003
P ☒-2/3 AF +4 ISO400 D+
K 5200 WB A2, G1 A3, 0, 0, 0
RAW+L 31.0MB sRGB
3/24 08/24/2012 13:30:00

Shooting information display

3 Exit the image playback.

- Press the <▶> button to exit the image playback and return to shooting-ready state.

MENU Grid Display



Playback grid Off

3x3 ⌗

6x4 ▦

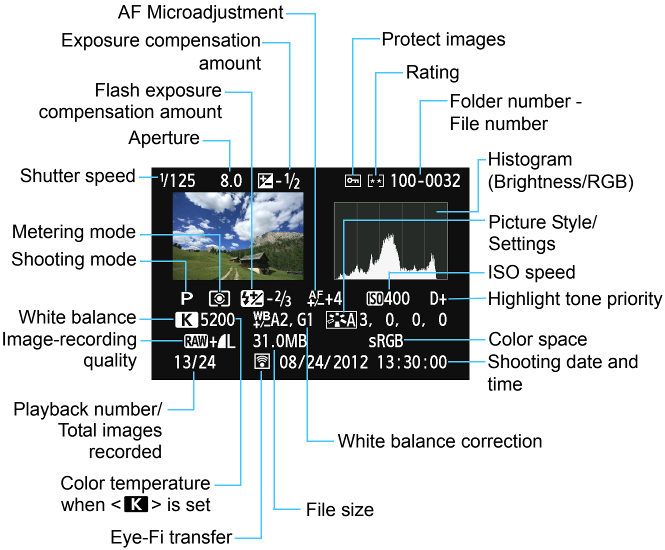
3x3+diag ⋇

On the single-image display, you can overlay a playback grid.
With [▶**3: Playback grid**], you can select [**3x3** ⌗], [**6x4** ▦], or [**3x3+diag** ⋇].
This function is convenient for checking the image’s vertical or horizontal tilt, as well as composition.

The grid is not displayed during movie playback.

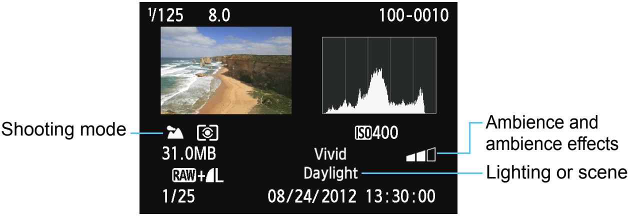
INFO.: Shooting Information Display

Sample Image Taken in a Creative Zone Mode


AF Microadjustment
Exposure compensation amount
Flash exposure compensation amount
Aperture
Shutter speed
Metering mode
Shooting mode
White balance
Image-recording quality
Playback number/ Total images recorded
Color temperature when <K> is set
Eye-Fi transfer
Protect images
Rating
Folder number - File number
Histogram (Brightness/RGB)
Picture Style/ Settings
ISO speed
Highlight tone priority
Color space
Shooting date and time
White balance correction
File size
1/125
8.0
-1/2
100-0032
P
-2/3
+4
400
D+
K 5200
A2, G1
A3, 0, 0, 0
RAW+L
31.0MB
sRGB
13/24
08/24/2012 13:30:00

* When you shoot in RAW+JPEG image quality, the RAW image file size will be displayed.
* During flash photography without flash exposure compensation, <⚡> will be displayed.
* <HDR> and the dynamic range adjustment amount will be displayed for images taken in the HDR mode.
* <▣> will be displayed for multiple-exposure photos.
* For still photos taken during movie shooting, <🎥> will be displayed.
* For JPEG images developed with the camera's RAW processing function or resized, and then saved, <✎> will be displayed.

Sample Image Taken in a Basic Zone Mode


1/125 8.0 100-0010

ISO400

31.0MB Vivid

RAW+L Daylight

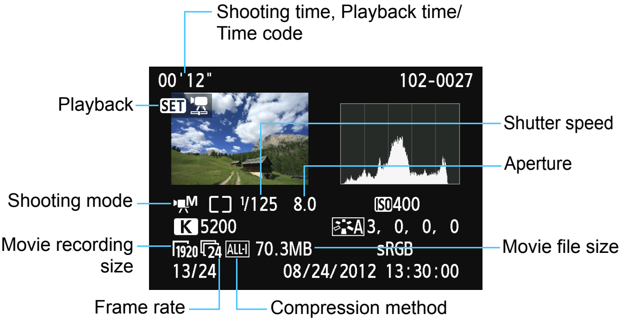
1/25 08/24/2012 13:30:00

Shooting mode
Ambience and ambience effects
Lighting or scene

* With images taken in a Basic Zone mode, the information displayed will differ depending on the shooting mode.

* Photos taken in the <CA> mode will show [**Background blur**].

Sample Movie


00'12" 102-0027

SET

M 1/125 8.0 ISO400

K 5200 A 3, 0, 0, 0

1920 24 ALL-I 70.3MB sRGB

13/24 08/24/2012 13:30:00

Shooting time, Playback time/ Time code
Playback
Shutter speed
Aperture
Shooting mode
Movie recording size
Movie file size
Frame rate
Compression method

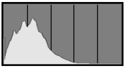
* If manual exposure was used, the shutter speed, aperture, and ISO speed (when set manually) will be displayed.

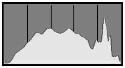
* The <> icon will be displayed for video snapshots.

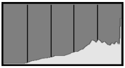
- **About the Highlight Alert**
  When [▶3: **Highlight alert**] is set to [**Enable**], overexposed highlight areas will blink. To obtain more image detail in the overexposed areas, set the exposure compensation to a negative amount and shoot again.
- **About the AF Point Display**
  When [▶3: **AF point disp.**] is set to [**Enable**], the AF point that achieved focus will be displayed in red. If automatic AF point selection was used, multiple AF points may be displayed in red.
- **About the Histogram**
  The brightness histogram shows the exposure level distribution and overall brightness. The RGB histogram is for checking the color saturation and gradation. The display can be switched with [▶**3: Histogram disp**].

[Brightness] Display
This histogram is a graph showing the distribution of the image's brightness level. The horizontal axis indicates the brightness level (darker on the left and brighter on the right), while the vertical axis indicates how many pixels exist for each brightness level. The more pixels there are toward the left, the darker the image. The more pixels there are toward the right, the brighter the image. If there are too many pixels on the left, the shadow detail will be lost. If there are too many pixels on the right, the highlight detail will be lost. The gradation in-between will be reproduced. By checking the image and its brightness histogram, you can see the exposure level inclination and the overall gradation.

Sample Histograms


Dark image


Normal brightness

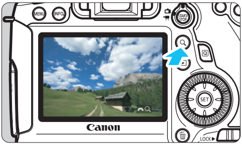

Bright image

[RGB] Display
This histogram is a graph showing the distribution of each primary color's brightness level in the image (RGB or red, green, and blue). The horizontal axis indicates the color's brightness level (darker on the left and brighter on the right), while the vertical axis indicates how many pixels exist for each color brightness level. The more pixels there are toward the left, the darker and less prominent the color. The more pixels there are toward the right, the brighter and denser the color. If there are too many pixels on the left, the respective color information will be lacking. If there are too many pixels on the right, the color will be too saturated with no gradation. By checking the image's RGB histogram, you can see the color's saturation and gradation condition, as well as white balance inclination.

▶ Searching for Images Quickly

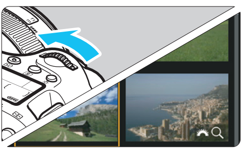
▦ Display Multiple Images on One Screen (Index Display)

Search for images quickly with the index display showing four or nine images on one screen.



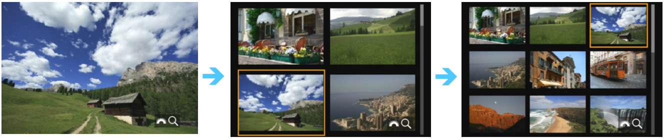
1 Press the <🔍> button.

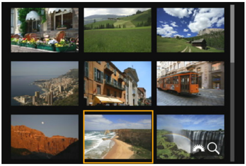
- Press the <🔍> button during image playback.
- ▶ [⚙ 🔍] will be displayed on the lower right of the screen.



2 Switch to the index display.

- Turn the <⚙> dial counterclockwise.
- ▶ The 4-image index display will appear. The selected image is highlighted in a orange frame.
- If you turn the <⚙> dial further to the left, the 9-image index display will appear. If you turn the <⚙> dial to the right, the index display will change as follows: 9-image, 4-image, and single-image display.



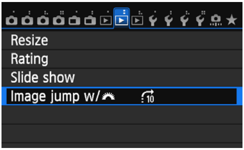


3 Select an image or movie.

- Turn the <◎> dial to move the orange frame and select the image. You can also select it with the <▲▼> or <◀▶> key.
- Press the <🔍> button to turn off the [⚙ 🔍] icon, then turn the <⚙> dial to go to the next or preceding screen.
- Press <SET> in the index display, and the selected image will be displayed as a single image.

Jump through Images (Jump Display)

With the single-image display, you can turn the < > dial to jump through the images forward or backward according to the jump method set.



Resize
Rating
Slide show
Image jump w/

1 Select [Image jump w/].

- Under the [▶**2**] tab, select [**Image jump w/**], then press <SET>.

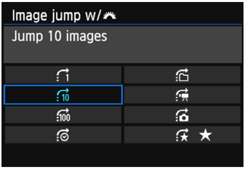
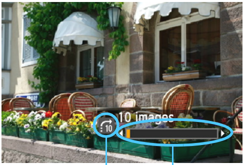


Image jump w/
Jump 10 images

2 Select the jump method.

- Turn the < > dial to select the jump method, then press <SET>.

  : **Display images one by one**
  : **Jump 10 images**
  : **Jump 100 images**
  : **Display by date**
  : **Display by folder**
  : **Display movies only**
  : **Display stills only**
  : **Display by image rating** (p.247)
  Turn the < > dial to select.



Jump method

Playback position

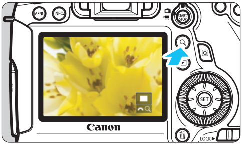
3 Browse by jumping.

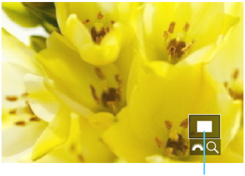
- Press the <▶> button to play back images.
- On the single-image display, turn the < > dial.

- To search images according to the shooting date, select [**Date**].
- To search images according to folder, select [**Folder**].
- If the card contains both movies and still photos, select [**Movies**] or [**Stills**] to display only either ones.
- If no images match the selected [**Rating**], you cannot browse through the images with the < > dial.

🔍 Magnified View

You can magnify a captured image by approx. 1.5x to 10x on the LCD monitor.

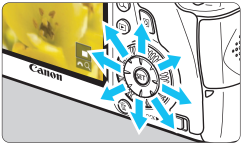


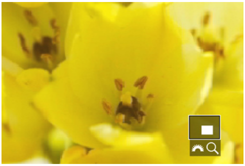


Magnified area position

1 Magnify the image.

- The image can be magnified during image playback (single-image display), during image review after image capture, and from shooting-ready state.
- Press the <🔍> button.
- ▶ The magnified view will appear. The magnified area and [⚙ 🔍] will be displayed on the lower right of the screen.
- The image magnification increases as you turn the <⚙> dial clockwise. You can magnify the image up to approx. 10x.
- The image magnification decreases as you turn the <⚙> dial counterclockwise. Turning the dial further will display the index display (p.242).



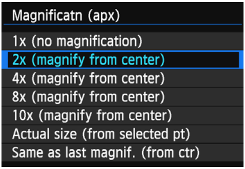


2 Scroll around the image.

- Use <✥> to scroll around the magnified image.
- To exit the magnified display, press the <🔍> button or <▶> button and the single-image display will reappear.

- In magnified view, you can turn the <◎> dial to view another image at the same magnification.
- The image cannot be displayed in the index display during the image review immediately after shooting.
- A movie cannot be magnified.

MENU Magnification Settings



Magnificatn (apx)

1x (no magnification)

2x (magnify from center)

4x (magnify from center)

8x (magnify from center)

10x (magnify from center)

Actual size (from selected pt)

Same as last magnif. (from ctr)

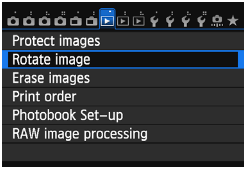
Under the [▶**3**] tab, when you select [**Magnificatn (apx)**], you can set the starting magnification and initial position for the magnified view.

- **1x (no magnification)**
  The image will not be magnified. The magnified view will start with the single-image display.
- **2x, 4x, 8x, 10x (magnify from center)**
  The magnified view will start at the image center at the selected magnification.
- **Actual size (from selected point)**
  The recorded image's pixels will be displayed at approx. 100%. The magnified view will start at the AF point that achieved focus. If the photo was taken with manual focus, the magnified view will start at the image center.
- **Same as last magnification (from center)**
  The magnification will be the same as the last time you exited the magnified view with the <▶> or <🔍> button. The magnified view starts from the image center.

With images taken with [**FlexiZoneAF☐** (Single)] or [☺ **Live mode**] (p.192), the magnified view starts from the image center even when [**1x**] is set.

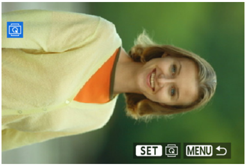
Rotating the Image

You can rotate the displayed image to the desired orientation.


Protect images
Rotate image
Erase images
Print order
Photobook Set-up
RAW image processing

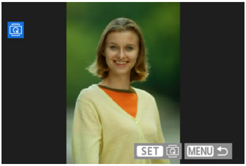
1 Select [Rotate image].

- Under the [▶1] tab, select [**Rotate image**], then press <SET>.



2 Select an image.

- Turn the <◯> dial to select the image to be rotated.
- You can also select an image on the index display (p.242).



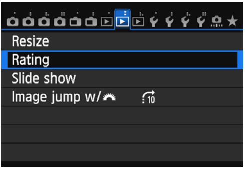
3 Rotate the image.

- Each time you press <SET>, the image will rotate clockwise as follows: 90° → 270° → 0°.
- To rotate another image, repeat steps 2 and 3.
- To return to the menu, press the <MENU> button.

- If you have set [**🔧1: Auto rotate**] to [**On📷💻**] (p.270) before taking vertical shots, you need not rotate the image as described above.
- If the rotated image is not displayed in the rotated orientation during image playback, set [**🔧1: Auto rotate**] to [**On📷💻**].
- A movie cannot be rotated.

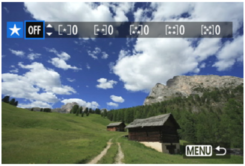
MENU Setting Ratings

You can rate images and movies with one of five rating marks: [★]/[★★]/[★★★]/[★★★★]/[★★★★★]. This function is called rating.



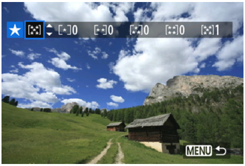
1 Select [Rating].

- Under the [▶2] tab, select [**Rating**], then press <SET>.



2 Select an image or movie.

- Turn the <○> dial to select the image or movie to be rated.
- If you press the <🔍> button and turn the <⚙> dial counterclockwise, you can select an image or movie from a three-image display. To return to the single-image display, turn the <⚙> dial clockwise.



3 Rate the image or movie.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select a rating.
- ▶ The total number of images and movies rated will be counted for each rating.
- To rate another image or movie, repeat steps 2 and 3.
- To return to the menu, press the <MENU> button.

The total number of images with a given rating that can be displayed is 999. If there are more than 999 images with a given rating, [**###**] will be displayed for that rating.

Taking Advantage of Ratings

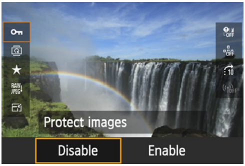
- With [▶**2: Image jump w/☆**], you can display only images and movies with a specific rating.
- With [▶**2: Slide show**], you can play back only images and movies with a specific rating.
- With Digital Photo Professional (provided software, p.392), you can select only images and movies with a specific rating (still photos only).
- With Windows 7 and Windows Vista, you can see each file's rating as part of the file information display or in the provided image viewer (still photos only).

Q Quick Control for Playback

During playback, you can press the <Q> button to set any of the following: [🔑**: Protect images,** ⟳: Rotate image, **★: Rating,** RAW JPEG↓: RAW image processing (RAW images only), ⊡: Resize (JPEG image only), **ON: Highlight alert, ON: AF point display, ⤴10: Image jump w/** ⚙, 📶: Wi-Fi*].

For movies, only the functions in bold above can be set.

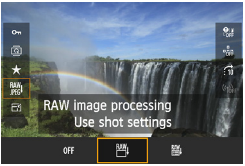
* Not selectable if the [🔧**3**] tab's [**Wi-Fi**] is set to [**Disable**].



1 Press the <Q> button.

- During image playback, press the <Q> button.

▶ The Quick Control screen will appear.



2 Select a function and set it.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select a function.

▶ The setting of the selected function is displayed at the bottom.

- Turn the <⚙> or <◎> dial to change the setting.
- When setting RAW processing, Resize, or Wi-Fi, also press <SET> to finalize the setting. For details, see page 272 for RAW image processing and page 277 for Resize. To cancel, press the <MENU> button.

3 Exit the setting.

- Press the <Q> button to exit the Quick Control screen.

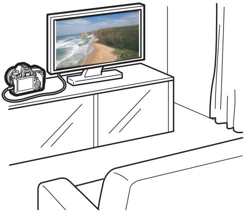
To rotate an image, set [**🔧1: Auto rotate**] to [**On📷 💻**]. If [**🔧1: Auto rotate**] is set to [**On💻**] or [**Off**], the [⟳ **Rotate image**] setting will be recorded to the image, but the camera will not rotate the image for display.

- Pressing the <Q> button during the index display will switch to the single-image display and the Quick Control screen will appear. Pressing the <Q> button again will return to the index display.
- For images taken with another camera, the functions you can select may be limited.

🎥 Enjoying Movies

You can play back movies in the following three ways:

Playback on a TV set (p.261, 264)



Use the provided AV cable or an HDMI Cable HTC-100 (sold separately) to connect the camera to a TV set. Then you can play back captured movies and still photos on the TV.
If you have a High-Definition TV set and connect your camera with an HDMI cable, you can watch Full High-Definition (Full HD: 1920x1080) and High-Definition (HD: 1280x720) movies with higher image quality.

- Since hard disk recorders do not have an HDMI IN terminal, the camera cannot be connected to a hard disk recorder with an HDMI cable.
- Even if you connect the camera to a hard disk recorder with a cable, you cannot play or save movies and images.
- If the playback device is not compatible with MOV files, the movie cannot be played.

Playback on the Camera's LCD Monitor (p.253-260)

You can play back movies on the camera's LCD monitor. You can also edit out the movie's first and last scenes, and play back the still photos and movies on the card in an automatic slide show.

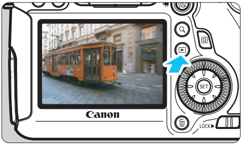
A movie edited with a computer cannot be rewritten to the card and played back with the camera. However, video snapshot albums edited with EOS Video Snapshot Task (p.232) can be played on the camera.

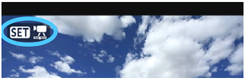
Playback and Editing with a Computer (p.392)

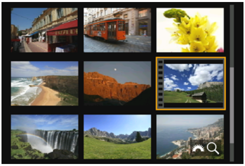
The movie files recorded on the card can be transferred to a computer and played with ImageBrowser EX (provided software).

- To have the movie play back smoothly on a computer, use a high-performance computer. Regarding the computer hardware requirements for ImageBrowser EX, refer to the PDF file ImageBrowser EX User Guide.
- If you want to use commercially-available software to play back or edit the movies, be sure it is compatible with MOV files. For details on commercially-available software, contact the software manufacturer.

🎥 Playing Movies







1 Play back the image.

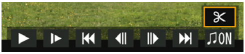
- Press the <▶> button to display images.

2 Select a movie.

- Turn the <◌> dial to select the movie to be played.
- On the single-image display, the <SET 🎥> icon displayed on the upper left indicates a movie. If the movie is a video snapshot, <SET 🎞> will be displayed.
- You can press the <INFO.> button to switch to the shooting information display (p.238).
- In the index display, perforations at the left edge of a thumbnail indicate a movie. **As movies cannot be played on the index display, press <SET> to switch to the single-image display.**

3 In the single-image display, press <SET>.

▶ The movie playback panel will appear at the bottom of the screen.

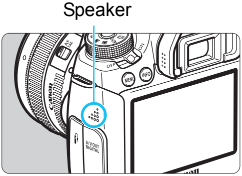


4 Play back the movie.

- Select [▶] (Play), then press <SET>.

▶ The movie will start playing.

- You can pause the movie playback by pressing <SET>.
- You can adjust the sound volume by turning the <☼> dial even during movie playback.
- For more details on the playback procedure, see the next page.



❗ The camera might not be able to play movies shot by another camera.

Movie Playback Panel

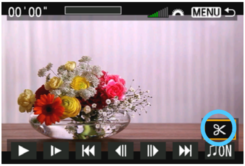
Operation	Playback Description
▶ Play	Pressing <SET> toggles between play and stop.
⏵ Slow motion	Adjust the slow motion speed by pressing the <◀▶> key. The slow-motion speed is indicated at the upper right of the screen.
⏮ First frame	Displays the movie's first frame.
◀II Previous frame	Each time you press <SET>, the previous frame is displayed. If you hold down <SET>, it will rewind the movie.
II▶ Next frame	Each time you press <SET>, the movie will play frame-by-frame. If you hold down <SET>, it will fast forward the movie.
⏭ Last frame	Displays the movie's last frame.
♫ Background music*	Play back a movie with the selected background music (p.260).
✂ Edit	Displays the editing screen (p.255).
▬	Playback position
mm' ss"	Playback time (minutes:seconds with [**Movie play count: Rec time**] set)
hh:mm:ss:ff	Time code (hours:minutes:seconds:frames with [**Movie play count: Time code**] set)
📶 Volume	You can adjust the built-in speaker's (p.253) volume by turning the <⚙> dial.
MENU ↩	Pressing the <MENU> button returns to the single-image display.

* When background music is set, the movie's sound will not be played.

- With a fully-charged Battery Pack LP-E6, the continuous playback time at room temperature (23°C/73°F) will be as follows: approx. 4 hr. 15 min.
- If you connect the camera to a TV set to play a movie (p.261, 264), adjust the sound volume with the TV set. (Turning the <⚙> dial will not change the sound volume.)
- If you took a still photo while you shot the movie, the still photo will be displayed for approx. 1 sec. during the movie playback.

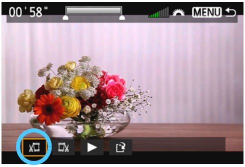
✂ Editing a Movie's First and Last Scenes

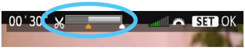
You can edit out the first and last scenes of a movie in 1-sec. increments.



1 On the movie playback screen, select [✂].

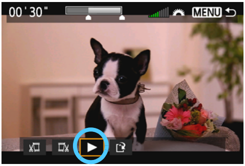
▶ The movie editing panel will be displayed at the bottom of the screen.





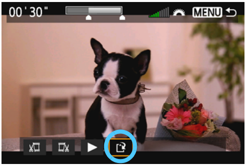
2 Specify the part to be edited out.

- Select either [✂▯] (Cut beginning) or [▯✂] (Cut end), then press <SET>.
- Press <◄►> (fast forward) or turn the <◎> dial (frame-by-frame) to specify the position where you want to delete the scene. On the bar at the top of the screen, you can see which part (indicated in orange) and how much will be deleted.
- After deciding which part to edit out, press <SET>.



3 Check the edited movie.

- Select [▶] and press <SET> to play back the edited movie.
- To change the editing, go back to step 2.
- To cancel the editing, press the <MENU> button, select [**OK**] on the confirmation screen.



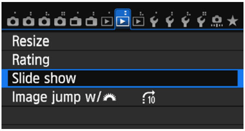
4 Save the edited movie.

- Select [⎘], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The save screen will appear.
- To save it as a new movie, select [**New file**]. To save it and overwrite the original movie file, select [**Overwrite**]. Then press <SET>.
- On the confirmation screen, select [**OK**], then press <SET> to save the edited movie and return to the movie playback screen.

- Since the editing is performed in approx. 1-sec. increments (position indicated by [✂]), the actual position where the movie is edited may differ from the position you specified.
- If the card does not have enough free space, [**New file**] will not be available.
- When the battery level is low, editing the movie is not possible. Use a fully-charged battery.

MENU Slide Show (Auto Playback)

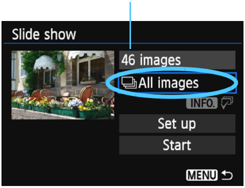
You can play back the images on the card as an automatic slide show.


Resize
Rating
Slide show
Image jump w/

1 Select [Slide show].

- Under the [▶2] tab, select [**Slide show**], then press <SET>.

Number of images to be played


Slide show
46 images
All images
INFO.
Set up
Start
MENU ↩

2 Select the images to be played.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select the desired option, then press <SET>.

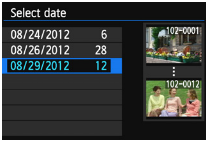
[All images/Movies/Stills]

- Press the <▲▼> key to select one of the following: [**All images/ Movies/ Stills**]. Then press <SET>.

[Date/Folder/Rating]

- Press the <▲▼> key to select one of the following: [**Date/ Folder/ ★Rating**].
- When <INFO. > is highlighted, press the <INFO.> button.
- Press the <▲▼> key to select the desired option, then press <SET>.

[Date]

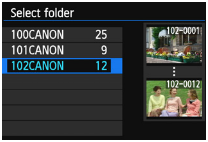


Select date

08/24/2012	6
08/26/2012	28
08/29/2012	12

102-0001
102-0012

[Folder]

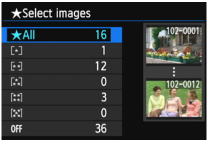


Select folder

100CANON	25
101CANON	9
102CANON	12

102-0001
102-0012

[Rating]

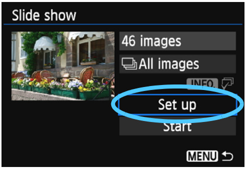


★Select images

★All	16
[*]	1
[**]	12
[***]	0
[****]	3
[*****]	0
OFF	36

102-0001
102-0012

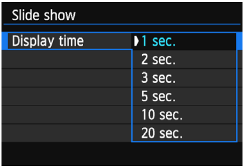
Item	Playback Description
All images	All the still photos and movies on the card will be played back.
Date	Still photos and movies taken on the selected shooting date will be played back.
Folder	Still photos and movies in the selected folder will be played back.
Movies	Only the movies on the card will be played back.
Stills	Only the still photos on the card will be played back.
★ Rating	Only the still photos and movies with the selected rating will be played back.


Slide show
46 images
All images
INFO.
Set up
Start
MENU ⮌

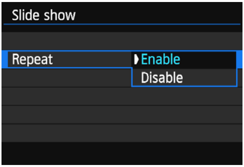
3 Set [Set up] as desired.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select [**Set up**], then press <SET>.
- Set the [**Display time**], [**Repeat**] (repeated playback), [**Transition effect**] (effect when changing images), and [**Background music**] for the still photos.
- The background music selection procedure is explained on page 260.
- After selecting the settings, press the <MENU> button.

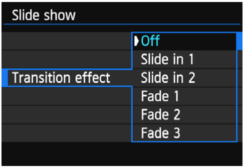
[Display time]


Slide show
Display time
1 sec.
2 sec.
3 sec.
5 sec.
10 sec.
20 sec.

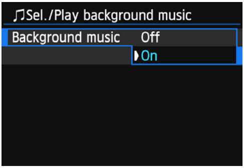
[Repeat]

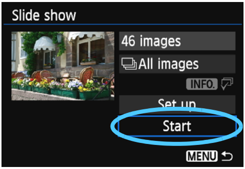

Slide show
Repeat
Enable
Disable

[Transition effect]


Slide show
Transition effect
Off
Slide in 1
Slide in 2
Fade 1
Fade 2
Fade 3

[Background music]


♫Sel./Play background music
Background music
Off
On


Slide show
46 images
All images
INFO.
Set up
Start
MENU ↩

4 Start the slide show.

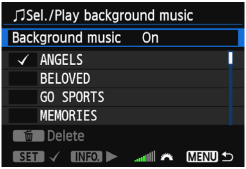
- Press the <▲▼> key to select [**Start**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ After [**Loading image...**] is displayed, the slide show will start.

5 Exit the slide show.

- To exit the slide show and return to the setting screen, press the <MENU> button.

- To pause the slide show, press <SET>. During pause, [❚❚] will be displayed on the upper left of the image. Press <SET> again to resume the slide show.
- During auto playback, you can press the <INFO.> button to change the still photo display format (p.236).
- During movie playback, you can adjust the sound volume by turning the <⚙> dial.
- During auto playback or pause, you can turn the <◎> dial to view another image.
- During auto playback, auto power off will not work.
- The display time may vary depending on the image.
- To view the slide show on a TV set, see page 261.

Selecting the Background Music



Background music On

1 Select [Background music].

- Set [**Background music**] to [**On**], then press <SET>.

2 Select the background music.

- Press the <▲▼> key to select the desired background music, then press <SET>. You can also select multiple background music tracks.

3 Play the background music.

- To listen to a sample of the background music, press the <INFO.> button.
- Press the <▲▼> key to play another background music track. To stop listening to the background music, press the <INFO.> button again.
- Adjust the sound volume by turning the <⚙> dial.
- To delete a background music track, press the <▲▼> key and select the track, then press the <🗑> button.

At the time of purchase, you cannot select background music with the camera. You must first use EOS Utility (provided software) to copy the background music to the card. For details, refer to the EOS Utility Instruction Manual on the CD-ROM.

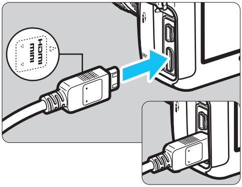
Viewing the Images on TV

You can view the still photos and movies on a TV set.

- Adjust the movie's sound volume with the TV set. The sound volume cannot be adjusted with the camera.
- Before connecting or disconnecting the cable between the camera and TV set, turn off the camera and TV set.
- Depending on the TV set, part of the image displayed may be cut off.

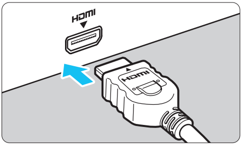
Viewing on High-Definition (HD) TV Sets (Connected with HDMI)

HDMI Cable HTC-100 (sold separately) is required.



1 Connect the HDMI cable to the camera.

- With the plug's <▲**HDMI MINI**> logo facing the front of the camera, insert it into the <**HDMI OUT**> terminal.

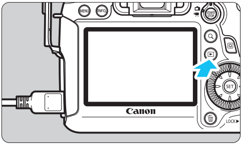


2 Connect the HDMI cable to the TV set.

- Connect the HDMI cable to the TV's HDMI IN port.

3 Turn on the TV and switch the TV's video input to select the connected port.

4 Set the camera's power switch to <ON>.



5 Press the <▶> button.

- ▶ The image will appear on the TV screen. (Nothing will be displayed on the camera's LCD monitor.)
- The images will automatically be displayed at the TV's optimum resolution.
- By pressing the <INFO.> button, you can change the display format.
- To play back movies, see page 253.

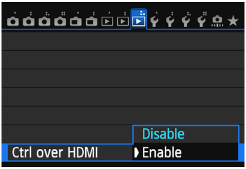
The images cannot be output at the same time from both the <**HDMI OUT**> and <**A/V OUT**> terminals.

- Do not connect any other device's output to the camera's <**HDMI OUT**> terminal. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Certain TVs may not be able to play back the captured images. In such a case, use the provided AV cable to connect to the TV.

Using HDMI CEC TV Sets

If the TV set connected to the camera with an HDMI cable is compatible with HDMI CEC*, you can use the TV set's remote control for playback operations.

* An HDMI-standard function enabling HDMI devices to control each other so that you can control them with one remote control unit.



Ctrl over HDMI
Disable
Enable

1 Set [Ctrl over HDMI] to [Enable].

- Under the [▶3] tab, select [**Ctrl over HDMI**], then press <SET>.
- Select [**Enable**], then press <SET>.

2 Connect the camera to a TV set.

- Use an HDMI cable to connect the camera to the TV.
- ▶ The TV's input will switch automatically to the HDMI port connected to the camera.

3 Press the camera's <▶> button.

- ▶ An image will appear on the TV screen and you can use the TV's remote control to play back images.

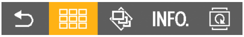
4 Select an image.

- Point the remote control toward the TV set and press the ←/→ button to select an image.

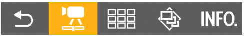
5 Press the remote control's Enter button.

- ▶ The menu appears and you can perform the playback operations shown on the left.
- Press the ←/→ button to select the desired option, then press the Enter button. For a slide show, press the remote control's ↑/↓ button to select an option, then press the Enter button.
- If you select [**Return**] and press the Enter button, the menu will disappear and you can use the ←/→ button to select an image.

Still photo playback menu



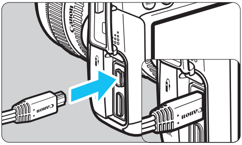
Movie playback menu



↩ : Return
▦ : 9-image index
🎞 : Play movie
⧉ : Slide show
INFO. : Disp. shooting info
⟳ : Rotate

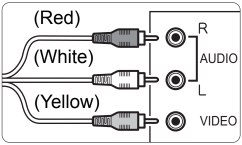
- Some TV sets require you to first enable the HDMI CEC connection. For details, refer to the TV set's instruction manual.
- Certain TV sets, even those compatible with HDMI CEC, may not operate properly. In such a case, set [▶**3: Ctrl over HDMI**] to [**Disable**], and use the camera to control the playback operation.

Viewing on Non-HD TV Sets (Connected with AV Cable)



1 Connect the provided AV cable to the camera.

- With the plug's <**Canon**> logo facing the back of the camera, insert it into the < **A/V OUT** > terminal.

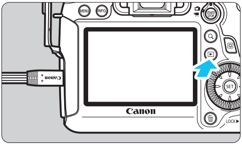


2 Connect the AV cable to the TV set.

- Connect the AV cable to the TV's video IN terminal and audio IN terminal.

3 Turn on the TV and switch the TV's video input to select the connected port.

4 Set the camera's power switch to <ON>.



5 Press the <▶> button.

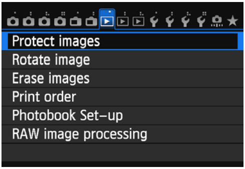
- ▶ The image will appear on the TV screen. (Nothing will be displayed on the camera's LCD monitor.)
- To play back movies, see page 253.

- Do not use any AV cable other than the one provided. Images may not be displayed if you use a different cable.
- If the video system format does not match the TV's, the images will not be displayed properly. If this happens, switch to the proper video system format with [**🔧3: Video system**].

⊶ Protecting Images

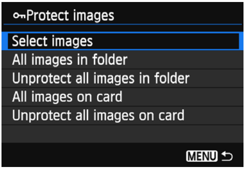
Protecting an image prevents it from being erased accidentally.

MENU Protecting a Single Image


Protect images
Rotate image
Erase images
Print order
Photobook Set-up
RAW image processing

1 Select [Protect images].

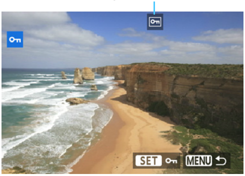
- Under the [▶1] tab, select [**Protect images**], then press <SET>.


⊶Protect images
Select images
All images in folder
Unprotect all images in folder
All images on card
Unprotect all images on card
MENU ↶

2 Select [Select images].

- Select [**Select images**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The images will be displayed.

Image protect icon

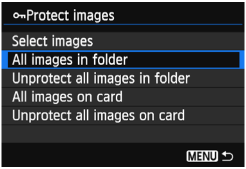


3 Protect the image.

- Turn the <◎> dial to select the image to be protected, then press <SET>.
- ▶ The image will be protected, and the <⊶> icon will appear at the top of the screen.
- To cancel the image protection, press <SET> again. The <⊶> icon will disappear.
- To protect another image, repeat step 3.
- To return to the menu, press the <MENU> button.

MENU Protecting All Images in a Folder or on a Card

You can protect all the images in a folder or on a card at one time.



Protect images

Select images

All images in folder

Unprotect all images in folder

All images on card

Unprotect all images on card

When you select [**All images in folder**] or [**All images on card**] in [▶**1: Protect images**], all the images in the folder or on the card will be protected.

To cancel the image protection, select [**Unprotect all images in folder**] or [**Unprotect all images on card**].

If you format the card (p.53)**, the protected images will also be erased.**

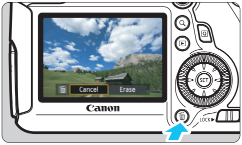
- Movies can also be protected.
- Once an image is protected, it cannot be erased by the camera's erase function. To erase a protected image, you must first cancel the protection.
- If you erase all the images (p.268), only the protected images will remain. This is convenient when you want to erase unnecessary images all at once.

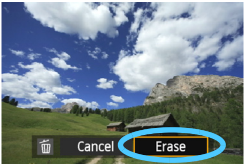
🗑 Erasing Images

You can either select and erase images one by one or erase them in one batch. Protected images (p.265) will not be erased.

Once an image is erased, it cannot be recovered. Make sure you no longer need the image before erasing it. To prevent important images from being erased accidentally, protect them. Erasing a RAW+JPEG image will erase both the RAW and JPEG images.

Erasing a Single Image


Cancel
Erase
Canon
SET
LOCK


🗑
Cancel
Erase

1 **Play back the image to be erased.**

2 **Press the <🗑> button.**

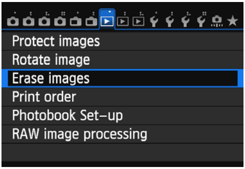
▶ The Erase menu will appear at the bottom of the screen.

3 **Erase the image.**

- Select [**Erase**], then press <SET>. The image displayed will be erased.

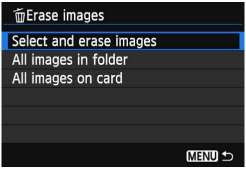
MENU Checkmarking <√> Images to be Erased in a Batch

By appending checkmarks <√> to the images to be erased, you can erase multiple images at one time.


Protect images
Rotate image
Erase images
Print order
Photobook Set-up
RAW image processing

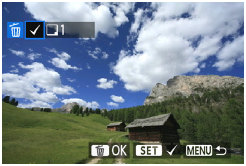
1 **Select [Erase images].**

- Under the [▶1] tab, select [**Erase images**], then press <SET>.


Erase images
Select and erase images
All images in folder
All images on card
MENU ⮌

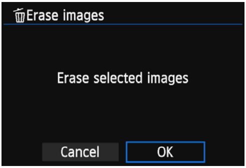
2 Select [Select and erase images].

- Select [**Select and erase images**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ An image will be displayed.
- If you press the <🔍> button and turn the <⌓> dial counterclockwise, you can select an image from a three-image display. To return to the single-image display, turn the <⌓> dial clockwise.


🗑 ✓ 1
🗑 OK
SET ✓
MENU ⮌

3 Select the images to be erased.

- Turn the <◯> dial to select the image to be erased, then press <SET>.
- ▶ A checkmark <✓> will be displayed on the upper left of the screen.
- To select other images to be erased, repeat step 3.


Erase images
Erase selected images
Cancel
OK

4 Erase the image.

- Press the <🗑> button.
- Select [**OK**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The selected images will be erased.

MENU Erasing All Images in a Folder or on a Card

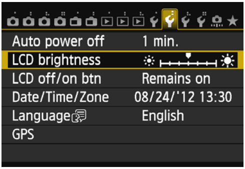
You can erase all the images in a folder or on a card at one time. When [▶ **1: Erase images**] is set to [**All images in folder**] or [**All images on card**], all the images in the folder or on the card will be erased.

To also erase protected images, format the card (p.53).

Changing Image Playback Settings

MENU Adjusting the LCD Monitor Brightness

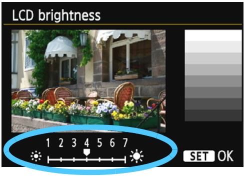
You can adjust the brightness of the LCD monitor to make it easier to read.



Auto power off	1 min.
LCD brightness	
LCD off/on btn	Remains on
Date/Time/Zone	08/24/'12 13:30
Language	English
GPS	

1 Select [LCD brightness].

- Under the [🔧**2**] tab, select [**LCD brightness**], then press <SET>.

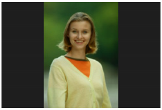


2 Adjust the brightness.

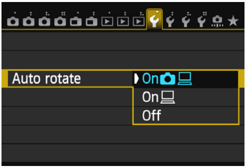
- While referring to the gray chart, press the <◄►> key, then press <SET>.

To check the image's exposure, looking at the histogram is recommended (p.240).

MENU Auto Rotation of Vertical Images



Vertical images are rotated automatically so they are displayed vertically on the camera's LCD monitor and on the computer instead of horizontally. You can change the setting for this feature.



Auto rotate ▸On📷💻

On💻

Off

1 Select [Auto rotate].

- Under the [🔧1] tab, select [**Auto rotate**], then press <SET>.

2 Set the auto rotation.

- Select the desired option, then press <SET>.

- **On📷💻**
  The vertical image is automatically rotated during playback on both the camera's LCD monitor and on the computer.
- **On💻**
  The vertical image is automatically rotated only on the computer.
- **Off**
  The vertical image is not automatically rotated.

Auto rotation will not work with vertical images captured while auto rotation was [**Off**]. They will not rotate even if you later switch it to [**On**] for playback.

- Immediately after image capture, the vertical image will not be automatically rotated for the image review.
- If the vertical image is taken while the camera is pointed up or down, the image may not be rotated automatically for playback.
- If the vertical image is not automatically rotated on the computer screen, it means the software you are using is unable to rotate the image. Using the provided software is recommended.

10

Post-Processing Images

You can process RAW images with the camera or resize (shrink) JPEG images.

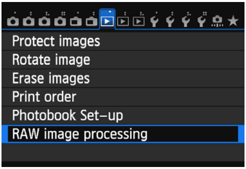
- The ☆ mark shown on the right of the page title indicates that the function is available only in Creative Zone modes (**P**/**Tv**/**Av**/**M**/**B**).

- The camera may not be able to process images taken with another camera.
- Post-processing images as described in this chapter is not possible if the camera is set for multiple exposures, or while it is connected to a computer via the <**DIGITAL**> terminal.

RAW JPEG↓ Processing RAW Images with the Camera ☆

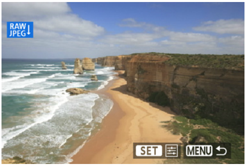
You can process RAW images with the camera and save them as JPEG images. While the RAW image itself does not change, you can process the RAW image according to different conditions to create any number of JPEG images from it.

Note that M RAW and S RAW images cannot be processed with the camera. Use Digital Photo Professional (provided software, p.392) to process those images.


Protect images
Rotate image
Erase images
Print order
Photobook Set-up
RAW image processing

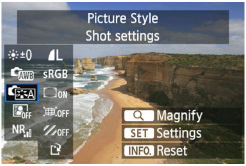
1 Select [RAW image processing].

- Under the [▶1] tab, select [**RAW image processing**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ RAW images will be displayed.


RAW JPEG↓
SET
MENU ↩

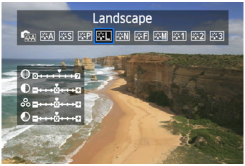
2 Select an image.

- Turn the <◎> dial to select the image you want to process.
- If you press the <🔍> button and turn the <⚙> dial counterclockwise, you can select an image from the index display.


Picture Style
Shot settings
±0
L
AWB
sRGB
A
ON
OFF
OFF
NR
OFF
Magnify
SET Settings
INFO. Reset

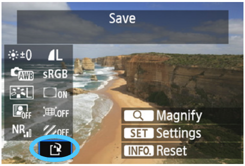
3 Process the image.

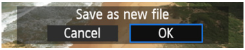
- Press <SET> and then the RAW-processing options will appear (p.274-276).
- Press the <▲▼> and <◄►> keys to select an option, and turn the <◎> dial to change the setting.
- ▶ The displayed image will reflect "Brightness adjustment", "White balance", and the other setting adjustments.
- To return to the image settings at the time of shooting, press the <**INFO.**> button.



Displaying the setting screen

- Press <SET> to display the setting screen. Turn the <◯> dial to change the setting. To finalize the change and return to the screen in step 3, press <SET>.





4 Save the image.

- Select [⎘] (Save), then press <SET>.
- Select [**OK**] to save the image.
- Check the destination folder and image file number, then select [**OK**].
- To process another image, repeat steps 2 to 4.

- To return to the menu, press the <**MENU**> button.

About the Magnified View

You can magnify the image by pressing the <🔍> button in step 3. The magnification will differ depending on the pixel count of [**Image quality**] set in [**RAW image processing**]. With <✥>, you can scroll around the magnified image.
To cancel the magnified view, press the <🔍> button again.

Images with Aspect Ratio Setting

Images shot in a Live View shooting aspect ratio ([**4:3**] [**16:9**] [**1:1**]) will be displayed in the respective aspect ratio. JPEG images will also be saved in the set aspect ratio.

❗ When Wi-Fi function is used, RAW image processing cannot be performed.

RAW Image-processing Options

- ☀±0 **Brightness adjustment**
  You can adjust the image brightness up to ±1 stop in 1/3-stop increments. The displayed image will reflect the setting's effect.

- AWB **White balance** (p.120)
  You can select the white balance. If you select [K], turn the <⚙> dial to set the color temperature on the setting screen. The displayed image will reflect the setting's effect.

- A **Picture Style** (p.112)
  You can select the Picture Style. To set the parameters such as sharpness, press <SET> to display the setting screen. Press the <◄►> key to select the Picture Style. Turn the <◎> dial to select a parameter to be adjusted, then press the <◄►> key to set it. To finalize the setting and return to the screen in step 3, press <SET>. The displayed image will reflect the setting's effect.

- ▨ **Auto Lighting Optimizer** (p.125)
  You can set the Auto Lighting Optimizer. The displayed image will reflect the setting's effect.

- NR **High ISO speed noise reduction** (p.126)
  You can set the noise reduction for high ISO speeds. The displayed image will reflect the setting's effect. If the effect is difficult to discern, press the <🔍> button to magnify the image. (Press the <🔍> button again to return to the normal view.)

- ◢L **Image quality** (p.102)
  You can set the image quality of the JPEG image to be saved when converting the RAW image. The image size displayed, such as [*****M ****x******], has a 3:2 aspect ratio. The pixel count of each aspect ratio is indicated in the table on page 278.

- sRGB **Color space** (p.140)
  You can select either sRGB or Adobe RGB. Since the camera’s LCD monitor is not compatible with Adobe RGB, the image will not look very different when either color space is set.
- OFF **Peripheral illumination correction** (p.131)
  If [**Enable**] is set, the corrected image will be displayed. If the effect is difficult to discern, press the <🔍> button to magnify the image and check the corners. (Press the <🔍> button again to return to the normal view.) The peripheral illumination correction applied with the camera will be less pronounced than with Digital Photo Professional (provided software) and may be less apparent. In such a case, use Digital Photo Professional to apply the peripheral illumination correction.
- OFF **Distortion correction**
  When [**Enable**] is set, image distortion due to the lens characteristics is corrected. If [**Enable**] is set, the corrected image will be displayed. The image periphery will be cropped in the corrected image.
  Since the image resolution may look slightly lower, use the Picture Style’s sharpness parameter to make adjustments as necessary.

When processing images with [**Distortion correction**] set to [**Enable**], AF point display information (p.240) and Dust Delete data (p.281) will not be appended to the image.

- **Chromatic aberration correction**
  When [**Enable**] is set, the lens' chromatic aberrations (color fringing along the subject's outline) can be corrected. If [**Enable**] is set, the corrected image will be displayed. If the effect is difficult to discern, press the <🔍> button to magnify the image. (Press the <🔍> button again to return to the normal view.)

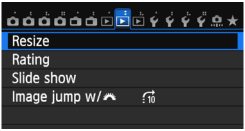
About Peripheral Illumination Correction, Distortion Correction, and Chromatic Aberration Correction

To execute peripheral illumination correction, distortion correction, and chromatic aberration correction with the camera, the data of the lens used for the shot must be registered in the camera. If the lens data has not been registered in the camera, use EOS Utility (provided software, p.392) to register the lens data.

Processing RAW images in the camera will not produce the same results as processing RAW images with Digital Photo Professional.

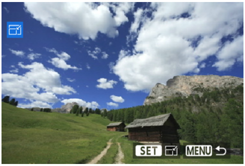
Resize

You can resize an image to make the pixel count lower and save it as a new image. Resizing an image is possible only with JPEG L/M/S1/S2 images. **JPEG S3 and RAW images cannot be resized.**


Resize
Rating
Slide show
Image jump w/

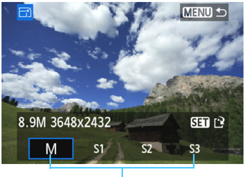
1 Select [Resize].

- Under the [▶2] tab, select [**Resize**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The images will be displayed.



2 Select an image.

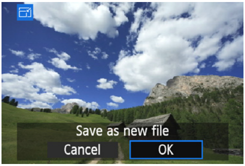
- Turn the <○> dial to select the image you want to resize.
- If you press the <🔍> button and turn the <⚙> dial counterclockwise, you can select an image from the index display.


MENU ↩
8.9M 3648x2432
SET
M
S1
S2
S3

Target sizes

3 Select the desired image size.

- Press <SET> to display the image sizes.
- Press the <◄►> key to select the desired image size, then press <SET>.


Save as new file
Cancel
OK

4 Save the image.

- Select [**OK**] to save the resized image.
- Check the destination folder and image file number, then select [**OK**].
- To resize another image, repeat steps 2 to 4.

- To return to the menu, press the <MENU> button.

Resize Options According to Original Image Size

Original Image Size	Available Resize Settings			
	M	S1	S2	S3
L	○	○	○	○
M		○	○	○
S1			○	○
S2				○

About Image Sizes

The image size displayed in step 3 on the preceding page, such as [***M ****x****], has a 3:2 aspect ratio. The image size according to aspect ratios is shown in the table below.
The asterisked image-recording quality figures do not exactly match the aspect ratio. The image will be cropped slightly.

Image Quality	Aspect Ratio and Pixel Count (Approx.)			
	3:2	4:3	16:9	1:1
M	3648x2432 (8.9 megapixels)	3248x2432* (7.9 megapixels)	3648x2048* (7.5 megapixels)	2432x2432 (5.9 megapixels)
S1	2736x1824 (5.0 megapixels)	2432x1824 (4.4 megapixels)	2736x1536* (4.2 megapixels)	1824x1824 (3.3 megapixels)
S2	1920x1280 (2.5 megapixels)	1696x1280* (2.2 megapixels)	1920x1080 (2.1 megapixels)	1280x1280 (1.6 megapixels)
S3	720x480 (350,000 pixels)	640x480 (310,000 pixels)	720x408* (290,000 pixels)	480x480 (230,000 pixels)

When Wi-Fi function is used, resizing is not possible.

11

Sensor Cleaning

The camera has a Self Cleaning Sensor Unit to automatically shake off dust adhered to the image sensor's front layer (low pass filter).
The Dust Delete Data can also be appended to the image so that the dust spots remaining can be erased automatically by Digital Photo Professional (provided software, p.392).

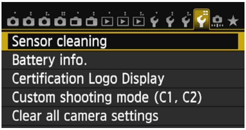
About smudges adhering to the front of the sensor
Besides dust entering the camera from outside, in rare cases lubricant from the camera's internal parts may adhere to the front of the sensor. If visible spots still remain after the automatic sensor cleaning, having the sensor cleaned by a Canon Service Center is recommended.

Even while the Self Cleaning Sensor Unit is operating, you can press the shutter button halfway to interrupt the cleaning and start shooting immediately.

Automatic Sensor Cleaning

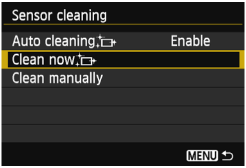
Whenever you set the power switch to <ON> or <OFF>, the Self Cleaning Sensor Unit operates to automatically shake off the dust on the front of the sensor. Normally, you need not pay attention to this operation. However, you can choose to perform sensor cleaning at any time, or disable it.

Cleaning the Sensor Now


Sensor cleaning
Battery info.
Certification Logo Display
Custom shooting mode (C1, C2)
Clear all camera settings

1 Select [Sensor cleaning].

- Under the [4] tab, select [**Sensor cleaning**], then press <SET>.


Sensor cleaning
Auto cleaning Enable
Clean now
Clean manually

2 Select [Clean now].

- Select [**Clean now**], then press <SET>.
- Select [**OK**] on the dialog screen, then press <SET>.
- ▶ The screen will indicate that the sensor is being cleaned. Although there will be a shutter sound, a picture is not taken.

- For best results, perform the sensor cleaning with the camera placed upright and stable on a table or other flat surface.
- Even if you repeat the sensor cleaning, the result will not improve much. Immediately after the sensor cleaning is finished, the [**Clean now**] option will remain disabled temporarily.

Disabling Automatic Sensor Cleaning

- In step 2, select [**Auto cleaning**] and set it to [**Disable**].
- ▶ The sensor cleaning will no longer be executed when you set the power switch to <ON> or <OFF>.

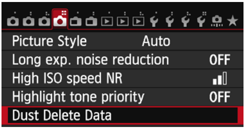
MENU Appending Dust Delete Data☆

Normally, the Self Cleaning Sensor Unit will eliminate most of the dust that may be visible on captured images. However, in case visible dust still remains, you can append the Dust Delete Data to the image for erasing the dust spots later. The Dust Delete Data is used by Digital Photo Professional (provided software, p.392) to erase the dust spots automatically.

Preparation

- Prepare a solid white object such as a sheet of paper.
- Set the lens focal length to 50 mm or longer.
- Set the lens focus mode switch to <**MF**> and set the focus to infinity (∞). If the lens has no distance scale, look at the front of the lens and turn the focusing ring clockwise all the way.

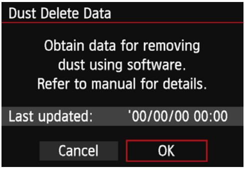
Obtain the Dust Delete Data



Picture Style Auto
Long exp. noise reduction OFF
High ISO speed NR
Highlight tone priority OFF
Dust Delete Data

1 Select [Dust Delete Data].

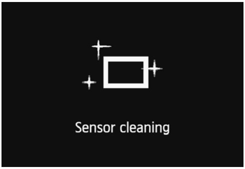
- Under the [**📷4**] tab, select [**Dust Delete Data**], then press <SET>.



Dust Delete Data

Obtain data for removing
dust using software.
Refer to manual for details.

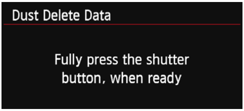
Last updated: '00/00/00 00:00



Sensor cleaning

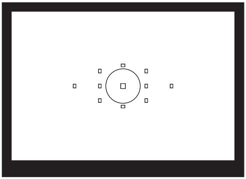
2 Select [OK].

- Select [**OK**] and press <SET>. After the automatic self-cleaning of the sensor is performed, a message will appear. Although there will be a shutter sound during the cleaning, a picture is not taken.



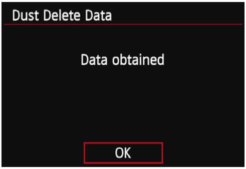
Dust Delete Data

Fully press the shutter
button, when ready



3 Photograph a solid-white object.

- At a distance of 20 cm - 30 cm (0.7 ft. - 1.0 ft.), fill the viewfinder with a patternless, solid-white object and take a picture.
- ▶ The picture will be taken in aperture-priority AE mode at an aperture of f/22.
- Since the image will not be saved, the data can still be obtained even if there is no card in the camera.
- ▶ When the picture is taken, the camera will start collecting the Dust Delete Data. When the Dust Delete Data is obtained, a message will appear. Select [**OK**], and the menu will reappear.
- If the data was not obtained successfully, an error message will appear. Follow the “Preparation” procedure on the preceding page, then select [**OK**]. Take the picture again.



Dust Delete Data

Data obtained

About the Dust Delete Data

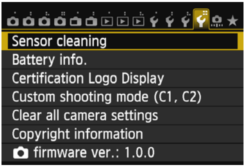
After the Dust Delete Data is obtained, it is appended to all the JPEG and RAW images captured thereafter. Before an important shoot, it is recommended to update the Dust Delete Data by obtaining it again.
For details about using Digital Photo Professional (provided software, p.392) to erase dust spots, refer to the Software Instruction Manual (p.395) on the CD-ROM.
The Dust Delete Data appended to the image is so small that it hardly affects the image file size.

Be sure to use a solid-white object such as a new sheet of white paper. If the paper has any pattern or design, it may be recognized as dust data and affect the accuracy of the dust deletion with the software.

MENU Manual Sensor Cleaning☆

Dust that could not be removed by the automatic sensor cleaning can be removed manually with a blower, etc. Before cleaning the sensor, detach the lens from the camera.

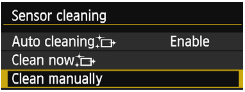
The surface of the image sensor is extremely delicate. If the sensor needs to be cleaned directly, having it done by a Canon Service Center is recommended.



Sensor cleaning
Battery info.
Certification Logo Display
Custom shooting mode (C1, C2)
Clear all camera settings
Copyright information
📷 firmware ver.: 1.0.0

1 Select [Sensor cleaning].

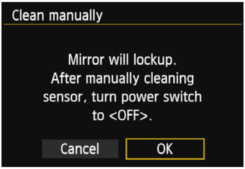
- Under the [🔧4] tab, select [**Sensor cleaning**], then press <SET>.



Sensor cleaning
Auto cleaning Enable
Clean now
Clean manually

2 Select [Clean manually].

- Select [**Clean manually**], then press <SET>.



Clean manually

Mirror will lockup.
After manually cleaning
sensor, turn power switch
to <OFF>.

Cancel OK

3 Select [OK].

- Select [**OK**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ In a moment, the reflex mirror will lockup and the shutter will open.
- "**CLn**" will blink on the LCD panel.

4 Clean the sensor.

5 End the cleaning.

- Set the power switch to <OFF>.

If you use a battery, make sure it is fully charged. If the battery grip with size-AA/LR6 batteries is attached, manual sensor cleaning will not be possible.

For the power source, using AC Adapter Kit ACK-E6 (sold separately) is recommended.

- **While cleaning the sensor, never do any of the following. If the power is cut off, the shutter will close and the shutter curtains and image sensor may get damaged.**
  - **Setting the power switch to <OFF>.**
  - **Removing or inserting the battery.**
- The surface of the image sensor is extremely delicate. Clean the sensor with care.
- Use a plain blower without any brush attached. A brush can scratch the sensor.
- Do not insert the blower tip inside the camera beyond the lens mount. If the power is turned off, the shutter will close and the shutter curtains or reflex mirror may get damaged.
- Never use pressurized air or gas to clean the sensor. The blowing force can damage the sensor or the spray gas can freeze on the sensor.
- If the battery level becomes low while you clean the sensor, the beeper will sound as a warning. Stop cleaning the sensor.
- If a smudge that cannot be removed with a blower remains, having the sensor cleaned by a Canon Service Center is recommended.

12

Printing Images

- **Printing** (p.288)
  You can connect the camera directly to a printer and print out the images on the card. The camera is compatible with “PictBridge” which is the standard for direct printing.
  You can also use a wireless LAN to send images to a PictBridge (DPS over IP) printer and print them. For details, refer to the Wi-Fi Function Instruction Manual.

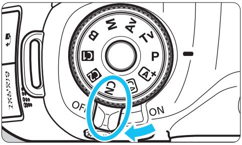
- **Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)** (p.295)
  DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) enables you to print images recorded on the card according to your printing instructions such as the image selection, quantity to print, etc. You can print multiple images in one batch or give the print order to a photofinisher.

- **Specifying Images for a Photobook** (p.299)
  You can specify images in the card for printing in a photobook.

Preparing to Print

The direct printing procedure can be performed entirely with the camera while you look at the camera's LCD monitor.

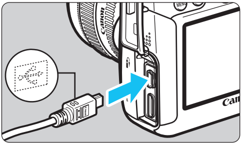
Connecting the Camera to the Printer

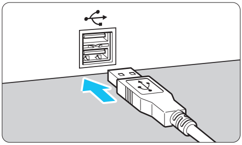


1 Set the camera's power switch to <OFF>.

2 Set up the printer.

- For details, refer to the printer's instruction manual.

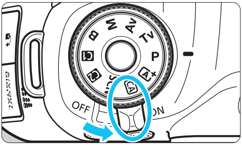




3 Connect the camera to the printer.

- Use the interface cable provided with the camera.
- Connect the cable to the camera's <**DIGITAL**> terminal with the cable plug's <⭠> icon facing the front of the camera.
- To connect to the printer, refer to the printer's instruction manual.

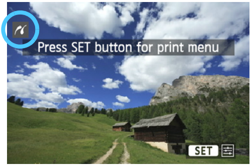
4 Turn on the printer.



5 Set the camera's power switch to <ON>.

▶ Some printers may make a beeping sound.

PictBridge



Press SET button for print menu

6 Play back the image.

- Press the <▶> button.
- ▶ The image will appear, and the < > icon will appear on the upper left to indicate that the camera is connected to a printer.

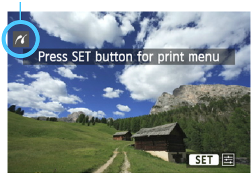
- Movies cannot be printed.
- The camera cannot be used with printers compatible only with CP Direct or Bubble Jet Direct.
- Do not use any interface cable other than the one provided.
- If there is a long beeping sound in step 5, it indicates a problem with the printer. Resolve the problem displayed in the error message (p.294).
- Printing is not possible in the following cases: The shooting mode is set to < > or < > in the <SCN> mode, Multi Shot Noise Reduction is set, or HDR mode is set.
- Under the [3] tab, if [**Wi-Fi**] is set to [**Enable**], direct printing is not possible. Set [**Wi-Fi**] to [**Disable**], then connect the interface cable.

- You can also print RAW images taken with this camera.
- If you use a battery pack to power the camera, make sure it is fully charged. With a fully-charged battery pack, you can print for approx. 5 hr. 30 min.
- Before disconnecting the cable, first turn off the camera and printer. Hold the plug (not the cord) to pull out the cable.
- For direct printing, using AC Adapter Kit ACK-E6 (sold separately) to power the camera is recommended.

✎ Printing

The screen display and setting options will differ depending on the printer. Some settings may not be available. For details, refer to the printer's instruction manual.

Printer-connected icon



Press SET button for print menu

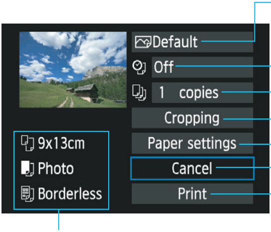
1 Select the image to be printed.

- Check that the <✎> icon is displayed on the upper left of the LCD monitor.
- Turn the <◎> dial to select the image to be printed.

2 Press <SET>.

▶ The print setting screen will appear.

Print setting screen



Default — Sets the printing effects (p.290).

Off — Sets the date or file number imprinting to on or off.

1 copies — Sets the quantity to be printed.

Cropping — Sets the trimming (cropping) (p.293).

Paper settings — Sets the paper size, type, and layout.

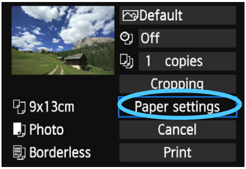
Cancel — Returns to the screen in step 1.

Print — Starts the printing.

9x13cm
Photo
Borderless

The paper size, type, and layout you have set are displayed.

* **Depending on the printer, certain settings such as the date and file number imprinting and trimming may not be selectable.**

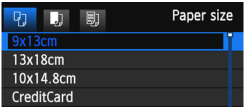


3 Select [Paper settings].

- Select [**Paper settings**], then press <SET>.

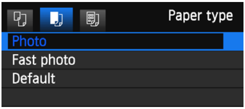
▶ The paper settings screen will appear.

Setting the Paper Size



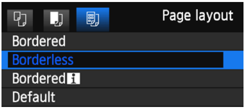
- Select the size of the paper loaded in the printer, then press <SET>.
- ▶ The paper type screen will appear.

Setting the Paper Type



- Select the type of the paper loaded in the printer, then press <SET>.
- ▶ The page layout screen will appear.

Setting the Page Layout



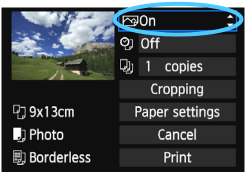
- Select the page layout, then press <SET>.
- ▶ The print setting screen will reappear.

Bordered	The print will have white borders along the edges.
Borderless	The print will have no borders. If your printer cannot print borderless prints, the print will have borders.
Borderedℹ	The shooting information*1 will be imprinted on the border on 9x13 cm and larger prints.
xx-up	Option to print 2, 4, 8, 9, 16, or 20 images on one sheet.
20-upℹ **35-up🎞**	20 or 35 images will be printed as thumbnails on A4 or Letter size paper*2. • **[20-upℹ]** will have the shooting information*1 imprinted.
Default	The page layout will vary depending on the printer model or its settings.

*1: From the Exif data, the camera name, lens name, shooting mode, shutter speed, aperture, exposure compensation amount, ISO speed, white balance, etc., will be imprinted.

*2: After ordering the prints with “Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)” (p.295), you should print by following “Direct Printing of Print-Ordered Images” (p.298).

If the image’s aspect ratio is different from the printing paper’s aspect ratio, the image may be cropped significantly if you print it as a borderless print. If the image is cropped, it may look more grainy on the paper due to the fewer number of pixels.



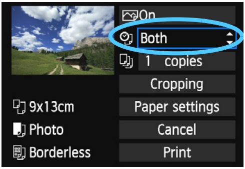
4 Set the printing effects.

- Set it if necessary. If you do not need to set any printing effects, go to step 5.
- **What is displayed on the screen differs depending on the printer.**
- Select the option, then press <SET>.
- Select the desired printing effect, then press <SET>.
- If the <≡> icon is displayed brightly next to <INFO.>, you can also adjust the printing effect (p.292).

Printing Effect	Description
On	The image will be printed using the printer's standard colors. The image's Exif data is used to make automatic corrections.
Off	No automatic correction will be applied.
Vivid	The image will be printed with higher saturation to produce more vivid blues and greens.
NR	Image noise is reduced before printing.
B/W B/W	Prints in black-and-white with true blacks.
B/W Cool tone	Prints in black-and-white with cool, bluish blacks.
B/W Warm tone	Prints in black-and-white with warm, yellowish blacks.
Natural	Prints the image in the actual colors and contrast. No automatic color adjustments are applied.
Natural M	The printing characteristics are the same as the "Natural" setting. However, this setting enables finer printing adjustments than with "Natural."
Default	The printing will differ depending on the printer. For details, refer to the printer's instruction manual.

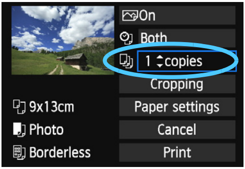
* **When you change the printing effects, changes are reflected in the image displayed on the upper left. Note that the printed image may look slightly different from the displayed image, which is only an approximation. This also applies to [Brightness] and [Adjust levels] on page 292.**

If the shooting information of an image shot at the H1 or H2 ISO speed is imprinted, the correct ISO speed may not be imprinted.


On
Both
1 copies
Cropping
Paper settings
Cancel
Print
9x13cm
Photo
Borderless

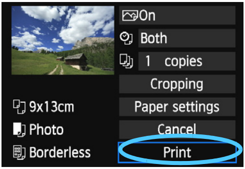
5 Set the date and file number imprinting.

- Set them if necessary.
- Select <⏲>, then press <SET>.
- Set as desired, then press <SET>.


On
Both
1 copies
Cropping
Paper settings
Cancel
Print
9x13cm
Photo
Borderless

6 Set the number of copies.

- Set it if necessary.
- Select <⧉>, then press <SET>.
- Set the number of copies, then press <SET>.

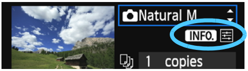

On
Both
1 copies
Cropping
Paper settings
Cancel
Print
9x13cm
Photo
Borderless

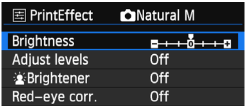
7 Start printing.

- Select [**Print**], then press <SET>.

- The [**Default**] setting for printing effects and other options are the printer's own default settings as set by the printer's manufacturer. Refer to the printer's instruction manual to find out what the [**Default**] settings are.
- Depending on the image's file size and image-recording quality, it may take some time for the printing to start after you select [**Print**].
- If image tilt correction (p.293) is applied, it may take longer to print the image.
- To stop the printing, press <SET> while [**Stop**] is displayed, then select [**OK**].
- If you execute [**🔧4: Clear all camera settings**] (p.56), all the settings will revert to their defaults.

☰ Adjustment of Printing Effects

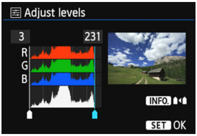

Natural M
INFO. ☰
1 copies


PrintEffect Natural M

Brightness	▪+++0+++▪
Adjust levels	Off
Brightener	Off
Red–eye corr.	Off

In step 4 on page 290, select the printing effect. When the <☰> icon is displayed brightly next to <INFO.>, you can press the <INFO.> button. You can then adjust the printing effect. What can be adjusted or what is displayed will depend on the selection made in step 4.

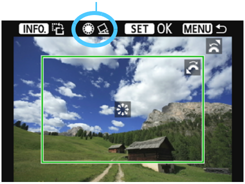
- **Brightness**
  The image brightness can be adjusted.
- **Adjust levels**
  When you select [**Manual**], you can change the histogram's distribution and adjust the image's brightness and contrast.
  With the Adjust levels screen displayed, press the <INFO.> button to change the position of the <▮>. Press the <◀▶> key to freely adjust the shadow level (0-127) or highlight level (128-255).



- **Brightener**
  Effective in backlit conditions that can make the subject's face look dark. When [**On**] is set, the face will be brightened for printing.
- **Red-eye corr.**
  Effective in flash images where the subject has red eye. When [**On**] is set, the red eye will be corrected for printing.

- The [**Brightener**] and [**Red-eye corr.**] effects will not be reflected on the screen.
- When [**Detail set.**] is selected, you can adjust the [**Contrast**], [**Saturation**], [**Color tone**], and [**Color balance**]. To adjust the [**Color balance**], use <✣>. B is for blue, A for amber, M for magenta, and G for green. The color in the respective direction will be corrected.
- If you select [**Clear all**], all the printing effect settings will be reverted to their defaults.

Trimming the Image



Tilt correction

You can crop the image and print only the trimmed portion as if the image was recomposed.
Set the trimming right before printing. If you set the trimming and then set the print settings, you may have to set the trimming again before printing.

---

1 On the print settings screen, select [Trimming].

2 Set the trimming frame size, position, and aspect ratio.

- The image area within the trimming frame will be printed. The trimming frame's aspect ratio can be changed with [**Paper settings**].

Changing the trimming frame size
Turn the <☼> dial to change the trimming frame size. The smaller the trimming frame, the larger the image magnification will be for printing.

Moving the trimming frame
Use <✣> to move the frame over the image vertically or horizontally. Move the trimming frame until it covers the desired image area.

Rotating the frame
Pressing the <INFO.> button will toggle the trimming frame between the vertical and horizontal orientations. This enables you to create a vertically oriented print from a horizontal image.

Image tilt correction
By turning the <◎> dial, you can adjust the image tilt angle up to ±10 degrees in 0.5-degree increments. When you adjust the image tilt, the <◸> icon on the screen will turn blue.

3 Press <SET> to exit the trimming.

- ▶ The print settings screen will reappear.
- You can check the trimmed image area on the upper left of the print settings screen.

- Depending on the printer, the trimmed image area may not be printed as you specified.
- The smaller you make the trimming frame, the grainier the picture will look in the print.
- While trimming the image, look at the camera’s LCD monitor. If you look at the image on a TV screen, the trimming frame may not be displayed accurately.

Handling Printer Errors

If you resolve a printer error (no ink, no paper, etc.) and select [**Continue**] to resume printing but it does not resume, operate the buttons on the printer to resume printing. For details on resuming the printing, refer to the printer’s instruction manual.

Error Messages

If a problem occurs during printing, an error message will appear on the camera’s LCD monitor. Press <SET> to stop printing. After fixing the problem, resume printing. For details on how to fix a printing problem, refer to the printer’s instruction manual.

Paper Error

Check whether the paper is properly loaded in the printer.

Ink Error

Check the printer’s ink level, and check the waste ink tank.

Hardware Error

Check for any printer problems other than paper and ink problems.

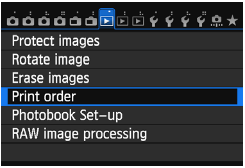
File Error

The selected image cannot be printed via PictBridge. Images taken with a different camera or images edited with a computer may not be printable.

Digital Print Order Format (DPOF)

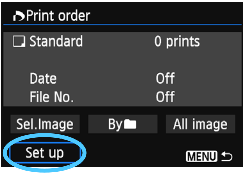
You can set the print type, date imprinting, and file number imprinting. The print settings will be applied to all print-ordered images. (They cannot be set individually for each image.)

Setting the Printing Options


Protect images
Rotate image
Erase images
Print order
Photobook Set-up
RAW image processing

1 Select [Print order].

- Under the [▶1] tab, select [**Print order**], then press <SET>.


Print order
Standard
0 prints
Date
Off
File No.
Off
Sel.Image
By
All image
Set up
MENU

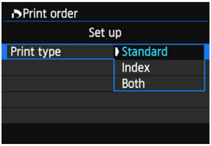
2 Select [Set up].

- Select [**Set up**], then press <SET>.

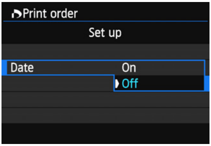
3 Set the option as desired.

- Set the [**Print type**], [**Date**], and [**File No.**].
- Select the option to be set, then press <SET>. Select the desired setting, then press <SET>.

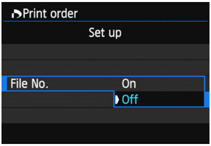
[Print type]


Print order
Set up
Print type
Standard
Index
Both

[Date]


Print order
Set up
Date
On
Off

[File No.]


Print order
Set up
File No.
On
Off

Print type	▣	Standard	Prints one image on one sheet.
	▦	Index	Multiple thumbnail images are printed on one sheet.
	▣ ▦	Both	Prints both the standard and index prints.
Date	On Off		[**On**] imprints the recorded date on the print.
File number	On Off		[**On**] imprints the file number on the print.

4 Exit the setting.

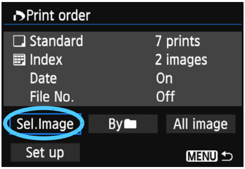
- Press the <MENU> button.
- ▶ The print order screen will reappear.
- Next, select [**Sel.Image**], [**By ■**], or [**All image**] to order the images to be printed.

- Even if [**Date**] and [**File No.**] are set to [**On**], the date or file number may not be imprinted depending on the print type setting and printer model.
- With [**Index**] prints, the [**Date**] and [**File No.**] cannot both be set to [**On**] at the same time.
- When printing with DPOF, you must use the card whose print order specifications have been set. It will not work if you just extract images from the card and try to print them.
- Certain DPOF-compatible printers and photofinishers may not be able to print the images as you specified. Refer to the printer's instruction manual before printing. Or check with your photofinisher about compatibility when ordering prints.
- Do not insert into the camera a card whose print order was set by a different camera and then try to specify a print order. The print order may be overwritten. Also, depending on the image type, the print order may not be possible.

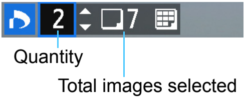
RAW images and movies cannot be print ordered. You can print RAW images with PictBridge (p.286).

Print Ordering

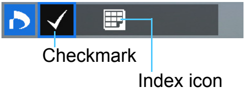
- **Sel.Image**


Print order
Standard 7 prints
Index 2 images
Date On
File No. Off

Select and order images one by one. If you press the <🔍> button and turn the <⚙> dial counterclockwise, you can select an image from a three-image display. To return to the single-image display, turn the <⚙> dial clockwise. Press the <MENU> button to save the print order to the card.



[Standard] [Both]
Press <▲▼> and a print order for one copy of the displayed image will be placed.

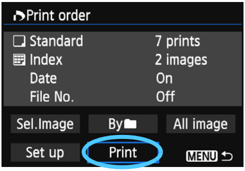


[Index]
Press <SET> to include images with a checkmark <✓> in the index print.

- **By■**
  Select [**Mark all in folder**] and select the folder. A print order for one copy of all the images in the folder will be placed. If you select [**Clear all in folder**] and select the folder, the print order for that folder will all be canceled.
- **All image**
  If you select [**Mark all on card**], one copy of all the images on the card will be set for printing. If you select [**Clear all on card**], the print order will be cleared for all the images on the card.

- Note that RAW images and movies will not be included in the print order even if you set "By■" or "All image".
- When using a PictBridge printer, print no more than 400 images for one print order. If you specify more than this, all the images may not be printed.

Direct Printing of Print-Ordered Images



Print order

Standard 7 prints

Index 2 images

Date On

File No. Off

With a PictBridge printer, you can easily print images with DPOF.

---

1 Prepare to print.

- See page 286.
  Follow the “Connecting the Camera to the Printer” procedure up to step 5.

2 Under the [▶1] tab, select [Print order].

3 Select [Print].

- [**Print**] will be displayed only if the camera is connected to a printer and printing is possible.

4 Set the [Paper settings] (p.288).

- Set the printing effects (p.290) if necessary.

5 Select [OK].

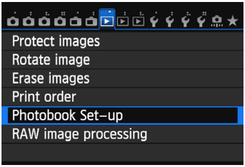
- Before printing, be sure to set the paper size.
- Certain printers cannot imprint the file number.
- If [**Bordered**] is set, certain printers may imprint the date on the border.
- Depending on the printer, the date may appear faint if it is imprinted on a bright background or on the border.

- Under [**Adjust levels**], [**Manual**] cannot be selected.
- If you stopped the printing and want to resume printing the remaining images, select [**Resume**]. Note that printing will not resume if you stop the printing and any of the following occurs:
  - Before resuming the printing, you changed the print order or deleted print-ordered images.
  - When you set the index, you changed the paper setting before resuming the printing.
  - When you paused the printing, the card’s remaining capacity was low.
- If a problem occurs during printing, see page 294.

Specifying Images for a Photobook

When you select images to use in photobooks (up to 998 images) and use EOS Utility (provided software) to transfer them to a computer, the selected images will be copied into a dedicated folder. This function is useful for ordering photobooks online and for printing photobooks on a printer.

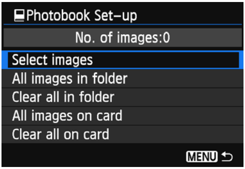
Specify One Image at a Time



Protect images
Rotate image
Erase images
Print order
Photobook Set–up
RAW image processing

1 Select [Photobook Set-up].

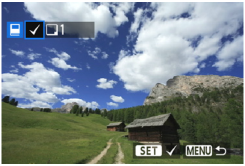
- Under the [▶**1**] tab, select [**Photobook Set-up**], then press <SET>.



Photobook Set–up
No. of images:0
Select images
All images in folder
Clear all in folder
All images on card
Clear all on card
MENU ↩

2 Select [Select images].

- Select [**Select images**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ An image will be displayed.
- If you press the <Q> button and turn the <⚙> dial counterclockwise, you can select an image from a three-image display. To return to the single-image display, turn the <⚙> dial clockwise.

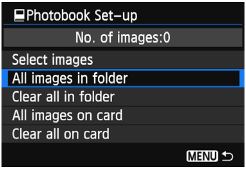


3 Select the image to be specified.

- Turn the <◯> dial to select an image, then press <SET>.
- Repeat this step to select other images. The number of images which have been specified will be displayed on the screen's upper left.
- To cancel the specified image, press <SET> again.
- To return to the menu, press the <MENU> button.

Specifying All Images in a Folder or on a Card

You can specify all the images in a folder or on a card at one time.


Photobook Set-up
No. of images:0
Select images
All images in folder
Clear all in folder
All images on card
Clear all on card
MENU

When [▶**1: Photobook Set-up**] is set to [**All images in folder**] or [**All images on card**], all the images in the folder or on the card will be specified.
To cancel the image specification, select [**Clear all in folder**] or [**Clear all on card**].

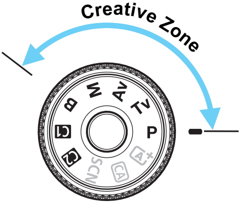
Do not specify images already specified for a photobook in another camera for another photobook with this camera. The photobook settings may be overwritten.

RAW images and movies cannot be specified.

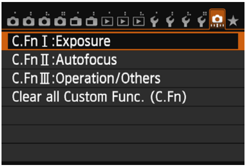
13

Customizing the Camera

You can customize various camera functions to suit your picture-taking preferences with Custom Functions. Also, the current camera settings can be saved under the Mode Dial's <C1> and <C2> positions.
The functions explained in this chapter work only in the Creative Zone modes.


Creative Zone
M
Av
Tv
P
B
C1
C2
SCN
CA
A+

MENU Setting Custom Functions☆

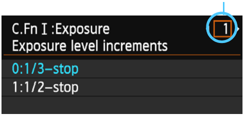

C.Fn I :Exposure
C.Fn II :Autofocus
C.Fn III :Operation/Others
Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)

1 Select [📷].

2 Select the group.

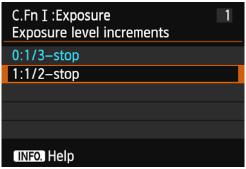
- Select one of the C.Fn I-III, then press <SET>.

Custom Function number


C.Fn I :Exposure
1
Exposure level increments
0:1/3-stop
1:1/2-stop

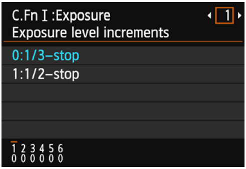
3 Select the Custom Function number.

- Press the <◄►> key to select the Custom Function number, then press <SET>.


C.Fn I :Exposure
1
Exposure level increments
0:1/3-stop
1:1/2-stop
INFO. Help

4 Change the setting as desired.

- Select the desired setting (number), then press <SET>.
- Repeat steps 2 to 4 if you want to set another Custom Functions.
- At the bottom of the screen, the current Custom Function settings are indicated below the respective function numbers.


C.Fn I :Exposure
1
Exposure level increments
0:1/3-stop
1:1/2-stop
1 2 3 4 5 6
0 0 0 0 0 0

5 Exit the setting.

- Press the <MENU> button.
- ▶ The screen for step 2 will reappear.

Clearing All Custom Functions

In step 2, select [**Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)**] to clear all the Custom Function settings.

Even if you clear all the Custom Function settings, the [📷**C.Fn III -2: Focusing screen**] and [📷**C.Fn III -5: Custom Controls**] settings will be retained.

MENU Custom Functions☆

C.Fn I: Exposure

			LV Shooting	Movie Shooting
1	Exposure level increments	p.304	○	○
2	ISO speed setting increments		○	In **M**
3	Bracketing auto cancel		○	(Still photo, with WB bracketing)
4	Bracketing sequence	p.305	○	
5	Number of bracketed shots		○	
6	Safety shift	p.306	○	

C.Fn II: Autofocus

1	Tracking sensitivity	p.307		
2	Acceleration/deceleration tracking	p.308		
3	AI Servo 1st image priority			
4	AI Servo 2nd image priority	p.309		
5	AF-assist beam firing		With AFQuick *	
6	Lens drive when AF impossible	p.310	With AFQuick *	With AFQuick *
7	Orientation linked AF point		With AFQuick *	With AFQuick *
8	Superimposed display			
9	AF Microadjustment	p.311	With AFQuick *	With AFQuick *

* If you use an EX-series Speedlite (sold separately) equipped with an LED light, the LED light will turn on for AF-assist even in the AF□ and AF☺.

C.Fn III: Operation/Others

1	Dial direction during Tv/Av	p.311	○	○
2	Focusing screen	p.312		
3	Multi function lock	p.313	○	○
4	Warnings ! in viewfinder			
5	Custom Controls		Depends on setting	

The shaded Custom Functions do not function during Live View (LV) shooting or movie shooting. (Settings are disabled.)

MENU Custom Function Settings☆

C.Fn I: Exposure

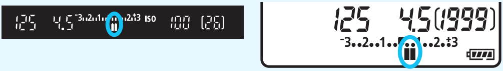
C.Fn I -1 Exposure level increments

0: 1/3-stop

1: 1/2-stop

Sets 1/2-stop increments for the shutter speed, aperture, exposure compensation, AEB, flash exposure compensation, etc. This is effective when you prefer to control the exposure in less fine increments than 1/3-stop increments.

With setting 1, the exposure level will be displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD monitor as shown below.



C.Fn I -2 ISO speed setting increments

0: 1/3-stop

1: 1-stop

C.Fn I -3 Bracketing auto cancel

0: On

When you set the power switch to <OFF>, the AEB and white balance bracketing settings will be canceled. AEB will also be canceled when the flash is ready to fire or if you switch to movie shooting.

1: Off

The AEB and white balance bracketing settings will not be canceled even if you set the power switch to <OFF>. (If the flash is ready to fire or if you switch to movie shooting, AEB will be canceled temporarily, but the AEB range will be retained.)

C.Fn I -4 Bracketing sequence

The AEB shooting sequence and white balance bracketing sequence can be changed.

0: 0→-→+

1: -→0→+

2: +→0→-

AEB	**White Balance Bracketing**	
	B/A Direction	**M/G Direction**
0 : Standard exposure	0 : Standard white balance	0 : Standard white balance
- : Decreased exposure	- : Biased toward blue	- : Biased toward magenta
+ : Increased exposure	+ : Biased toward amber	+ : Biased toward green

C.Fn I -5 Number of bracketed shots

The number of shots taken with AEB and white balance bracketing can be changed from the usual 3 shots to 2, 5, or 7 shots.
When [**Bracketing sequence: 0**] is set, the bracketed shots will be taken as shown in the table below.

0: 3 shots

1: 2 shots

2: 5 shots

3: 7 shots

(1-stop increments)

	1st Shot	2nd Shot	3rd Shot	4th Shot	5th Shot	6th Shot	7th Shot
0: 3 shots	Standard (0)	-1	+1				
1: 2 shots	Standard (0)	±1					
2: 5 shots	Standard (0)	-2	-1	+1	+2		
3: 7 shots	Standard (0)	-3	-2	-1	+1	+2	+3

With setting 1, you can select the + or - amount when setting AEB.

C.Fn I -6 Safety shift

0: Disable

1: Shutter speed/Aperture

This takes effect in the shutter-priority AE (**Tv**) and aperture-priority AE (**Av**) modes. If the subject brightness changes and the standard exposure cannot be obtained within the autoexposure range, the camera will automatically change the manually-selected setting to obtain a standard exposure.

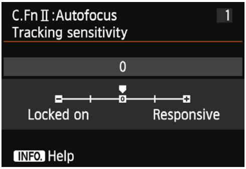
2: ISO speed

This works in the Program AE (**P**), shutter-priority AE (**Tv**), and aperture-priority AE (**Av**) modes. If the subject brightness changes and the standard exposure cannot be obtained within the autoexposure range, the camera will automatically change the manually set ISO speed to obtain a standard exposure.

- Under [**📷3: ISO speed settings**], even if [**ISO speed range**] or [**Min. shutter spd.**] is changed from the default setting, safety shift will override it if a standard exposure cannot be obtained.
- The minimum and maximum ISO speeds of the safety shift using the ISO speed will be determined by the [**Auto ISO range**] setting (p.110). However, if the manually set ISO speed exceeds the [**Auto ISO range**], the safety shift will take effect up to the manually set ISO speed.
- If [**Shutter speed/Aperture**] or [**ISO speed**] is set, safety shift will take effect if necessary even when flash is used.

C.Fn II: Autofocus

C.Fn II -1 Tracking sensitivity



C.Fn II :Autofocus 1
Tracking sensitivity
0

Sets the subject-tracking sensitivity during AI Servo AF when an obstacle enters the AF points or when the AF points stray from the subject.

[0]

Default setting suited for most subjects. Suited for normal, moving subjects.

[Locked on: -2 / Locked on: -1]

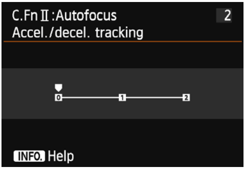
The camera will try to continue focusing the subject even if an obstacle enters the AF points or if the subject strays from the AF points. The -2 setting makes the camera track the target subject longer than with the -1 setting.
However, if the camera focuses the wrong subject, it may take slightly longer to switch and focus the target subject.

[Responsive: +2 / Responsive:+1]

Once an AF point tracks a subject, the camera can focus consecutive subjects at different distances. Also effective when you want to always focus on the closest subject. The +2 setting makes it quicker to focus the next consecutive subject than with +1.
However, the camera will be more prone to focus on the wrong subject.

[**Tracking sensitivity**] is the feature named [**AI Servo tracking sensitivity**] in the EOS-1D Mark III/IV, EOS-1Ds Mark III, and EOS 7D.

C.Fn II -2 Acceleration/deceleration tracking



This sets the tracking sensitivity for moving subjects whose speed can suddenly change dramatically by starting or stopping suddenly, etc.

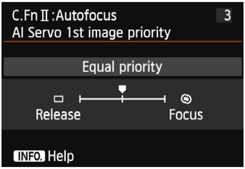
[0]

Suited for subjects that move at a fixed speed.

[+2/+1]

Effective for subjects having sudden movements, sudden acceleration/deceleration, or sudden stops. Even if the moving subject's speed suddenly changes dramatically, the camera continues to focus the target subject. For example, for an approaching subject, the camera becomes less prone to focus behind it to avoid subject blur.
For a subject stopping suddenly, the camera becomes less prone to focus in front of it. Setting +2 can track dramatic changes in the moving subject's speed better than with +1.
However, since the camera will be sensitive to even slight movements of the subject, the focusing may be unstable momentarily.

C.Fn II -3 AI Servo 1st image priority



You can set the AF operation characteristics and shutter-release timing for the first shot during continuous shooting with AI Servo AF.

[Equal priority]

Equal priority is given to focusing and shutter release.

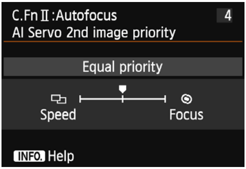
[Release priority] (□)

Pressing the shutter button takes the picture immediately even if focus has not been achieved. It is effective when you want give priority to the shutter chance rather than to focus.

[Focus priority] (⊚)

Pressing the shutter button does not take the picture until focus has been achieved. Effective when you want to achieve focus before capturing the shot.

C.Fn II -4 AI Servo 2nd image priority



C.Fn II :Autofocus 4

AI Servo 2nd image priority

Equal priority

You can set the AF operation characteristics and shutter-release timing during continuous shooting after the first shot with AI Servo AF.

[Equal priority]

Equal priority is given to focusing and continuous shooting speed. In low light or with low-contrast subjects, shooting speed may slow down.

[Shooting speed priority] (⧉)

Priority is given to the continuous shooting speed instead of achieving focus. The continuous shooting speed does not slow down. Convenient when you want to maintain the continuous shooting speed.

[Focus priority] (◎)

Priority is given to achieving focus instead of the continuous shooting speed. The picture is not taken until focus is achieved. Effective when you want to achieve focus before capturing the shot.

C.Fn II -5 AF-assist beam firing

Enables or disables the EOS-dedicated Speedlite's AF-assist beam.

0: Enable

The Speedlite will emit the AF-assist beam when necessary.

1: Disable

The Speedlite will not emit the AF-assist beam. This prevents the AF-assist beam from disturbing others.

2: IR AF assist beam only

Among external Speedlites, only those which have an infrared AF-assist beam will be able to emit the beam. This prevents the AF-assist light from firing as a burst of small flashes.

With an EX-series Speedlite equipped with an LED light, the LED light will not automatically turn on for AF-assist.

If the external Speedlite's Custom Function [**AF-assist beam firing**] is set to [**Disable**], this function's setting will be overridden and the AF-assist beam will not be emitted.

C.Fn II -6 Lens drive when AF impossible

If focus cannot be achieved with autofocus, you can have the camera keep searching for the correct focus or have it stop searching.

0: Continue focus search

1: Stop focus search

If autofocus starts and the focus is far off or if focus cannot be achieved, the lens drive stops. This prevents the lens from becoming grossly out of focus due to focus searching.

Super telephoto lenses can become grossly out of focus during continuous focus search, taking more time to achieve focus the next time. Therefore, setting [**Stop focus search**] is recommended for super telephoto lenses.

C.Fn II -7 Orientation linked AF point

Instead of using the same AF point for both vertical and horizontal shooting, you can select and use different AF points for both.

0: Same for both vertical/horizontal

The AF point you select manually will be used for both vertical and horizontal shooting.

1: Select diffent AF points

The AF point can be selected separately for each camera orientation (1. Horizontal, 2. Vertical with the camera grip at the top, 3. Vertical with the camera grip at the bottom). Convenient when, for instance, you want to keep using the right AF point during all camera orientations.

When you manually select an AF point in one of the three orientations (1., 2., or 3.), this setting will take effect. When you change the camera orientation, the AF point will also change to the AF point corresponding to the one you selected manually.

C.Fn II -8 Superimposed display

0: On

1: Off

When focus is achieved, the AF point(s) in the viewfinder do not light up in red. Set this if the AF point’s red light-up is bothersome.

The AF point will still light up in red when you select it.

C.Fn II -9 AF Microadjustment

Fine adjustment of the AF's point of focus is possible for viewfinder shooting or Live View shooting in the Quick mode. For details, see page 314.

C.Fn III: Operation/Others

C.Fn III -1 Dial direction during Tv/Av

0: Normal

1: Reverse direction

The dial's turning direction for setting the shutter speed and aperture can be reversed.
In the <**M**> shooting mode, the turning direction of the <⚙> and <◎> dials will be reversed. In the other shooting modes, the turning direction of only the <⚙> dial will be reversed. The <◎> dial's turning direction will be the same for the <**M**> mode and for setting the exposure compensation.

C.Fn III -2 Focusing screen

If you change the focusing screen, change this setting to match the focusing screen so that correct exposures are obtained.

0: Eg-A II

1: Eg-D

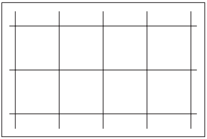
2: Eg-S

About focusing screen characteristics

Eg-A II: Standard Precision Matte
Standard focusing screen that comes with the camera. It provides both adequate viewfinder brightness and manual focusing ease.

Eg-D : Precision Matte with Grid
The focusing screen has grid lines. It helps to keep the picture horizontal or vertical.

Eg-S : Super Precision Matte
Makes it easier to see the perfect focus than with the Eg-A II. Convenient if you often focus manually.



- Although the Eg-A focusing screen can be installed in this camera, it will not obtain the correct exposure.

Maximum Lens Aperture with Super Precision Matte Eg-S

- Optimum for lenses whose maximum aperture is f/2.8 or larger.
- If you use a lens whose maximum aperture is smaller than f/2.8, the viewfinder will look darker than with the Eg-A II focusing screen.

- This setting will be retained even if you select [**: Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)**].
- Since this camera’s standard focusing screen is Eg-A II, C.Fn III -2-0 is set upon factory shipment.
- For details on changing the focusing screen, refer to the focusing screen’s instruction manual. If the focusing screen does not come down together with the holder, tilt the camera toward you.

C.Fn III -3 Multi function lock

When the <LOCK▶> switch is set to the right, it will prevent the <☼>, <◎> dail, and <✣> from accidentally changing a setting.
Select the camera control you want to lock, then press <SET> to append a checkmark <✓> and select [**OK**].

☼ **Main Dial**

◎ **Quick Control Dial**

✣ **Multi-controller**

- If the <LOCK▶> switch is set and you try to use one of the locked camera controls, <**L**> will be displayed in the viewfinder and on the LCD panel. Also, on the shooting function settings display (p.48), [**LOCK**] will be displayed.
- By default, when the <LOCK▶> switch is set to the right, the <◎> dial will be locked.

C.Fn III -4 Warnings ! in viewfinder

When any of the following functions are set, the <**!**> icon can be displayed on the lower left in the viewfinder (p.23).
Select the function for which you want the warning icon to appear, press <SET> to append a <✓>, then select [**OK**]. When this is set, the <(!)> icon will also appear for shooting function settings (p.48).

When monochrome M is set

If the Picture Style is set to [**Monochrome**] (p.113), the warning icon will appear.

When WB is corrected

If white balance correction (p.123) is set, the warning icon will appear.

When ISO expansion is used

If the ISO speed is set manually to L (50), H1 (51200), or H2 (102400) (p.107), the warning icon will appear.

When spot metering is set

If the metering mode is set to [**Spot metering**] (p.150), the warning icon will appear.

C.Fn III -5 Custom Controls

You can assign often-used functions to camera buttons or dials according to your preferences. For details, see page 320.

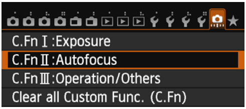
📷: AF Microadjustment

Fine adjustment of the AF's point of focus is possible for viewfinder shooting or Live View shooting in the Quick mode. This is called "AF Microadjustment". Before making the adjustment, read "Notes for AF Microadjustment" on page 319.

❗ **Normally, this adjustment is not required. Do this adjustment only if necessary. Note that doing this adjustment may prevent correct focusing from being achieved.**

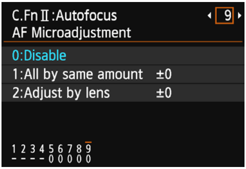
1: Adjust All by Same Amount

Set the adjustment manually by adjusting, shooting, and checking the result. Repeat this until the desired adjustment is made. During AF, regardless of the lens used, the point of focus will always be shifted by the adjustment amount.


C.Fn I :Exposure
C.Fn II :Autofocus
C.Fn III :Operation/Others
Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)

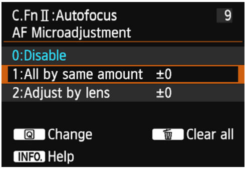
1 Select [C.Fn II: Autofocus].

- Under the [📷] tab, select [**C.Fn II: Autofocus**], then press <SET>.


C.Fn II :Autofocus
9
AF Microadjustment
0:Disable
1:All by same amount ±0
2:Adjust by lens ±0
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
- - - - 0 0 0 0 0

2 Select [9]:[AF Microadjustment].

- Select [**9**]:[**AF Microadjustment**], then press <SET>.

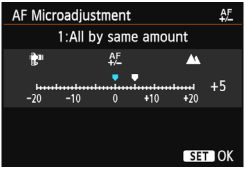

C.Fn II :Autofocus
9
AF Microadjustment
0:Disable
1:All by same amount ±0
2:Adjust by lens ±0
Change
Clear all
INFO. Help

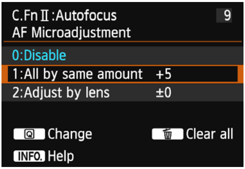
3 Select [1: All by same amount].

- Select [**1: All by same amount**].

4 Press the <Q> button.

▶ The [**1: All by same amount**] screen will appear.


AF Microadjustment
AF +/–
1:All by same amount
AF +/–
-20
-10
0
+10
+20
+5
SET OK


C.Fn II :Autofocus
9
AF Microadjustment
0:Disable
1:All by same amount +5
2:Adjust by lens ±0
Change
Clear all
INFO. Help

5 Make the adjustment.

- Press the <◄►> key to make the adjustment. The adjustable range is ±20 steps.
- Setting it toward “-: ” will shift the point of focus in front of the standard point of focus.
- Setting it toward “+: ” will shift the point of focus to the rear of the standard point of focus.
- After making the adjustment, press <SET>.
- Select [**1: All by same amount**], then press <SET>.
- Press the <MENU> button to exit.

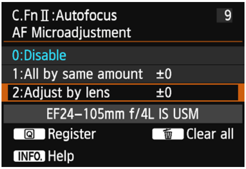
6 Check the result of the adjustment.

- Take a picture and play back the image (p.236) to check the adjustment result.
- When the resulting picture is focused in front of the targeted point, adjust toward the “+: ” side. When the resulting picture is focused behind the targeted point, adjust toward the “-: ” side.
- If necessary, do the adjustment again.

If [**1: All by same amount**] is selected, AF adjustment will not be possible for the wide-angle and telephoto ends of zoom lenses.

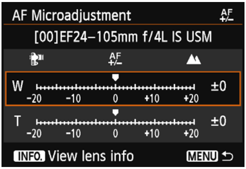
2: Adjust by Lens

You can make the adjustment for each lens and register the adjustment in the camera. You can register the adjustment for up to 40 lenses. When you autofocus with a lens whose adjustment has been registered, the point of focus will always be shifted by the adjustment amount.
Set the adjustment manually by adjusting, shooting, and checking the result. Repeat this until the desired adjustment is made. If you use a zoom lens, make the adjustment for the wide-angle (W) and telephoto (T) ends.


C.Fn II :Autofocus
9
AF Microadjustment
0:Disable
1:All by same amount ±0
2:Adjust by lens ±0
EF24–105mm f/4L IS USM
Q Register
Clear all
INFO. Help

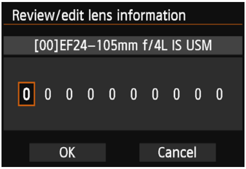
1 Select [2: Adjust by lens].

- Select [**2: Adjust by lens**].


AF Microadjustment
[00]EF24–105mm f/4L IS USM
AF +/–
W
-20
-10
0
+10
+20
±0
T
-20
-10
0
+10
+20
±0
INFO. View lens info
MENU

2 Press the <Q> button.

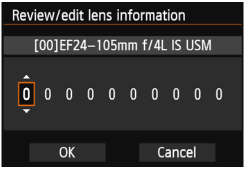
- The [**2: Adjust by lens**] screen will appear.


Review/edit lens information
[00]EF24–105mm f/4L IS USM
0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
OK
Cancel

3 Check and change the lens information.

Check the lens information.

- Press the <INFO.> button.
- The screen will show the lens name and a 10-digit serial number. When the serial number is displayed, select [**OK**] and go to step 4.
- If the lens' serial number cannot be confirmed, "0000000000" will be displayed. Enter the number as indicated below. See the next page about the asterisk " * " displayed in front of the lens serial number.



Review/edit lens information

[00]EF24–105mm f/4L IS USM

0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0

Enter the serial number.

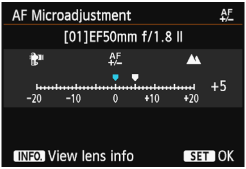
- Press the <◄►> key to select the digit to be entered, then press <SET> to display <⬍>.
- Press the <▲▼> key to enter the number, then press <SET>.
- After entering all the digits, select [**OK**] and press <SET>.

About the Lens Serial Number

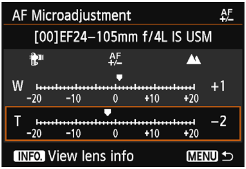
- **In step 3, if “ * ” appears in front of the 10-digit lens serial number, you cannot register several copies of the same lens model. Even if you enter the serial number, “ * ” will remain displayed.**
- **The lens serial number on the lens may differ from the serial number displayed on the screen in step 3. This is not a defect.**
- If the lens serial number includes letters, enter only the numbers in step 3.
- The location of the serial number differs depending on the lens.
- Some lenses may not have a serial number inscribed. To register a lens that has no serial number inscribed, enter any serial number in step 3.

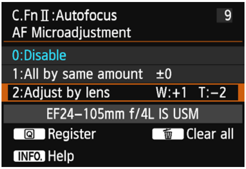
- If [**2: Adjust by lens**] is selected and an Extender is used, the adjustment will be registered for the lens and Extender combination.
- If 40 lenses have already been registered, a message will appear. After you select a lens whose registration is to be erased (overwritten), you can register another lens.

Single focal length lens


AF Microadjustment
[01]EF50mm f/1.8 II

Zoom lens


AF Microadjustment
[00]EF24–105mm f/4L IS USM


C.Fn II :Autofocus 9
AF Microadjustment
0:Disable
1:All by same amount ±0
2:Adjust by lens W:+1 T:−2
EF24–105mm f/4L IS USM

4 Make the adjustment.

- For a zoom lens, press the <▲▼> key and select the wide-angle (W) or telephoto (T) end. Press <SET> and the box will disappear, allowing you to make the adjustment.
- Press the <◄►> key to adjust as desired, then press <SET>. The adjustable range is ±20 steps.
- Setting it toward “-: 👤 ” will shift the point of focus in front of the standard point of focus.
- Setting it toward “+: ▲ ” will shift the point of focus to the rear of the standard point of focus.
- For a zoom lens, repeat step 4 and adjust it for the wide-angle (W) and telephoto (T) ends.
- After completing the adjustment, press the <MENU> button to return to the screen in step 1.
- Select [**2: Adjust by lens**], then press <SET>.
- Press the <MENU> button to exit.

5 Check the result of the adjustment.

- Take a picture and play back the image (p.236) to check the adjustment result.
- When the resulting picture is focused in front of the targeted point, adjust toward the “+: ▲ ” side. When the resulting picture is focused behind the targeted point, adjust toward the “-: 👤 ” side.
- If necessary, do the adjustment again.

When shooting with the intermediate range (focal length) of a zoom lens, the AF’s point of focus is corrected relative to the adjustments made for the wide-angle and telephoto ends. Even if only the wide-angle or telephoto end has been adjusted, a correction will be made automatically for the intermediate range.

Clearing All AF Microadjustments

When [🗑 **Clear all**] appears at the bottom of the screen, pressing the <🗑> button will clear all the adjustments made for [**1: All by same amount**] and [**2: Adjust by lens**].

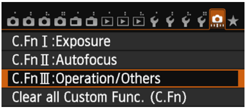
Notes for AF Microadjustment

- The AF’s point of focus will vary slightly depending on the subject conditions, brightness, zoom position, and other shooting conditions. Therefore, even if you perform AF Microadjustment, focus may still not be achieved at the suitable position.
- If you clear all the Custom Function settings (p.302), the AF Microadjustment will be retained. However, the setting will become [**0: Disable**].

- It is best to make the adjustment at the actual location where you will shoot. This will make the adjustment more precise.
- Using a tripod when making the adjustment is recommended.
- For checking the adjustment result, shooting at the ◢**L** image-recording quality is recommended.
- The adjustment amount of one step varies depending on the maximum aperture of the lens. Keep adjusting, shooting, and checking the focus repeatedly to adjust the AF’s point of focus.
- The AF adjustment of the FlexiZone - Single and ☺ Live mode (contrast AF) is not possible.

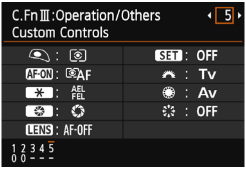
📷 : Custom Controls

You can assign often-used functions to camera buttons or dials according to your preferences.


C.Fn I :Exposure
C.Fn II :Autofocus
C.Fn III :Operation/Others
Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)

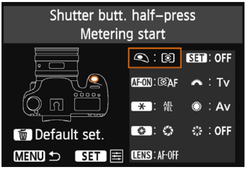
1 Select [C.Fn III: Operation/Others].

- Under the [📷] tab, select [**C.Fn III: Operation/Others**], then press <SET>.


C.Fn III :Operation/Others 5
Custom Controls
SET : OFF
AF-ON : AF
Tv
AEL FEL
Av
OFF
LENS : AF-OFF
1 2 3 4 5
0 0 - - -

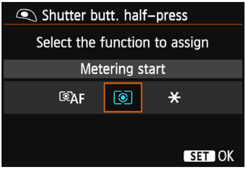
2 Select [5]:[Custom Controls].

- Select [**5**]:[**Custom Controls**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The Custom Controls screen will appear.


Shutter butt. half–press
Metering start
SET : OFF
AF-ON : AF
Tv
AEL FEL
Av
OFF
Default set.
MENU
SET
LENS : AF-OFF

3 Select a camera button or dial.

- Select a camera button or dial, then press <SET>.
- ▶ The name of the camera control and the assignable functions will be displayed.


Shutter butt. half–press
Select the function to assign
Metering start
AF
SET OK

4 Assign a function.

- Select a function, then press <SET>.

5 Exit the setting.

- When you press <SET> to exit the setting, the screen in step 3 will reappear.
- Press the <MENU> button to exit.

With the screen in step 3 displayed, you can press the <🗑> button to cancel the Custom Control settings. Note that the [**C.Fn III -5: Custom Controls**] settings will not be canceled even if you select [**: Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)**].

Assignable Functions to Camera Controls

Function			Page		AF-ON	✱
AF	AF	Metering and AF start	324	○	○	○
	AF-OFF	AF stop			○	○
	ONE SHOT AI SERVO↔	ONE SHOT ⇄ AI SERVO				
		AF point direct selection				
Exposure		Metering start	324	○		
	AEL FEL	AE lock/FE lock			○	○
	✱	AE lock	325		○	○
	✱	AE lock (while button pressed)		○		
	✱H	AE lock (hold)			○	○
	FEL	FE lock			○	○
	ISO	Set ISO speed (hold button, turn)				
	Tv	Shutter speed setting in M mode				
	Av	Aperture setting in M mode				
External flash		Flash exposure compensation	326			
Image		Image quality	326			
		Picture Style				
Operation		Depth-of-field preview	326			
		IS start				
		VF electronic level				
	MENU	Menu display				
	OFF	No function (disabled)			○	○

❂	LENS*	SET	◠	⦿	✥
	○				
○	○				
○	○				
					○
○	○				
○	○				
○	○				
○	○				
		○			
			○	○	
			○	○	
		○			
		○			
		○			
○					
○	○				
○					
		○			
○		○			○

* The AF stop button (LENS) is provided only on super telephoto IS lenses.

◉AF: Metering and AF start

When you press the button assigned to this function, metering and AF are executed.

AF-OFF: AF stop

The AF will stop while you hold down the button assigned to this function. Convenient when you want to lock the focus during AI Servo AF.

ONE SHOT AI SERVO↔: ONE SHOT ⇄ AI SERVO

You can switch the AF operation. In One-Shot AF mode, when you hold down the button to which this function is assigned, the camera switches to AI Servo AF mode. In the AI Servo AF mode, the camera switches to One-Shot AF mode only while you hold down the button. Convenient when you need to keep switching between One-Shot AF and AI Servo AF for a subject that keeps moving and stopping.

⊞: AF point direct selection

During metering, you can select an AF point directly with <✣> without pressing the <⊞> button.

◉: Metering start

When you press the shutter button halfway, only exposure metering is performed.

AEL FEL: AE lock/FE lock

AE lock: When you press the button assigned to this function, you can lock the exposure (AE lock) during the metering. Convenient when you want to focus and meter the shot at different areas or when you want to take multiple shots at the same exposure setting.

FE lock: During flash photography, pressing the button assigned to this function will fire a preflash and record the required flash output (FE lock).

✱: AE lock

When you press the button assigned to this function, you can lock the exposure (AE lock) during the metering. Convenient when you want to focus and meter the shot at different areas or when you want to take multiple shots at the same exposure setting.

✱: AE lock (while button pressed)

The exposure will be locked (AE lock) while you press the shutter button.

✱H: AE lock (hold)

When you press the button assigned to this function, you can lock the exposure (AE lock). The AE lock will be maintained until you press the button again. Convenient when you want to focus and meter the shot at different areas or when you want to take multiple shots at the same exposure setting.

FEL: FE lock

During flash photography, pressing the button assigned to this function will fire a preflash and record the required flash output (FE lock).

ISO: Set ISO speed (hold button, turn ⚙)

You can set the ISO speed by holding down <SET> and turning the <⚙> dial.
If Auto ISO is set, manual ISO speed setting will take effect. Auto ISO cannot be set. If you use this function in the <**M**> mode, you can adjust the exposure with the ISO speed while maintaining the current shutter speed and aperture.

Tv: Shutter speed setting in M mode

In manual exposure <**M**>, you can set the shutter speed with the <⚙> or <◎> dial.

Av: Aperture setting in M mode

In manual exposure <**M**>, you can set the aperture with the <⚙> or <◎> dial.

Flash exposure compensation

Press <SET> to display the flash exposure compensation setting screen (p.170) on the LCD monitor.

Image quality

Press <SET> to display the image-recording quality setting screen (p.102) on the LCD monitor.

Picture Style

Press <SET> to display the Picture Style selection setting screen (p.112) on the LCD monitor.

Depth-of-field preview

When you press the depth-of-field preview button, the aperture will stop down and you can check the depth of field (p.147).

IS start

With the lens' IS switch set to <ON>, the lens' Image Stabilizer operates when you press the button assigned to this function.

VF electronic level

When you press the button assigned to this function, the viewfinder and LCD panel will display an electronic level using the exposure level indicator (p.61).

MENU: Menu display

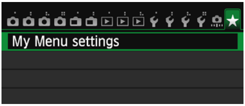
Pressing <SET> will display the menu on the LCD monitor.

OFF: No function (disabled)

Use this setting when you do not want to assign any function to the button.

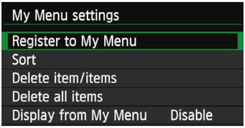
MENU Registering My Menu☆

Under the My Menu tab, you can register up to six menu options and Custom Functions whose settings you change frequently.


★
My Menu settings

1 Select [My Menu settings].

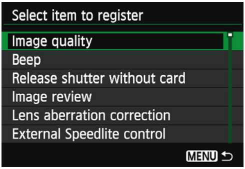
- Under the [★] tab, select [**My Menu settings**], then press <SET>.


My Menu settings
Register to My Menu
Sort
Delete item/items
Delete all items

Display from My Menu Disable

2 Select [Register to My Menu].

- Select [**Register to My Menu**], then press <SET>.


Select item to register
Image quality
Beep
Release shutter without card
Image review
Lens aberration correction
External Speedlite control
MENU ⮌

3 Register the desired items.

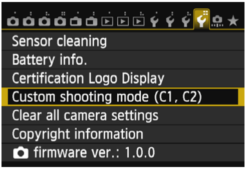
- Select the item, then press <SET>.
- On the confirmation dialog, select [**OK**] and press <SET> to register the item.
- You can register up to six items.
- To return to the screen in step 2, press the <MENU> button.

About My Menu Settings

- **Sort**
  You can change the order of the registered items in My Menu. Select [**Sort**] and select the item whose order you want to change. Then press <SET>. With [⬍] displayed, press the <▲▼> key to change the order, then press <SET>.
- **Delete item/items and Delete all items**
  You can delete any of the registered items. [**Delete item/items**] deletes one item at a time, and [**Delete all items**] deletes all registered items.
- **Display from My Menu**
  When [**Enable**] is set, the [★] tab will be displayed first when you display the menu screen.

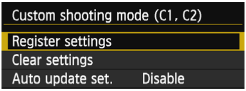
C1 Register Custom Shooting Modes☆

You can register current camera settings, such as the shooting mode, menu functions, and Custom Function settings, as Custom shooting modes under the Mode Dial's <C1> and <C2> positions.


Sensor cleaning
Battery info.
Certification Logo Display
Custom shooting mode (C1, C2)
Clear all camera settings
Copyright information
firmware ver.: 1.0.0

1 Select [Custom shooting mode (C1, C2)].

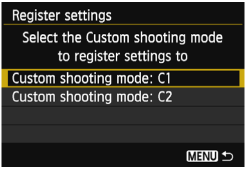
- Under the [🔧4] tab, select [**Custom shooting mode (C1, C2)**], then press <SET>.


Custom shooting mode (C1, C2)
Register settings
Clear settings

Auto update set. Disable

2 Select [Register settings].

- Select [**Register settings**], then press <SET>.


Register settings
Custom shooting mode: C1
Custom shooting mode: C2
MENU ↩

Select the Custom shooting mode to register settings to

3 Register the Custom shooting mode.

- Select the Custom shooting mode to be registered, then press <SET>.
- On the confirmation dialog, select [**OK**] and press <SET>.

▶ The current camera settings (p.329, 330) will be registered under the Mode Dial's C* position.

Automatic Updating

If you change any setting while you shoot in the <C1> or <C2> mode, the Custom shooting mode can be automatically updated to reflect the changed setting(s). To enable this automatic update, in step 2, set [**Auto update set.**] to [**Enable**]. The settings that can be automatically updated are listed on pages 329 and 330.

Canceling Registered Custom Shooting Modes

In step 2, if you select [**Clear settings**], the respective Mode Dial position will revert to the default setting effective before you registered the camera settings. The procedure is the same as step 3.

Settings Registered

- **Shooting Settings**
  Shooting mode + settings, ISO speed, exposure compensation, flash exposure compensation, AF operation, AF point, drive mode, and metering mode.
- **Menu functions**

[**📷1**]	Image quality, Beep, Release shutter without card, Image review
[**📷2**]	Lens aberration correction (Peripheral illumination correction, Chromatic aberration correction), External Speedlite control, Mirror lockup
[**📷3**]	Exposure compensation/AEB, ISO speed settings, Auto Lighting Optimizer, White balance, Custom White Balance, White balance Shift/Bracketing, Color space
[**📷4**]	Picture Style, Long exposure noise reduction, High ISO speed NR, Highlight tone priority, Multiple exposure (setting), HDR Mode (setting)
[**▣1**]	Live View shooting, AF method, Grid display, Aspect ratio, Exposure simulation
[**▣2**]	Silent LV shooting, Metering timer
[**🎥1**]	AF method, Silent LV shooting, Metering timer
[**🎥2**]	Grid display, Movie recording size, Sound recording, Movie recording count, Movie play count, Video snapshot
[**▶2**]	Image jump with ⚙
[**▶3**]	Highlight alert, AF point display, Playback grid, Histogram display, Movie play count, Magnification (approx.)
[**🔧1**]	File numbering, Auto rotate
[**🔧2**]	Auto power off, LCD brightness

[**C.Fn I: Exposure**]

Exposure level increments, ISO speed setting increments, Bracketing auto cancel, Bracketing sequence, Number of bracketed shots, Safety shift

[**C.Fn II: Autofocus**]

Tracking sensitivity, Acceleration/deceleration tracking, AI Servo 1st image priority, AI Servo 2nd image priority, AF-assist beam firing, Lens drive when AF impossible, Orientation linked AF point, Superimposed display, AF Microadjustment

[**C.Fn III: Operation/Others**]

Dial direction during Tv/Av, Focusing Screen, Multi function lock, Custom Controls

- My Menu settings will not be registered.
- If the Mode Dial is set to <C1> or <C2>, you cannot select [**🔧4: Clear all camera settings**] and [**📷: Clear all Custom Func. (C.Fn)**].

- Even when the Mode Dial is set to <C1> or <C2>, you can change the shooting function settings and menu settings.
- By pressing the <INFO.> button, you can check which shooting mode is registered under <C1> and <C2> (p.332, 333).

14

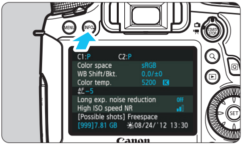
Reference

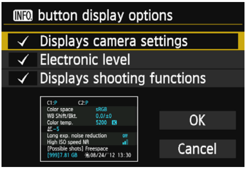
This chapter provides reference information for camera features, system accessories, etc.

Certification Logo

Under the [**🔧4**] tab, if you select [**Certification Logo Display**] and press <SET>, some of the logos of the camera's certifications will appear. Other certification logos can be found in this Instruction Manual, on the camera body, and on the camera's package.

INFO. Button Functions





INFO. button display options

- ✓ Displays camera settings
- ✓ Electronic level
- ✓ Displays shooting functions

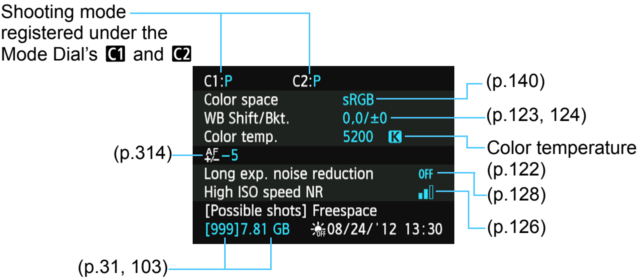
When you press the <INFO.> button while the camera is ready to shoot, you can display [**Displays camera settings**], [**Electronic level**] (p.60), and [**Displays shooting functions**] (p.333).

Under the [🔧3] tab, [**INFO. button display options**] enables you to select the options displayed when the <INFO.> button is pressed.

- Select the desired display option and press <SET> to append a checkmark <✓>.
- After making the selection, select [**OK**], then press <SET>.

- Note that you cannot remove the <✓> for all three display options.
- The [**Displays camera settings**] sample screen is displayed in English for all languages.
- Even if you uncheck the [**Electronic level**] so it does not appear, it will still appear for Live View shooting and movie shooting when you press the <INFO.> button.

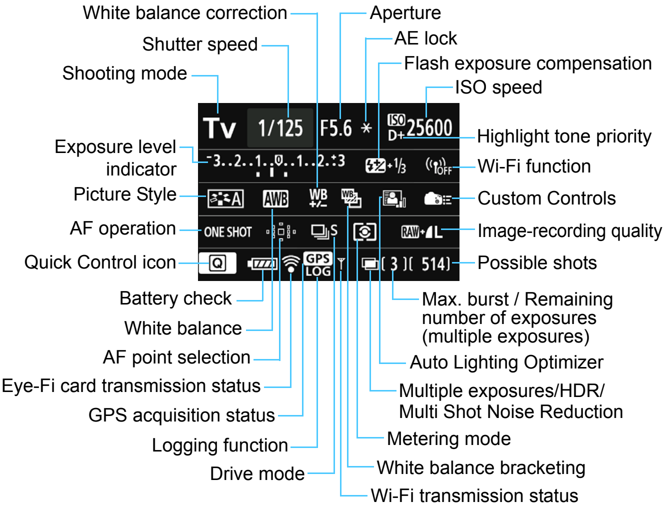
Camera Settings



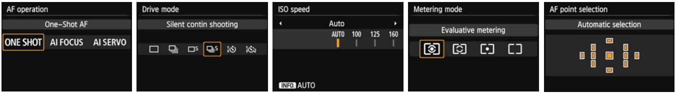
C1:P C2:P
Color space sRGB
WB Shift/Bkt. 0,0/±0
Color temp. 5200 K
AF –5
Long exp. noise reduction OFF
High ISO speed NR
[Possible shots] Freespace
[999]7.81 GB 08/24/'12 13:30

Shooting mode registered under the Mode Dial's C1 and C2
(p.140)
(p.123, 124)
Color temperature (p.122)
(p.314)
(p.128)
(p.126)
(p.31, 103)

Shooting Function Settings


White balance correction
Shutter speed
Shooting mode
Aperture
AE lock
Flash exposure compensation
ISO speed
Exposure level indicator
Highlight tone priority
Wi-Fi function
Picture Style
Custom Controls
AF operation
Image-recording quality
Quick Control icon
Possible shots
Battery check
White balance
AF point selection
Eye-Fi card transmission status
GPS acquisition status
Logging function
Drive mode
Max. burst / Remaining number of exposures (multiple exposures)
Auto Lighting Optimizer
Multiple exposures/HDR/ Multi Shot Noise Reduction
Metering mode
White balance bracketing
Wi-Fi transmission status
Tv
1/125
F5.6
ISO 25600
ONE SHOT
[3][514]

- Pressing the <Q> button enables Quick Control of the shooting settings (p.49).
- If you press the <AF>, <DRIVE>, <ISO>, <◉>, or <⊞> button, the respective setting screen will appear on the LCD monitor and you can turn the <⚙>, <◎> dial, or <✥> to set the function.


AF operation: One-Shot AF
ONE SHOT AI FOCUS AI SERVO

Drive mode: Silent contin shooting

ISO speed: Auto
AUTO 100 125 160
INFO. AUTO

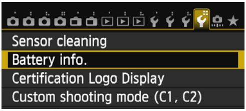
Metering mode: Evaluative metering

AF point selection: Automatic selection

> If you turn off the power while the "Shooting function settings display" screen is displayed, the same screen will be displayed when you turn on the power again. To cancel this, press the <INFO.> button to turn off the screen, then turn off the power switch.

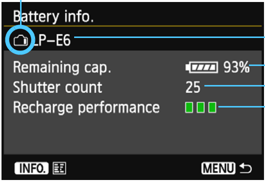
MENU Checking the Battery Information

You can check the battery's condition on the LCD monitor. Each Battery Pack LP-E6 has a unique serial number, and you can register multiple battery packs to the camera. When you use this feature, you can check the registered battery pack's remaining capacity and operation history.



Select [Battery info.].

- Under the [🔧4] tab, select [**Battery info.**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The battery info screen will appear.


Battery info.
LP–E6
Remaining cap. 93%
Shutter count 25
Recharge performance 🟩🟩🟩

Battery position

Battery model or household power source being used.

The battery level icon (p.35) is displayed together with the remaining battery capacity shown in 1% increments.

The number of shots taken with the current battery. The number is reset when the battery is recharged.

Battery's recharge performance level is displayed in one of three levels.

▮▮▮(Green): Battery's recharge performance is fine.

▮▮▯(Green): Battery's recharge performance is slightly degraded.

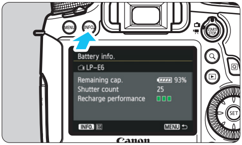
▮▯▯(Red): Purchasing a new battery is recommended.

The use of a genuine Canon Battery Pack LP-E6 is recommended. If you use any battery other than the Battery Pack LP-E6, the camera's full performance may not be attained or malfunction may result.

- The shutter count is the number of still photos taken. (Movies are not counted.)
- The battery information will also be displayed when an LP-E6 battery pack is in Battery Grip BG-E13. If you use size-AA/LR6 batteries, only the battery level indicator will be displayed.
- If communication with the battery is not possible or irregular for some reason, [**Use this battery?**] will be displayed. If you select [**OK**], you can continue shooting. However, depending on the battery, the battery info screen may not be displayed or may not display battery info correctly.

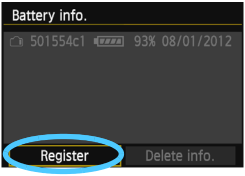
Registering the Battery to the Camera

You can register up to six LP-E6 battery packs to the camera. To register multiple battery packs to the camera, do the procedure below for each battery pack.


MENU
INFO.
Battery info.
LP-E6
Remaining cap. 93%
Shutter count 25
Recharge performance
INFO.
MENU
SET
Canon

1 Press the <INFO.> button.

- With the battery info. screen displayed, press the <INFO.> button.
- ▶ The battery history screen will appear.
- ▶ If the battery has not been registered, it will be grayed out.



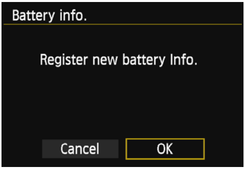
Battery info.

501554c1 93% 08/01/2012

Register
Delete info.

2 Select [Register].

- Select [**Register**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The confirmation dialog will appear.



Battery info.

Register new battery Info.

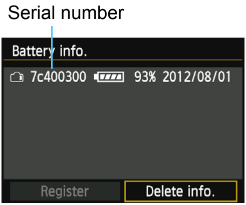
3 Select [OK].

- Select [**OK**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The battery pack will be registered, and the battery history screen will reappear.
- ▶ The grayed-out battery number will now be displayed in white letters.
- Press the <MENU> button. The battery info. screen will reappear.

- Battery registration is not possible if size-AA/LR6 batteries are in Battery Grip BG-E13 or if you use AC Adapter Kit ACK-E6.
- If six battery packs have already been registered, [**Register**] cannot be selected. To delete unnecessary battery information, see page 337.

Labeling the Serial Number on the Battery

It is convenient to label all registered Battery Pack LP-E6 with their serial numbers, using commercially available labels.

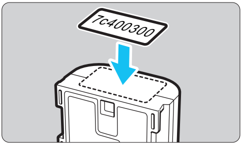


Battery info.

7c400300 93% 2012/08/01

1 Write the serial number on a label.

- Write the serial number displayed on the battery history screen on a label approx. 25 mm x 15 mm / 1.0 in. x 0.6 in. in size.



2 Take out the battery and affix the label.

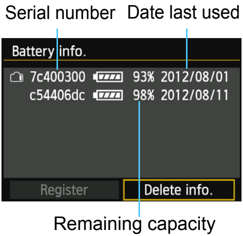
- Set the power switch to <OFF>.
- Open the battery compartment cover and remove the battery.
- Affix the label as shown (side with no electrical contacts) in the illustration.

- Repeat this procedure for all of your battery packs so you can easily see the serial number.

- Do not affix the label on any part other than as shown in the illustration in step 2. Otherwise, the misplaced label may make it difficult to insert the battery or impossible to turn on the camera.
- If you use Battery Grip BG-E13, the label may peel off as you repeatedly insert and remove the battery pack. If it peels off, affix a new label.

Checking the Remaining Capacity of a Registered Battery Pack

You can check the remaining capacity of any battery pack (even when not installed) and also when it was last used.



7c400300 93% 2012/08/01
c54406dc 98% 2012/08/11

Look for the serial number.

- Refer to the battery's serial number label and look for the battery's serial number on the battery history screen.
- ▶ You can check the respective battery pack's remaining capacity and the date when it was last used.

Deleting the Registered Battery Pack Information

1 Select [Delete info.].

- Follow step 2 on page 335 to select [**Delete info.**], then press <SET>.

2 Select the battery pack information to be deleted.

- Select the battery pack information to be deleted, then press <SET>.
- ▶ <√> will appear.
- To delete information for another battery pack, repeat this procedure.

3 Press the <🗑> button.

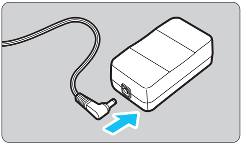
- ▶ The confirmation dialog will appear.

4 Select [OK].

- Select [**OK**], then press <SET>.
- ▶ The battery pack information will be deleted, and the screen in step 1 will reappear.

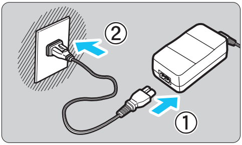
Using a Household Power Outlet

With AC Adapter Kit ACK-E6 (sold separately), you can connect the camera to a household power outlet and not worry about the remaining battery level.



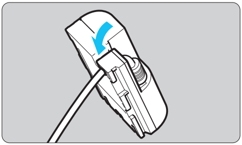
1 Connect the DC Coupler's plug.

- Connect the DC Coupler's plug to the AC Adapter's socket.



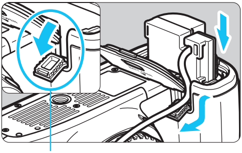
2 Connect the power cord.

- Connect the power cord as shown in the illustration.
- After using the camera, unplug the power plug from the power outlet.



3 Place the cord in the groove.

- Insert the DC Coupler's cord carefully without damaging the cord.



DC Coupler cord hole

4 Insert the DC Coupler.

- Open the battery compartment cover and open the DC Coupler cord hole cover.
- Insert the DC Coupler securely until it locks and put the cord through the hole.
- Close the cover.

Do not connect or disconnect the power cord or DC Coupler while the camera's power switch is set to <ON>.

Using Eye-Fi Cards

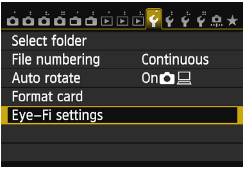
With a commercially-available Eye-Fi card already set up, you can automatically transfer captured images to a computer or upload them to an online service via a wireless LAN.

The image transfer is a function of the Eye-Fi card. For instructions on how to set up and use the Eye-Fi card or to troubleshoot any image transfer problems, refer to the Eye-Fi card's instruction manual or contact the card manufacturer.

The camera is not guaranteed to support Eye-Fi card functions (including wireless transfer). In case of an issue with an Eye-Fi card, please check with the card manufacturer. Also note that approval is required to use Eye-Fi cards in many countries or regions. Without approval, use of the card is not permitted. If it is unclear whether the card has been approved for use in your area, please check with the card manufacturer.

---

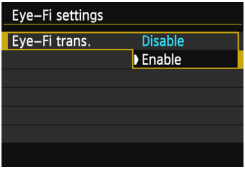
1 Insert an Eye-Fi card (p.31).



Select folder
File numbering Continuous
Auto rotate On📷💻
Format card
Eye-Fi settings

2 Select [Eye-Fi settings].

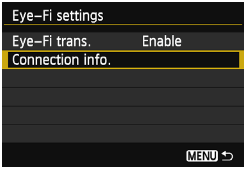
- Under the [🔧1] tab, select [**Eye-Fi settings**], then press <SET>.
- This menu is displayed only when an Eye-Fi card is inserted into the camera.



Eye-Fi settings
Eye-Fi trans. Disable
Enable

3 Enable Eye-Fi transmission.

- Press <SET>, set [**Eye-Fi trans.**] to [**Enable**], then press <SET>.
- If you set [**Disable**], automatic transmission will not occur even with the Eye-Fi card inserted (transmission status icon 📶OFF).



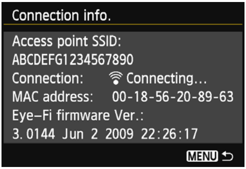
Eye–Fi settings

Eye–Fi trans. Enable

Connection info.

4 Display the connection information.

- Select [**Connection info.**], then press <SET>.



Connection info.

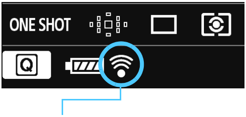
Access point SSID:
ABCDEFG1234567890
Connection: 📶 Connecting…
MAC address: 00-18-56-20-89-63
Eye–Fi firmware Ver.:
3.0144 Jun 2 2009 22:26:17

5 Check the [Access point SSID:].

- Check that an access point is displayed for [**Access point SSID:**].
- You can also check the Eye-Fi card's MAC address and firmware version.
- Press the <MENU> button to exit the menu.

6 Take the picture.

- ▶ The picture is transferred and the <📶> icon switches from gray (not connected) to one of the icons below.
- For transferred images, ▣ is displayed in the shooting information display (p.238).



Transmission status icon

📶 (Gray) **Not connected** : No connection with access point.

📶 (Blinking) **Connecting** : Connection with access point.

📶 (Displayed) **Connected** : Connection to access point established.

📶 (↑) **Transferring** : Image transfer to access point in progress.

Cautions for Using Eye-Fi Cards

- If [**🔧3: Wi-Fi**] is set to [**Enable**], image transfer with an Eye-Fi card is not possible.
- If “⚠” is displayed, an error occurred while retrieving the card information. Turn the camera’s power switch off and on again.
- Even if [**Eye-Fi trans.**] is set to [**Disable**], it may still transmit a signal. In hospitals, airports, and other places where wireless transmissions are prohibited, remove the Eye-Fi card from the camera.
- If the image transfer does not function, check the Eye-Fi card and computer settings. For details, refer to the card’s instruction manual.
- Depending on the wireless LAN’s connection conditions, the image transfer may take longer or it may be interrupted.
- Because of the transmission function, the Eye-Fi card may become hot.
- The battery power will be consumed faster.
- During the image transfer, auto power off will not take effect.
- If you insert a wireless LAN card other than an Eye-Fi card, [**Eye-Fi settings**] will not appear on the menu. Also, the transmission status icon <📶> will not appear on the LCD monitor.

Function Availability Table According to Shooting Mode

For Still Photo Shooting

●: Set automatically ○: User selectable ☐ : Not selectable/Disabled

Function		Basic Zone									Creative Zone				
		A+	CA	SCN											
											P	**Tv**	**Av**	**M**	**B**
All image quality settings selectable		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○[*1]	○[*1]	○	○	○	○	○
ISO speed	Automatically set/ Auto ISO	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○
	Manual										○	○	○	○	○
Picture Style	Automatically set/Auto	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○
	Manual selection										○	○	○	○	○
White balance	Auto	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○
	Preset										○	○	○	○	○
	Custom										○	○	○	○	○
	Color temperature setting										○	○	○	○	○
	Correction/Bracketing										○	○	○	○	○
Auto Lighting Optimizer		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○
Lens aberration correction	Peripheral illumination correction	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Chromatic aberration correction	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Long exposure noise reduction											○	○	○	○	○
High ISO speed noise reduction		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○
Highlight tone priority											○	○	○	○	○
Multiple exposures											○	○	○	○	○
HDR shooting											○	○	○	○	
Color space	sRGB	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○
	Adobe RGB										○	○	○	○	○
AF	One-Shot AF			●	●	●		●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○
	AI Servo AF						●				○	○	○	○	○
	AI Focus AF	●	●								○	○	○	○	○
	AF point selection	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○
	Manual focusing (MF)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	AF Microadjustment										○	○	○	○	○

*1: RAW+JPEG and RAW cannot be selected.

Function		Basic Zone									Creative Zone				
		A+	CA	SCN											
				👤	⛰	🌷	🏃	🌃	🌆	☀	P	Tv	Av	M	B
Metering mode	Evaluative metering	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○
	Metering mode selection										○	○	○	○	○
Exposure	Program shift										○				
	AE lock										○	○	○	*2	
	Exposure compensation										○	○	○		
	AEB										○	○	○	○	
	Depth-of-field preview										○	○	○	○	○
Drive	Single shooting	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Continuous shooting	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Silent single shooting	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Silent continuous shooting	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	10-sec. self-timer/ Remote control	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	2-sec. self-timer/ Remote control	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
External flash	Flash on	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○		○	○	○	○	○
	FE lock										○	○	○	○	○
	Flash exposure compensation										○	○	○	○	○
	AF-assist beam	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○
Live View Shooting		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Aspect ratio[*3]											○	○	○	○	○
Quick Control		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

*2: With Auto ISO, you can set a fixed ISO speed.

*3: Settable only for Live View shooting.

For Movie Shooting

●: Set automatically ○: User selectable ▭ : Not selectable/Disabled

Function		Movie								Still Photos		
		A+	CA	SCN	P	Tv	Av	B	M	📷*1		
		🎥A+			🎥				🎥M	🎥A+	🎥	🎥M
All image quality settings selection (movie)		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
All image quality settings selection (still photos)										○	○	○
Video snapshot		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
ISO speed	Automatically set/Auto ISO	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	○	●	●	○
	Manual								○			○
Picture Style	Automatically set/Auto	●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○	●	○	○
	Manual selection				○	○	○	○	○		○	○
White balance	Auto	●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○	●	○	○
	Preset				○	○	○	○	○		○	○
	Custom				○	○	○	○	○		○	○
	Color temperature setting				○	○	○	○	○		○	○
	Correction				○	○	○	○	○		○	○
	Bracketing										○	○
Auto Lighting Optimizer		●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○	●	○	○
Lens aberration correction	Peripheral illumination correction	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Chromatic aberration correction	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Long exposure noise reduction											●	
High ISO speed noise reduction*2		●	●	●	○	○	○	○	○	●	○	○
Highlight tone priority					○	○	○	○	○		○	○
Multiple exposures												
HDR shooting												
Color space	sRGB	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	○	○
	Adobe RGB										○	○

*1 : The 📷 icon indicates still photo shooting during movie shooting.

*2 : Multi shot noise reduction (NR) cannot be set.

Function		Movie								Still Photos		
		A+	CA	SCN	P	Tv	Av	B	M	📷*1		
		🎥A+			🎥				🎥M	🎥A+	🎥	🎥M
AF	FlexiZone - Single AF□	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Live mode AF☺	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Quick mode*3 AFQuick	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
	Manual focusing (MF)	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Metering mode		●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●	●
Exposure	Program shift											
	AE lock				○	○	○	○	*4		○	
	Exposure compensation				○	○	○	○			○	
	AEB											
	Depth-of-field preview											
Drive	Single shooting									○	○	○
	Continuous shooting									○	○	○
	Silent single shooting									○	○	○
	Silent continuous shooting									○	○	○
	10-sec. self-timer/ Remote control *5									○	○	○
	2-sec. self-timer/ Remote control *5									○	○	○
External flash	FE lock											
	Flash exposure compensation											
	AF-assist beam									●*6	●*6	●*6
Aspect ratio												
Sound recording		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
Time code		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○			
Quick Control		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

*3 : During movie shooting, it will switch to [**FlexiZoneAF□** (Single)].

*4 : With Auto ISO, you can set a fixed ISO speed.

*5 : Works only before you start shooting a movie.

*6 : If the AF method is [**Quick mode**], the external Speedlite will emit the AF-assist beam if necessary during still shooting before you start shooting a movie.

Menu Settings

For Viewfinder Shooting and Live View Shooting

📷: Shooting 1 (Red)

		Page
Image quality	RAW*/M RAW*/S RAW* ◢L/▟L/◢M/▟M/◢S1/▟S1/S2/S3	102
Beep	Enable / Disable	-
Release shutter without card	Enable / Disable	32
Image review	Off / 2 sec. / 4 sec. / 8 sec. / Hold	55

* Not selectable in <▤> or <☼> mode.

📷: Shooting 2 (Red)

Lens aberration correction	Peripheral illumination correction: Enable / Disable Chromatic aberration correction: Enable / Disable	131
External Speedlite control	Flash firing / E-TTL metering / Flash synchronization speed in Av mode / Flash function settings / Flash C.Fn settings / Clear settings	172
Mirror lockup	Disable / Enable	165

Shaded menu options are not displayed in Basic Zone modes.

📷: Shooting 3 (Red)

		Page
Exposure compensation/AEB	1/3-stop increments, ±5 stops (AEB ±3 stops)	151 152
ISO speed settings	ISO speed / ISO speed range / Auto ISO range / Minimum shutter speed	106 to 111
Auto Lighting Optimizer	Disable / Low / Standard / High OFF with M or Bulb	125
White balance	AWB / ☀ / ⌂ / ☁ / ☼ / ≡ / ϟ / ◣ / K (Approx. 2500 - 10000)	120
Custom White Balance	Manual setting of white balance	121
White balance shift/ bracketing	White balance correction: B/A/M/G bias, 9 levels each White balance bracketing: B/A and M/G bias, single-level increments, ±3 levels	123 124
Color space	sRGB / Adobe RGB	140

* During movie shooting, [**Expo.comp./AEB**] will be [**Exposure comp.**].

📷: Shooting 4 (Red)

Picture Style	A Auto / S Standard / P Portrait / L Landscape / N Neutral / F Faithful / M Monochrome / 1 User Def. 1-3	112 to 119
Long exposure noise reduction	Disable / Auto / Enable	128
High ISO speed noise reduction	Disable / Low / Standard / High / Multi Shot Noise Reduction	126
Highlight tone priority	Disable / Enable	130
Dust Delete Data	Obtain data to be used by provided software to delete dust spots	281
Multiple exposure	Multiple exposure / Multi-expos control / No. of exposures / Continue Multiple exposure	158
HDR Mode	Adjust dynamic range / Continuous HDR / Auto Image Align	155

* During movie shooting, [**Multiple exposure**] and [**HDR Mode**] do not appear.

📷1: Live View shooting 1 (Red)

		Page
Live View Shooting	Enable / Disable	187
AF method	FlexiZone- Single / ☺ Live mode / Quick mode	192
Grid display	Off / 3x3 # / 6x4 # / 3x3+diag ⋇	187
Aspect ratio	3:2 / 4:3 / 16:9 / 1:1	188
Exposure simulation	Enable / During ▣ / Disable	189

📷2: Live View shooting 2 (Red)

Silent LV shooting	Mode 1 / Mode 2 / Disable	190
Metering timer	4 sec. / 16 sec. / 30 sec. / 1 min. / 10 min. / 30 min.	191

▶: Playback 1 (Blue)

Protect images	Erase-protect images	265
Rotate image	Rotate vertical images	246
Erase images	Erase images	267
Print order	Specify images to be printed (DPOF)	295
Photobook Set-up	Specify images for a photobook	299
RAW image processing	Process RAW images	272

[▶]: Playback 2 (Blue)

		Page
Resize	Downsize the image's pixel count	277
Rating	**[OFF]** / [★] / [★★] / [★★★] / [★★★★] / [★★★★★]	247
Slide show	Playback description / Display time / Repeat / Transition effect / Background music	257
Image jump w/⚙	1 image / 10 images / 100 images / Date / Folder / Movies / Stills / Rating	243

[▶]: Playback 3 (Blue)

Highlight alert	Disable / Enable	240
AF point display	Disable / Enable	240
Playback grid	Off / 3x3 ⌗ / 6x4 ▦ / 3x3+diag ⋇	237
Histogram display	Brightness / RGB	240
Movie play count*	Rec time / Time code	221
Magnification (Approx.)	1x (no magnification) / 2x (magnify from center) / 4x (magnify from center) / 8x (magnify from center) / 10x (magnify from center) / Actual size (from selected point) / Same as last magnification (from center)	245
Control over HDMI	Disable / Enable	262

* This setting is linked to [**Movie play count**] under the [**🎥2**] tab's [**Time code**].

🔧: Set-up 1 (Yellow)

		Page
Select folder	Create and select a folder	134
File number	Continuous / Auto reset / Manual reset	136
Auto rotate	On📷 💻 / On💻 / Off	270
Format card	Initialize and erase data on the card	53
Eye-Fi settings	Displayed when a commercially-available Eye-Fi card is inserted	339

🔧: Set-up 2 (Yellow)

Auto power off	1 min. / 2 min. / 4 min. / 8 min. / 15 min. / 30 min. / Disable	55
LCD brightness	Seven brightness levels	269
LCD off / on button*1	Remains on / Shutter button	56
Date/Time/Zone	Date (year, month, day) / Time (hour, min., sec.) / Daylight saving time / Time zone	36
Language🗨	Select the interface language	38
GPS	Select GPS device / Set up	*2

*1 During movie shooting, [**LCD off / on btn**] does not appear.

*2 For details, refer to the GPS Function Instruction Manual.

When using GPS function, be sure to check the countries and areas of use, and use the device in accordance with the laws and regulations of the country or region.

🔧: Set-up 3 (Yellow)

		Page
Video system	NTSC / PAL	216 264
Feature guide	Enable / Disable	63
INFO. button display options	Displays camera settings / Electronic level / Displays shooting functions	332
Wi-Fi	Disable / Enable	*
Wi-Fi function	Transfer images between cameras / Connect to smartphone / Remote control (EOS Utility) / Print from Wi-Fi printer / Upload to Web service / View images on DLNA devices	

* For details, refer to the Wi-Fi Function Instruction Manual on the CD-ROM.

🔧: Set-up 4 (Yellow)

Sensor cleaning	Auto cleaning: Enable / Disable	280
	Clean now	
	Clean manually	283
Battery info.	Power / Remaining capacity / Shutter count / Recharge performance / Battery registration / Battery history	334 to 337
Certification Logo Display	Displays some of the logos of the camera's certifications	331
Custom shooting mode (C1, C2)	Register current camera settings to Mode Dial's C1 and C2	328
Clear all camera settings	Resets the camera to the default settings	56
Copyright information	Display copyright information / Enter author's name / Enter copyright details / Delete copyright information	138
📷 firmware ver.	For updating the firmware	-

- When using Wi-Fi function, be sure to check the countries and areas of use, and use it in accordance with the laws and regulations of the country or region.
- If the camera is connected to a computer or printer, Wi-Fi cannot be set.

📷: **Custom Functions** (Orange)

		Page
C.Fn I: Exposure	Customize camera functions as desired	304
C.Fn II: Autofocus		307
C.Fn III: Operation/ Others		311
Clear all Custom Functions (C.Fn)	Clear all Custom Function settings	302

★: **My Menu** (Green)

My Menu settings	Register frequently-used menu options and Custom Functions	327

For Movie Shooting

🎥1: Movie1 (Red)

		Page
AF method	FlexiZone- Single / ☺ Live mode / Quick mode	223
Silent LV shooting	Mode 1 / Mode 2 / Disable	223
Metering timer	4 sec. / 16 sec. / 30 sec. / 1 min. / 10 min. / 30 min.	223

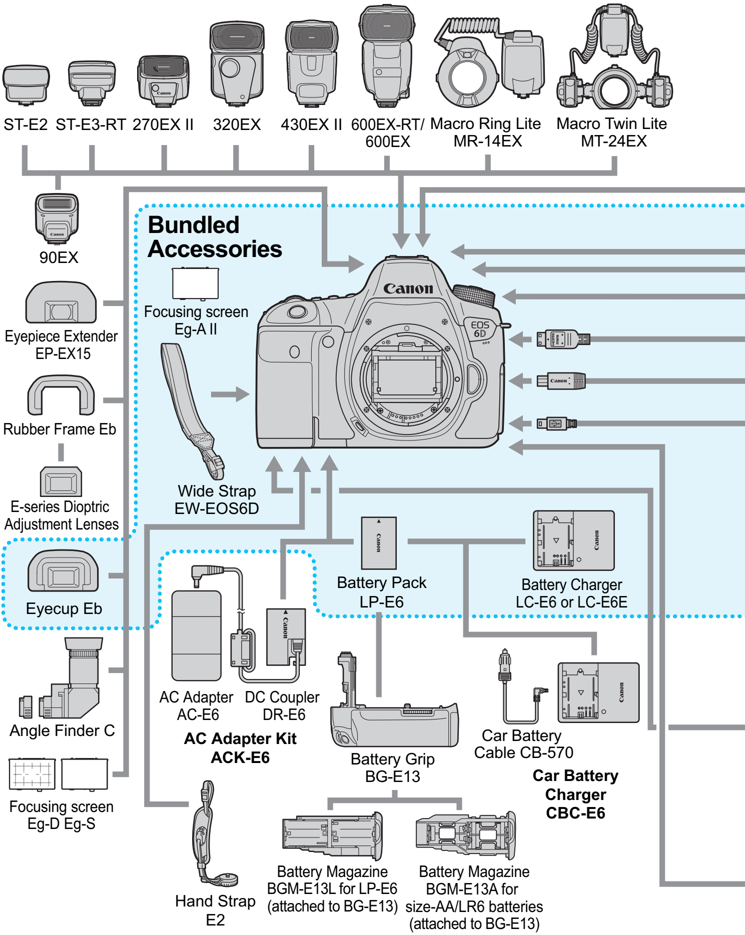
🎥2: Movie2 (Red)

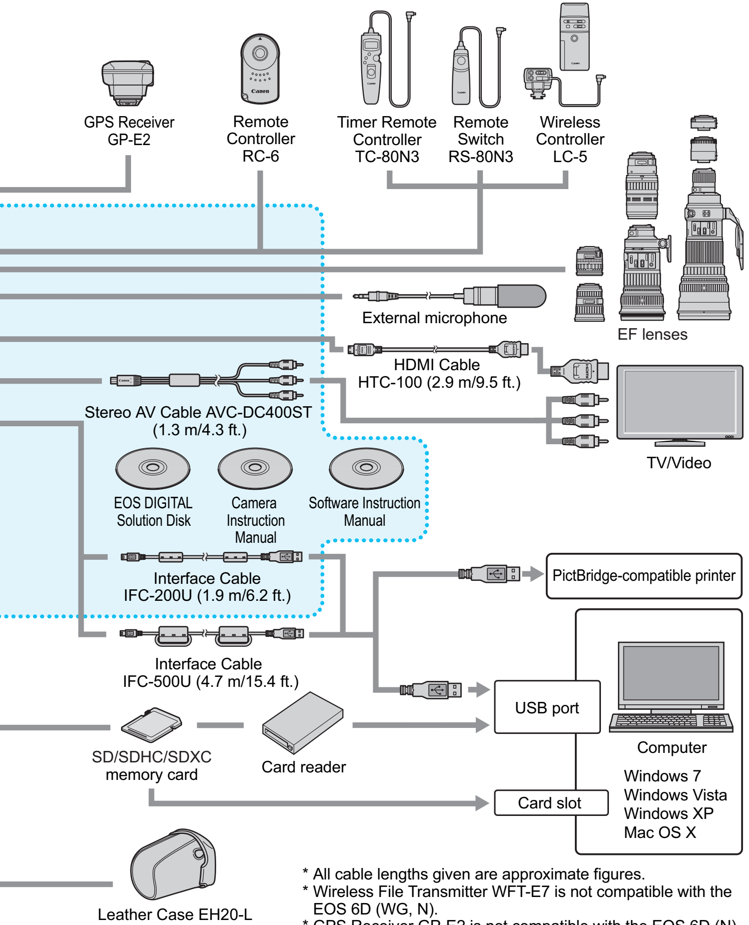
Grid display	Off / 3x3 # / 6x4 ▦ / 3x3+diag ✳	224
Movie recording size	1920x1080 (30 / 25 / 24) (ALL-I / IPB) 1280x720 (60 / 50) (ALL-I / IPB) 640x480 (30 / 25) (IPB)	216
Sound recording[*1]	Sound recording: Auto / Manual / Disable	218
	Recording level	
	Wind filter: Disable / Enable	
	Attenuator: Disable / Enable	
Time code	Count up / Start time setting / Movie recording count / Movie play count[*2] / Drop frame	220
Video snapshot	Video snapshot: Disable / Enable	225
	Album settings: Create a new album / Add to existing album	

*1: In Basic Zone modes, the settings available for [**Sound recording**] will be [**On/Off**].

*2: The setting is linked to [**Movie play count**] under the [▶**3**] tab.

System Map


ST-E2
ST-E3-RT
270EX II
320EX
430EX II
600EX-RT/ 600EX
Macro Ring Lite MR-14EX
Macro Twin Lite MT-24EX
90EX
Bundled Accessories
Focusing screen Eg-A II
Wide Strap EW-EOS6D
Eyepiece Extender EP-EX15
Rubber Frame Eb
E-series Dioptric Adjustment Lenses
Eyecup Eb
Angle Finder C
Focusing screen Eg-D Eg-S
AC Adapter AC-E6
DC Coupler DR-E6
AC Adapter Kit ACK-E6
Hand Strap E2
Battery Pack LP-E6
Battery Charger LC-E6 or LC-E6E
Battery Grip BG-E13
Car Battery Cable CB-570
Car Battery Charger CBC-E6
Battery Magazine BGM-E13L for LP-E6 (attached to BG-E13)
Battery Magazine BGM-E13A for size-AA/LR6 batteries (attached to BG-E13)


GPS Receiver GP-E2
Remote Controller RC-6
Timer Remote Controller TC-80N3
Remote Switch RS-80N3
Wireless Controller LC-5
EF lenses
External microphone
HDMI Cable HTC-100 (2.9 m/9.5 ft.)
Stereo AV Cable AVC-DC400ST (1.3 m/4.3 ft.)
TV/Video
EOS DIGITAL Solution Disk
Camera Instruction Manual
Software Instruction Manual
Interface Cable IFC-200U (1.9 m/6.2 ft.)
PictBridge-compatible printer
Interface Cable IFC-500U (4.7 m/15.4 ft.)
USB port
Computer
Windows 7
Windows Vista
Windows XP
Mac OS X
SD/SDHC/SDXC memory card
Card reader
Card slot
Leather Case EH20-L

* All cable lengths given are approximate figures.

* Wireless File Transmitter WFT-E7 is not compatible with the EOS 6D (WG, N).

* GPS Receiver GP-E2 is not compatible with the EOS 6D (N).

Troubleshooting Guide

If a problem occurs with the camera, first refer to this Troubleshooting Guide. If this Troubleshooting Guide does not resolve the problem, contact your dealer or nearest Canon Service Center.

Power-Related Problems

The battery pack does not recharge.

- If the battery's remaining capacity (p.334) is 94% or higher, the battery will not be recharged.
- Do not recharge any battery pack other than genuine Canon Battery Pack LP-E6.

The charger's lamp blinks at high speed.

- If (1) the battery charger or battery pack has a problem or (2) communication with the battery pack failed (with a non-Canon battery pack), the protection circuit will stop the charging and the lamp will blink in orange at high speed. In the case of (1), unplug the charger's power plug from the power outlet. Detach and reattach the battery pack to the charger. Wait a few minutes, then reconnect the power plug to the power outlet. If the problem persists, contact your dealer or nearest Canon Service Center.

The charger's lamp does not blink.

- If the internal temperature of the battery pack attached to the charger is high, the charger will not charge the battery for safety reasons (lamp off). During the charging, if the battery's temperature becomes high for any reason, the charging will stop automatically (lamp blinks). When the battery temperature goes down, the charging will resume automatically.

The camera does not operate even when the power switch is set to <ON>.

- Make sure the battery properly is installed in the camera (p.30).
- Make sure the battery compartment cover is closed (p.30).
- Make sure the card slot cover is closed (p.31).
- Recharge the battery (p.28).

The access lamp still blinks even when the power switch is set to <OFF>.

- If the power is turned off while an image is being recorded to the card, the access lamp will remain on/continue to blink for a few seconds. When the image recording is completed, the power will turn off automatically.

The battery becomes exhausted quickly.

- Use a fully-charged battery pack (p.28).
- The battery performance may have degraded. See [**🔧4: Battery info.**] to check the battery's recharge performance level (p.334). If the battery performance is poor, replace the battery pack with a new one.
- The number of possible shots will decrease with any of the following operations:
  - Pressing the shutter button halfway for a prolonged period.
  - Often activating only the AF without taking a picture.
  - Using the lens' Image Stabilizer.
  - Using the LCD monitor often.
  - Continuing Live View shooting or movie shooting for a prolonged period.
  - The Eye-Fi card's transmission is enabled.
  - GPS is enabled.

The camera turns off by itself.

- Auto power off is in effect. If you do not want auto power off to take effect, set [**🔧2: Auto power off**] to [**Disable**] (p.55).
- Even if [**🔧2: Auto power off**] is set to [**Disable**], the LCD monitor will still turn off after the camera is left idle for 30 min. (The camera's power does not turn off.)

Shooting-Related Problems

The lens cannot be attached.

- The camera cannot be used with EF-S and EF-M lenses (p.39).

No images can be shot or recorded.

- Make sure the card is properly inserted (p.31).
- Slide the card's write-protect switch to the write/erase position (p.31).
- If the card is full, replace the card or delete unnecessary images to make space (p.31, 267).
- If you try to focus in the One-Shot AF mode while the focus confirmation light <●> in the viewfinder blinks, a picture cannot be taken. Press the shutter button halfway again to refocus automatically, or focus manually (p.44, 97).

The card cannot be used.

- If a card error message is displayed, see page 33 or 370.

The image is out of focus.

- Set the lens focus mode switch to <**AF**> (p.39).
- To prevent camera shake, press the shutter button gently (p.43, 44).
- If the lens has an Image Stabilizer, set the IS switch to <ON> (p.42).
- In low light, the shutter speed may become slow. Use a faster shutter speed (p.144), set a higher ISO speed (p.106), use flash (p.170), or use a tripod.

I cannot lock the focus and recompose the shot.

- Set the AF operation to One-Shot AF. Focus lock is not possible in the AI Servo AF and AI Focus AF operations (p.69).

The continuous shooting speed is slow.

- Depending on the shutter speed, aperture, subject conditions, brightness, etc., the continuous shooting speed may become slower.

The maximum burst during continuous shooting is lower.

- If you shoot something that has fine detail (such as a field of grass), the file size will be larger and the actual maximum burst may be lower than the number mentioned on page 103.

ISO 100 cannot be set. ISO speed expansion cannot be selected.

- If [**📷4: Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**], the settable ISO speed range will be ISO 200-25600 (or up to ISO 12800 for movie shooting). Even if you expand the settable ISO speed range in [**ISO speed range**], you cannot set expanded ISO speeds (L, H, H1, H2). When [**📷4: Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Disable**], ISO 100/125/160 can be set (p.130).

The Auto Lighting Optimizer cannot be set.

- If [**📷4: Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Enable**], the Auto Lighting Optimizer cannot be set. When [**📷4: Highlight tone priority**] is set to [**Disable**], then the Auto Lighting Optimizer can be set (p.130).

Even though I set a decreased exposure compensation, the image comes out bright.

- Set [**📷3: Auto Lighting Optimizer**] to [**Disable**]. When [**Standard/Low/High**] is set, even if you set a decreased exposure compensation or flash exposure compensation, the image may come out bright (p.151).

The multiple-exposure image is shot in RAW quality.

- When the image-recording quality is set to M RAW or S RAW, the multiple-exposure image will be recorded in RAW quality (p.164).

When I use the <Av> mode with flash, the shutter speed becomes slow.

- If you shoot at night when the background is dark, the shutter speed becomes slow automatically (slow-sync shooting) so that both the subject and background are properly exposed. To prevent a slow shutter speed, under [**📷2: External Speedlite control**], set [**Flash sync. speed in Av mode**] to [**1/180-1/60 sec. auto**] or [**1/180 sec. (fixed)**] (p.173).

The flash does not fire.

- If you use a non-Canon flash unit with Live View shooting, set [**📷2: Silent LV shoot.**] to [**Disable**] (p.190).

The flash always fires at full output.

- If you use a flash unit other than an EX-series Speedlite, the flash will always be fired at full output (p.171).
- When the [**Flash metering mode**] flash Custom Function is set to [**TTL**] (autoflash), the flash will always be fired at full output (p.177).

Flash exposure compensation cannot be set.

- If flash exposure compensation has already been set with the Speedlite, flash exposure compensation cannot be set with the camera. When the Speedlite's flash exposure compensation is canceled (set to 0), flash exposure compensation can be set with the camera.

High-speed sync cannot be set in the < Av > mode.

- Under [**📷2: External Speedlite control**], set [**Flash sync. speed in Av mode**] to [**Auto**] (p.173).

The shutter makes two shooting sounds during Live View shooting.

- If you use flash, the shutter will make two sounds each time you shoot (p.181).

During Live View and movie shooting, a white <🌡> or red <🌡> icon is displayed.

- It indicates that the camera's internal temperature is high. If the white <🌡> icon displayed, the still photo's image quality may deteriorate. If the red <🌡> icon is displayed, it indicates that the Live View or movie shooting will soon stop automatically (p.201, 233).

I cannot shoot a movie.

- Under the [🔧**3**] tab, if you set [**Wi-Fi**] to [**Enable**], you cannot shoot movies. Before shooting movies, set [**Wi-Fi**] to [**Disable**].

Movie shooting stops by itself.

- If the card's writing speed is slow, movie shooting may stop automatically. If the compression method is set to [**IPB**], use a card with a reading/writing speed of at least 6 MB per sec. If the compression method is set to [**ALL-I (I-only)**], use a card with a reading/writing speed of at least 20 MB per sec (p.3). To find out the card's reading/writing speed, refer to the card manufacturer's Web site.
- If the movie shooting time reaches 29 min. 59 sec., the movie shooting will stop automatically.

The ISO speed cannot be set for movie shooting.

- In shooting modes other than <**M**>, the ISO speed is set automatically. In the <**M**> mode, you can freely set the ISO speed (p.209).

ISO 16000/20000/25600 cannot be set for movie shooting.

- Under [📷**3: ISO speed settings**], if you set the [**ISO speed range**]'s [**Maximum**] setting to [**25600/H**], the maximum ISO speed for manual ISO speed setting will be expanded and then ISO 16000/20000/25600 can be set. However, since shooting a movie at ISO 16000/20000/25600 may result in much noise, it is designated as an expanded ISO speed (displayed as [**H**]).

The manually set ISO speed changes when switching to movie shooting.

- If you shoot a movie when [**Maximum: 25600**] is set with [**ISO speed range**] and ISO speed is set to ISO 16000/20000/25600, the ISO speed will switch to ISO 12800 (during movie shooting with manual exposure). Even if you switch back to still photo shooting, the ISO speed will not revert to the original setting.
- If you shoot a movie when 1. L (ISO 50) or 2. H1 (ISO 51200)/H2 (ISO 102400) is set, the ISO speed setting will switch to 1. ISO 100 or 2. H (ISO 25600) respectively (during movie shooting with manual exposure). Even if you switch back to still photo shooting, the ISO speed will not revert to the original setting.

The exposure changes during movie shooting.

- If you change the shutter speed or aperture during movie shooting, the changes in the exposure may be recorded.
- Zooming the lens during movie shooting can cause changes in the exposure regardless of whether the lens' maximum aperture changes or not. Changes in the exposure may be recorded as a result.

The subject looks distorted during movie shooting.

- If you move the camera to the left or right quickly (high-speed panning) or shoot a moving subject, the image may look distorted.

The image flickers or horizontal stripes appear during movie shooting.

- Flickering, horizontal stripes (noise), or irregular exposures can be caused by fluorescent light, LED bulbs, or other light sources during movie shooting. Also, changes in the exposure (brightness) or color tone may also be recorded. In the <**M**> mode, a slow shutter speed may solve the problem.

When I shoot still photos during movie shooting, the movie shooting stops.

- Setting a lower image quality for still photos and shooting fewer continuous still photos may resolve the problem.

Time code is off.

- Shooting still photos during movie shooting will cause a discrepancy between the actual time and time code. When you want to edit a movie using time code, it is recommended not to shoot still photos during movie shooting.

Wi-Fi

Wi-Fi cannot be set.

- If the camera is connected to a printer, a computer, or a GPS receiver, etc. with an interface cable, Wi-Fi cannot be set ([**🔧3**] tab's [**Wi-Fi**] will be grayed out). Disconnect the interface cable, then set the Wi-Fi.

Operation Problems

I cannot change the setting with the <⚙>, <◯> dial, or <✥>.

- Set the <LOCK▶> switch to the left (lock release, p.47).
- Check the [📷**C.Fn III -3: Multi function lock**] setting (p.313).

The camera button/dial's function has changed.

- Check the [📷**C.Fn III -5: Custom Controls**] setting (p.320).

Display Problems

The menu screen shows few tabs and options.

- In Basic Zone modes, certain tabs and menu options are not displayed. Set a Creative Zone mode (p.51).

The file name's first character is an underscore ("_").

- Set the color space to sRGB. If Adobe RGB is set, the first character will be an underscore (p.140).

The file numbering does not start from 0001.

- If the card already contains recorded images, the image number may not start from 0001 (p.136).

The shooting date and time displayed is incorrect.

- Make sure the correct date and time has been set (p.36).
- Check the time zone and daylight savings time settings (p.36, 37).

The date and time is not in the picture.

- The shooting date and time does not appear in the picture. The date and time is instead recorded in the image data as shooting information. When printing, you can imprint the date and time in the picture by using the date and time recorded in the shooting information (p.291, 295).

### [###] is displayed.

- If the card has recorded a number of images greater than the camera can display, [**###**] will be displayed (p.248).

The LCD monitor does not display a clear image.

- If the LCD monitor is dirty, use a soft cloth to clean it.
- In low or high temperatures, the LCD monitor display may seem slow or may look black. It will return to normal at room temperature.

[Eye-Fi settings] does not appear.

- [**Eye-Fi settings**] will appear only when an Eye-Fi card is inserted in the camera. If the Eye-Fi card has a write-protect switch set to the LOCK position, you will not be able to check the card's connection status or disable Eye-Fi card transmission (p.339).

Playback Problems

Part of the image blinks in black.

- [▶**3: Highlight alert**] is set to [**Enable**] (p.240).

A red box is displayed on the image.

- [▶**3: AF point disp.**] is set to [**Enable**] (p.240).

The image cannot be erased.

- If the image is protected, it cannot be erased (p.265).

The movie cannot be played back.

- Movies edited with a computer using the provided ImageBrowser EX (p.392) or other software cannot be played back with the camera. However, video snapshot albums edited with EOS Video Snapshot Task (p.232) can be played on the camera.

When the movie is played back, camera operation noise can be heard.

- If you operate the camera's dials or lens during movie shooting, the operation noise will also be recorded. Using an external microphone (commercially available) is recommended (p.219).

The movie has still moments.

- During autoexposure movie shooting, if there is a drastic change in the exposure level, the recording will stop momentarily until the brightness stabilizes. If this happens, shoot with <M> shooting mode (p.208).

No image appears on the TV screen.

- Use the stereo AV cable that came with the camera (p.264).
- Make sure the stereo AV cable or HDMI cable's plug is inserted all the way in (p.261, 264).
- Set the video OUT system (NTSC/PAL) to the same video system as the TV set (p.264).

There are multiple movie files for a single movie shoot.

- If the movie file size reaches 4 GB, another movie file will be created automatically (p.217).

My card reader does not recognize the card.

- Depending on the card reader and computer OS used, SDXC cards may not be correctly recognized. If this occurs, connect your camera to the computer with the provided interface cable, then transfer the images to your computer using EOS Utility (provided software, p.392).

I cannot process the RAW image.

- M RAW and S RAW images cannot be processed with the camera. Use the provided software Digital Photo Professional to process the image (p.392).

I cannot resize the image.

- S3 JPEG images and RAW/M RAW/S RAW images cannot be resized with the camera (p.277).

Sensor Cleaning Problems

The shutter makes a noise during sensor cleaning.

- If you selected [**Clean now** ✧], the shutter will make a noise, but no picture is taken (p.280).

Automatic sensor cleaning does not work.

- If you repeatedly turn the power switch <ON> / <OFF> at a short interval, the <✧> icon may not be displayed (p.34).

Printing-Related Problems

There are fewer printing effects than listed in the instruction manual.

- What is displayed on the screen differs depending on the printer. This instruction manual lists all the printing effects available (p.290).

Direct printing does not work.

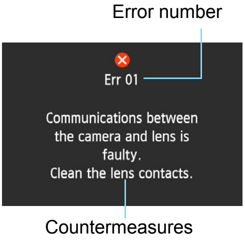
- Under the [🔧**3**] tab, if [**Wi-Fi**] is set to [**Enable**], direct printing is not possible. Set [**Wi-Fi**] to [**Disable**], then connect the camera to the printer with an interface cable.

Image Transfer Problems

I cannot transfer images to a computer.

- Install the provided software (EOS DIGITAL Solution Disk CD-ROM) on the computer (p.392).
- Check that EOS Utility’s top screen is displayed.
- Under the [**🔧3**] tab, if [**Wi-Fi**] is set to [**Enable**], the camera cannot connect to a computer. Set [**Wi-Fi**] to [**Disable**], then connect the camera to the computer with an interface cable.

Error Codes



Err 01

Communications between the camera and lens is faulty.
Clean the lens contacts.

If there is a problem with the camera, an error message will appear. Follow the on-screen instructions.

Number	Error Message and Solution
01	**Communications between the camera and lens is faulty. Clean the lens contacts.**
	→ Clean the electrical contacts on the camera and lens or use a Canon lens (p.17, 20).
02	**Card cannot be accessed. Reinsert/change card or format card with camera.**
	→ Remove and insert the card again, replace the card, or format the card (p.31, 53).
04	**Cannot save images because card is full. Replace card.**
	→ Replace the card, erase unnecessary images, or format the card (p.31, 53, 267).
06	**Sensor cleaning is not possible. Turn the camera off and on again.**
	→ Operate the power switch (p.34).
10, 20 30, 40 50, 60 70, 80 99	**Shooting is not possible due to an error. Turn the camera off and on again or re-install the battery.**
	→ Operate the power switch, remove and install the battery pack again, or use a Canon lens (p.30, 34).

*** If the error still persists, write down the error number and contact your nearest Canon Service Center.**

Specifications

• Type

Type:	Digital, single-lens reflex, AF/AE camera
Recording media:	SD memory card, SDHC memory card*, SDXC memory card* * Compatible with UHS-I
Image sensor size:	Approx. 35.8 x 23.9 mm
Compatible lenses:	Canon EF lenses (except EF-S and EF-M lenses) (35 mm-equivalent lens focal length will be as indicated on the lens)
Lens mount:	Canon EF mount

• Image Sensor

Type:	CMOS sensor
Effective pixels:	Approx. 20.20 megapixels
Aspect ratio:	3:2
Dust delete feature:	Auto, Manual, Dust Delete Data appending

• Recording System

Recording format:	Design rule for Camera File System 2.0
Image type:	JPEG, RAW (14-bit Canon original), RAW+JPEG simultaneous recording enabled
Recorded pixels:	L (Large) : Approx. 20.00 megapixels (5472 x 3648) M (Medium) : Approx. 8.90 megapixels (3648 x 2432) S1 (Small 1) : Approx. 5.00 megapixels (2736 x 1824) S2 (Small 2) : Approx. 2.50 megapixels (1920 x 1280) S3 (Small 3) : Approx. 350,000 pixels (720 x 480) RAW : Approx. 20.00 megapixels (5472 x 3648) M-RAW : Approx. 11.00 megapixels (4104 x 2736) S-RAW : Approx. 5.00 megapixels (2736 x 1824)
File numbering:	Continuous, auto reset, manual reset

• Image Processing During Shooting

Picture Style:	Auto, Standard, Portrait, Landscape, Neutral, Faithful, Monochrome, User Def. 1 - 3
White balance:	Auto, Preset (Daylight, Shade, Cloudy, Tungsten light, White fluorescent light, Flash), Custom, Color temperature setting (Approx. 2500-10000K), White balance correction, and White balance bracketing possible * Flash color temperature information transmission enabled

Noise reduction:	Applicable to long exposures and high ISO speed shots
Automatic image brightness correction:	Auto Lighting Optimizer
Highlight tone priority:	Provided
Lens aberration correction:	Peripheral illumination correction, Chromatic aberration correction

• Viewfinder

Type:	Eye-level pentaprism
Coverage:	Vertical/Horizontal approx. 97% (with Eye point approx. 21 mm)
Magnification:	Approx. 0.71x (-1 m^{-1} with 50 mm lens at infinity)
Eye point:	Approx. 21 mm (from eyepiece lens center at -1 m^{-1})
Built-in dioptric adjustment:	Approx. -3.0 - +1.0 m^{-1} (dpt)
Focusing screen:	Eg-A II provided, interchangeable
Electronic level:	Horizontal: 1° increments, ±9° * During horizontal shooting only
Mirror:	Quick-return type
Depth-of-field preview:	Provided

• Autofocus

Type:	TTL secondary image-registration, phase detection
AF points:	11 AF points Center: Cross-type AF at f/5.6 Center: Vertical line-sensitive AF at f/2.8
Focusing brightness range:	EV -3 - 18 (at center AF point [sensitive to f/2.8 and f/5.6], room temperature, ISO 100)
Focus operation:	One-Shot AF, AI Servo AF, AI Focus AF, Manual focusing (MF)
AI Servo AF characteristics:	Tracking sensitivity, Acceleration/deceleration tracking
AF fine adjustment:	AF Microadjustment (All lenses by same amount or Adjust by lens)
AF-assist beam:	Emitted by the EOS-dedicated external Speedlite

• Exposure Control

Metering modes:	63-zone TTL full-aperture metering • Evaluative metering (linked to all AF points) • Partial metering (approx. 8.0% of viewfinder at center) • Spot metering (approx. 3.5% of viewfinder at center) • Center-weighted average metering
Metering range:	EV 1 - 20 (at room temperature with EF50mm f/1.8 II lens, ISO 100)
Exposure control:	Program AE (Scene Intelligent Auto, Creative Auto, Special scene (Portrait, Landscape, Close-up, Sports, Night Portrait, Handheld Night Scene, HDR Backlight Control), Program), Shutter-priority AE, Aperture-priority AE, Manual exposure, Bulb exposure
ISO speed: (Recommended exposure index)	Basic Zone modes*: ISO 100 - 12800 set automatically * Landscape: ISO 100 - 1600 set automatically, Handheld Night Scene: ISO 100 - 25600 set automatically P, Tv, Av, M, B: Auto ISO, ISO 100 - 25600 (in 1/3- or whole-stop increments), or ISO expansion to L (equivalent to ISO 50), H1 (equivalent to ISO 51200), H2 (equivalent to ISO 102400)
ISO speed settings:	ISO speed range, Auto ISO range, and Auto ISO minimum shutter speed settable
Exposure compensation:	Manual: ±5 stops in 1/3- or 1/2-stop increments AEB: ±3 stops in 1/3- or 1/2-stop increments (can be combined with manual exposure compensation)
AE lock:	Auto: Applied in One-Shot AF mode with evaluative metering when focus is achieved Manual: By AE lock button

• HDR Shooting

Dynamic range adjustment:	Auto, ±1 EV, ±2 EV, ±3 EV
Auto image align:	Possible

• Multiple Exposures

Number of multiple exposures:	2 to 9 exposures
Multiple-exposure control:	Additive, Average

• Shutter

Type:	Electronically-controlled, focal-plane shutter
Shutter speeds:	1/4000 sec. to 30 sec., bulb, X-sync at 1/180 sec.

• Drive System

Drive modes:	Single shooting, Continuous shooting, Silent single shooting, Silent continuous shooting, 10-sec. self-timer/remote control, 2-sec. self-timer/remote control
Continuous shooting speed:	Continuous shooting: Max. approx. 4.5 shots/sec. Silent continuous shooting: Max. approx. 3.0 shots/sec.
Max. burst:	JPEG Large/Fine: Approx. 73 shots (approx. 1250 shots) RAW: Approx. 14 shots (approx. 17 shots) RAW+JPEG Large/Fine: Approx. 7 shots (approx. 8 shots) * Figures in parentheses apply to an UHS-I compatible 8 GB card based on Canon's testing standards. * Figures are based on Canon's testing standards (ISO 100 and Standard Picture Style) and an 8 GB card.

• External Speedlite

Compatible Speedlites:	EX-series Speedlites
Flash metering:	E-TTL II autoflash
Flash exposure compensation:	±3 stops in 1/3- or 1/2-stop increments
FE lock:	Provided
PC terminal:	None
External Speedlite control:	Provided * Compatible with radio wireless flash photography.

• Live View Shooting

Aspect ratio settings:	3:2, 4:3, 16:9, 1:1
Focus methods:	FlexiZone - Single, Face detection Live mode (contrast detection), Quick mode (phase-difference detection), Manual focusing (Approx. 5x / 10x magnification possible)
Focusing brightness range:	EV 1 - 18 (with contrast detection, at room temperature, ISO 100)

Metering modes:	Evaluative metering (315 zones), Partial metering (approx. 11% of Live View screen), Spot metering (approx. 3% of Live View screen), Center-weighted average metering
Metering range:	EV 0 - 20 (at room temperature with EF50mm f/1.4 USM lens, ISO 100)
Silent shooting:	Provided (Mode 1 and 2)
Grid display:	Three types

• Movie Shooting

Recording format:	MOV
Movie	MPEG-4 AVC / H.264 Variable (average) bit rate
Audio	Linear PCM
Recording size and frame rate:	1920x1080 (Full HD): 30p/25p/24p 1280x720 (HD) : 60p/50p 640x480 (SD) : 30p/25p * 30p: 29.97 fps, 25p: 25.00 fps, 24p: 23.976 fps, 60p: 59.94 fps, 50p: 50.00 fps
Compression method:	IPB, ALL-I (I-only)
File size:	1920x1080 (30p/25p/24p) / IPB : Approx. 235 MB/min. 1920x1080 (30p/25p/24p) / ALL-I : Approx. 685 MB/min. 1280x720 (60p/50p) / IPB : Approx. 205 MB/min. 1280x720 (60p/50p) / ALL-I : Approx. 610 MB/min. 640x480 (30p/25p) / IPB : Approx. 78 MB/min. * Card reading/writing speed necessary for movie shooting: IPB: at least 6 MB per sec./ALL-I: at least 20 MB per sec.
Focusing:	Same as focusing with Live View shooting
Metering modes:	Center-weighted average and Evaluative metering with the image sensor * Automatically set by the focusing mode.
Metering range:	EV 0 - 20 (at room temperature with EF50mm f/1.4 USM lens, ISO 100)
Exposure control:	Program AE for movies and manual exposure
Exposure compensation:	±3 stops in 1/3-stop increments (±5 stops for still photos)

ISO speed: (Recommended exposure index)	With autoexposure: Auto ISO (automatically set within ISO 100 - ISO 12800), Maximum and minimum ISO speeds can be changed in Creative Zone modes With manual exposure: Auto ISO (automatically set within ISO 100 - ISO 12800), ISO 100 - ISO 12800 set manually (in 1/3- or whole-stop increments), expandable to H (equivalent to ISO 16000/20000/25600)
Time code:	Supported
Drop frames:	Compatible with 60p/30p
Video snapshots:	Settable to 2 sec./4 sec./8 sec.
Sound recording:	Built-in monaural microphone, external stereo microphone terminal provided Sound recording level adjustable, wind filter provided, attenuator provided
Grid display:	Three types
Still photo shooting:	Possible

• LCD Monitor

Type:	TFT color, liquid-crystal monitor
Monitor size and dots:	Wide, 7.7 cm (3.0-in.) (3:2) with approx. 1.04 million dots
Brightness adjustment:	Manual (7 levels)
Electronic level:	Provided
Interface languages:	25
Feature guide / Help:	Displayable

• Playback

Image display formats:	Single image display, Single image + Info display (Basic info, shooting info, histogram), 4-image index, 9-image index
Highlight alert:	Overexposed highlights blink
AF point display:	Possible
Grid display:	Three types
Zoom magnification:	Approx. 1.5x - 10x, starting magnification and position settable
Image browsing methods:	Single image, jump by 10 or 100 images, by shooting date, by folder, by movies, by stills, by rating
Image rotate:	Possible
Ratings:	Provided
Movie playback:	Enabled (LCD monitor, video/audio OUT, HDMI OUT), built-in speaker

Slide show: All images, by date, by folder, by movies, by stills, or by rating
Background music: Selectable for slide shows and movie playback
Image protect: Possible

• Post-Processing of Images

In-camera RAW image processing: Brightness correction, White balance, Picture Style, Auto Lighting Optimizer, High ISO speed noise reduction, JPEG image-recording quality, Color space, Peripheral illumination correction, Distortion correction, and Chromatic aberration correction
Resize: Possible

• Direct Printing

Compatible printers: PictBridge-compatible printers
Printable images: JPEG and RAW images
Print ordering: DPOF Version 1.1 compatible

• Custom Functions

Custom Functions: 20
My Menu registration: Possible
Custom shooting modes: Register under Mode Dial’s C1/C2
Copyright information: Entry and inclusion enabled

• Interface

Audio/video OUT/Digital terminal: Analog video (Compatible with NTSC/PAL)/stereo audio output
Computer communication, Direct printing (Hi-Speed USB or equivalent), GPS Receiver GP-E2 connection
HDMI mini OUT terminal: Type C (Auto switching of resolution), CEC-compatible
External microphone IN terminal: ϕ3.5 mm stereo mini-jack
Remote control terminal: Compatible with N3-type remote controller
Wireless remote control: Remote Controller RC-6
Eye-Fi card: Compatible

• Power

Battery:	Battery Pack LP-E6 (Quantity 1) * AC power can be supplied via AC Adapter Kit ACK-E6. * With Battery Grip BG-E13 attached, size-AA/LR6 batteries can be used.
Battery information:	Remaining capacity, Shutter count, Recharge performance, and Battery registration possible
Number of possible shots: (Based on CIPA testing standards)	With viewfinder shooting: Approx. 1090 shots at room temperature (23°C/73°F), approx. 980 shots at low temperature (0°C/32°F) With Live View shooting: Approx. 220 shots at room temperature (23°C/73°F), approx. 190 shots at low temperature (0°C/32°F)
Movie shooting time:	Approx. 1 hr. 35 min. at room temperature (23°C/73°F) Approx. 1 hr. 25 min. at low temperature (0°C/32°F) (With a fully-charged Battery Pack LP-E6)

• Dimensions and Weight

Dimensions (W x H x D):	Approx. 144.5 x 110.5 x 71.2 mm / 5.7 x 4.4 x 2.8 in.
Weight (EOS 6D (WG)):	Approx. 755 g / 26.7 oz. (CIPA Guidelines), Approx. 680 g / 24.0 oz. (Body only)
Weight (EOS 6D (N)):	Approx. 750 g / 26.5 oz. (CIPA Guidelines), Approx. 675 g / 23.8 oz. (Body only)

• Operation Environment

Working temperature range:	0°C - 40°C / 32°F - 104°F
Working humidity:	85% or less

• Battery Pack LP-E6

Type:	Rechargeable lithium-ion battery
Rated voltage:	7.2 V DC
Battery capacity:	1800 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D):	Approx. 38.4 x 21.0 x 56.8 mm / 1.5 x 0.8 x 2.2 in.
Weight:	Approx. 80 g / 2.8 oz.

• Battery Charger LC-E6

Compatible battery:	Battery Pack LP-E6
Recharging time:	Approx. 2 hr. 30 min.
Rated input:	100 - 240 V AC (50/60 Hz)
Rated output:	8.4 V DC / 1.2 A
Working temperature range:	5°C - 40°C / 41°F - 104°F

Working humidity: 85% or less
Dimensions (W x H x D):Approx. 69.0 x 33.0 x 93.0 mm / 2.7 x 1.3 x 3.7 in.
Weight: Approx. 130 g / 4.6 oz.

• Battery Charger LC-E6E

Compatible battery: Battery Pack LP-E6
Power cord length: Approx. 1 m / 3.3 ft.
Recharging time: Approx. 2 hr. 30 min.
Rated input: 100 - 240 V AC (50/60 Hz)
Rated output: 8.4 V DC/1.2 A
Working temperature range: 5°C - 40°C / 41°F - 104°F
Working humidity: 85% or less
Dimensions (W x H x D): Approx. 69.0 x 33.0 x 93.0 mm / 2.7 x 1.3 x 3.7 in.
Weight: Approx. 125 g / 4.4 oz. (excluding power cord)

• EF24-105mm f/4L IS USM

Angle of view: Diagonal extent: 84° - 23°20’
Horizontal extent: 74° - 19°20’
Vertical extent: 53° - 13°
Lens construction: 18 elements in 13 groups
Minimum aperture: f/22
Closest focusing distance: 0.45 m / 1.48 ft. (from image sensor plane)
Max. magnification: 0.23x (at 105 mm)
Field of view: 535 x 345 - 158 x 106 mm / 21.1 x 13.6 - 6.2 x 4.2 in. (at 0.45 m)
Image Stabilizer: Lens shift type
Filter size: 77 mm / 3.0 in.
Lens cap: E-77U/E-77 II
Max. diameter x length: 83.5 x 107 mm / 3.3 x 4.2 in.
Weight: Approx. 670 g / 23.6 oz.
Hood: EW-83H
Case: LP1219

- All the data above is based on Canon’s testing standards and CIPA (Camera & Imaging Products Association) testing standards and guidelines.
- Dimensions, maximum diameter, length and weight listed above are based on CIPA Guidelines (except weight for camera body only).
- Product specifications and the exterior are subject to change without notice.
- If a problem occurs with a non-Canon lens attached to the camera, consult the respective lens maker.

Trademarks

- Adobe is a trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Windows is a trademark or registered trademark of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and other countries.
- Macintosh and Mac OS are trademarks or registered trademarks of Apple Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- SDXC logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.
- HDMI, HDMI logo, and High-Definition Multimedia Interface are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC.
- All other corporate and product names and trademarks mentioned in this manual are the property of their respective owners.

About MPEG-4 Licensing

"This product is licensed under AT&T patents for the MPEG-4 standard and may be used for encoding MPEG-4 compliant video and/or decoding MPEG-4 compliant video that was encoded only (1) for a personal and non-commercial purpose or (2) by a video provider licensed under the AT&T patents to provide MPEG-4 compliant video. No license is granted or implied for any other use for MPEG-4 standard."

* Notice displayed in English as required.

Use of genuine Canon accessories is recommended

This product is designed to achieve excellent performance when used with genuine Canon accessories.

Canon shall not be liable for any damage to this product and/or accidents such as fire, etc., caused by the malfunction of non-genuine Canon accessories (e.g., a leakage and/or explosion of a battery pack). Please note that this warranty does not apply to repairs arising out of the malfunction of non-genuine Canon accessories, although you may request such repairs on a chargeable basis.

Battery Pack LP-E6 is dedicated to Canon products only. Using it with an incompatible battery charger or product may result in malfunction or accidents for which Canon cannot be held liable.

Safety Warnings

Follow these safeguards and use the equipment properly to prevent injury, death, and material damage.

Preventing Serious Injury or Death

- To prevent fire, excessive heat, chemical leakage, and explosions, follow the safeguards below:
  - Do not use any batteries, power sources, and accessories not specified in this booklet. Do not use any home-made or modified batteries.
  - Do not short-circuit, disassemble, or modify the battery pack or back-up battery. Do not apply heat or apply solder to the battery pack or back-up battery. Do not expose the battery pack or back-up battery to fire or water. And do not subject the battery pack or back-up battery to strong physical shock.
  - Do not install the battery pack or back-up battery in reversed polarity (+ –). Do not mix new and old or different types of batteries.
  - Do not recharge the battery pack outside the allowable ambient temperature range of 0°C - 40°C (32°F - 104°F). Also, do not exceed the recharging time.
  - Do not insert any foreign metallic objects into the electrical contacts of the camera, accessories, connecting cables, etc.
- Keep the back-up battery away from children. If a child swallows the battery, consult a physician immediately. (Battery chemicals may harm the stomach and intestines.)
- When disposing of a battery pack or back-up battery, insulate the electrical contacts with tape to prevent contact with other metallic objects or batteries. This is to prevent fire or an explosion.
- If excessive heat, smoke, or fumes are emitted during battery pack recharging, immediately unplug the battery charger from the power outlet to stop the recharging and prevent a fire.
- If the battery pack or back-up battery leaks, changes color, deforms, or emits smoke or fumes, remove it immediately. Be careful not to get burned in the process.
- Prevent any battery leakage from contacting your eyes, skin, and clothing. It can cause blindness or skin problems. If the battery leakage contacts your eyes, skin, or clothing, flush the affected area with lots of clean water without rubbing it. See a physician immediately.
- During the recharging, keep the equipment away from the reach of children. The cord can accidentally choke the child or give an electrical shock.
- Do not leave any cords near a heat source. It can deform the cord or melt the insulation and cause a fire or electrical shock.
- Do not fire the flash at someone driving a car. It may cause an accident.
- Do not fire the flash near a person’s eyes. It may impair the person’s vision. When using flash to photograph an infant, keep at least 1 meter away.
- Before storing the camera or accessory when not in use, remove the battery pack and disconnect the power plug. This is to prevent electrical shock, heat generation, and fire.
- Do not use the equipment where there is flammable gas. This is to prevent an explosion or fire.

- If you drop the equipment and the casing breaks open to expose the internal parts, do not touch the internal parts due to the possibility of electrical shock.
- Do not disassemble or modify the equipment. High-voltage internal parts can cause electrical shock.
- Do not look at the sun or an extremely bright light source through the camera or lens. Doing so may damage your vision.
- Keep the camera from the reach of small children. The neck strap can accidentally choke the child.
- Do not store the equipment in dusty or humid places. This is to prevent fire and electrical shock.
- Before using the camera inside an airplane or hospital, check if it is allowed. Electromagnetic waves emitted by the camera may interfere with the plane's instruments or the hospital's medical equipment.
- To prevent fire and electrical shock, follow the safeguards below:
  - Always insert the power plug all the way in.
  - Do not handle a power plug with wet hands.
  - When unplugging a power plug, grasp and pull the plug instead of the cord.
  - Do not scratch, cut, or excessively bend the cord or put a heavy object on the cord. Also do not twist or tie the cords.
  - Do not connect too many power plugs to the same power outlet.
  - Do not use a cord whose insulation has been damaged.
- Occasionally unplug the power plug and use a dry cloth to clean off the dust around the power outlet. If the surrounding is dusty, humid, or oily, the dust on the power outlet may become moist and short-circuit the outlet to cause a fire.

Preventing Injury or Equipment Damage

- Do not leave equipment inside a car under the hot sun or near a heat source. The equipment may become hot and cause skin burns.
- Do not carry the camera around while it is attached to a tripod. Doing so may cause injury. Also make sure the tripod is sturdy enough to support the camera and lens.
- Do not leave a lens or lens-attached camera under the sun without the lens cap attached. Otherwise, the lens may concentrate the sun's rays and cause a fire.
- Do not cover or wrap the battery-recharging apparatus with a cloth. Doing so may trap heat within and cause the casing to deform or catch fire.
- If you drop the camera in water or if water or metal fragments enter inside the camera, promptly remove the battery pack and back-up battery. This is to prevent fire and electrical shock.
- Do not use or leave the battery pack or back-up battery in a hot environment. Doing so may cause battery leakage or a shorter battery life. The battery pack or back-up battery can also become hot and cause skin burns.
- Do not use paint thinner, benzene, or other organic solvents to clean the equipment. Doing so may cause fire or a health hazard.

If the product does not work properly or requires repair, contact your dealer or your nearest Canon Service Center.

Digital Camera Model DS126401 / DS126402 / DS126403 Systems

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for class B digital devices, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- — Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- — Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- — Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- — Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

The cable with the ferrite core provided with the digital camera must be used with this equipment in order to comply with Class B limits in Subpart B of Part 15 of the FCC rules.

Do not make any changes or modifications to the equipment unless otherwise specified in the manual. If such changes or modifications should be made, you could be required to stop operation of the equipment.

Canon U.S.A. Inc.
One Canon Plaza, Lake Success, NY 11042, U.S.A.
Tel No. (516)328-5600

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

When connecting to and using a household power outlet, use only AC Adapter Kit ACK-E6 (rated input: 100-240 V AC 50/60 Hz, rated output: 8.0 V DC). Using anything else can cause fire, overheating, or electrical shock.

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

1. **SAVE THESE INSTRUCTIONS** — This manual contains important safety and operating instructions for Battery Charger LC-E6 & LC-E6E.
2. Before using the charger, read all instructions and cautionary remarks on (1) the charger, (2) the battery pack, and (3) the product using the battery pack.
3. **CAUTION** — To reduce risk of injury, charge only the Battery Pack LP-E6. Other types of batteries may burst, causing personal injury and other damage.
4. Do not expose the charger to rain or snow.
5. Use of an attachment not recommended or sold by Canon may result in fire, electric shock, or personal injury.
6. To reduce risk of damage to electric plug and cord, pull by plug rather than by cord when disconnecting charger.
7. Make sure cord is located so that it will not be stepped on, tripped over, or otherwise subjected to damage or stress.
8. Do not operate the charger with damaged cord or plug - replace them immediately.
9. Do not operate the charger if it has received a sharp blow, been dropped, or otherwise damaged in any way; take it to a qualified serviceman.
10. Do not disassemble the charger; take it to a qualified serviceman when service or repair is required. Incorrect reassembly may result in a risk of electric shock or fire.
11. To reduce risk of electric shock, unplug charger from outlet before attempting any maintenance or cleaning.

MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTION

Unless otherwise stated in this manual, there are no user serviceable parts inside. Refer servicing to qualified serviceman.

USA and Canada only:

The Lithium ion/polymer battery that powers the product is recyclable. Please call 1-800-8-BATTERY for information on how to recycle this battery.

For CA, USA only

Included lithium battery contains Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate/ for details.

CAUTION

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE.
DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO LOCAL REGULATION.

MEMO

15

Viewing the CD-ROM Instruction Manuals / Downloading Images to Your Computer

This chapter explains how to install the Camera Instruction Manual (on the CD-ROM provided) to your computer, download images from the camera to your computer, gives an overview of the software in the EOS DIGITAL Solution Disk (CD-ROM), and explains how to install the software on your computer. It also explains how to view the PDF files on the Software Instruction Manual CD-ROM.

Canon
EOS 6D
EOS 6D (WG) / EOS 6D (W) / EOS 6D (N)
Camera Instruction Manual
Mode d'emploi de l'appareil photo
Manual de instrucciones de la cámara
カメラ使用説明書
相机使用说明书
For Windows
For Macintosh

Camera Instruction Manual

Canon
EOS DIGITAL
Solution Disk
For Macintosh
For Windows®

EOS DIGITAL Solution Disk
(Software)

Canon
EOS DIGITAL
Software INSTRUCTION MANUAL
ソフトウェア使用説明書
For Windows
For Macintosh
MODES D'EMPLOI des logiciels
Software INSTRUCCIONES
软件使用说明书

Software Instruction Manual

Viewing the Camera Instruction Manual CD-ROM

Canon
EOS 6D
For Windows
For Macintosh

The Camera Instruction Manual CD-ROM contains the following electronic manuals (PDF):

- **Camera Instruction Manual**
  Explains all the camera functions and procedures, including basic content.
- **Wi-Fi Function Instruction Manual**
  Explains all the Wi-Fi functions and procedures, including basic content.

Viewing the Camera Instruction Manual on the CD-ROM

To view the instruction manuals (PDF files), Adobe Reader 6.0 or higher must be installed in your computer. Adobe Reader can be downloaded free from the Internet. After installing Adobe Reader, follow the procedure below.

1 **Insert the “CAMERA INSTRUCTION MANUAL” CD-ROM into your computer.**

2 **Double-click the CD-ROM icon.**

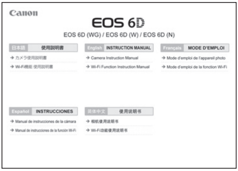
- For Windows, the icon is displayed in [**(My) Computer**].
- For Macintosh, the icon is displayed on the desktop.
- The icon displayed will differ depending on your computer’s operating system.

3 Double-click the START file.

- ▶ The screen shown in step 4 will appear.
- The icon displayed will differ depending on your computer’s operating system.

4 Click on the manual you want to view.

- Click on the name of the manual under your respective language.



Canon

EOS 6D

EOS 6D (WG) / EOS 6D (W) / EOS 6D (N)

日本語 使用説明書
→ カメラ使用説明書
→ Wi-Fi機能 使用説明書

English INSTRUCTION MANUAL
→ Camera Instruction Manual
→ Wi-Fi Function Instruction Manual

Français MODE D’EMPLOI
→ Mode d’emploi de l’appareil photo
→ Mode d’emploi de la fonction Wi-Fi

Español INSTRUCCIONES
→ Manual de instrucciones de la cámara
→ Manual de instrucciones de la función Wi-Fi

简体中文 使用说明书
→ 相机使用说明书
→ Wi-Fi功能使用说明书

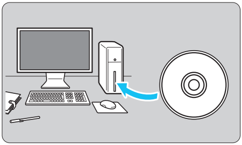
- ▶ The instruction manual in your language will be displayed.

- You can save the PDF file to your computer.
- All the instruction manuals (PDF files) have page links to make it quick to find the desired page. Click on a page number in the Table of Contents or Index and that page will appear.
- To learn how to use Adobe Reader, see Adobe Reader’s Help section.

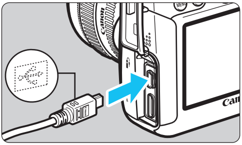
Downloading Images to a Computer

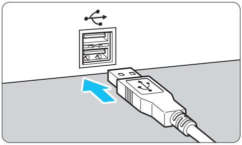
You can use the provided software to download the images in the camera to your computer. There are two ways to do this.

Download by Connecting the Camera to the Computer



1 Install the software (p.394)**.**





2 Use the provided interface cable to connect the camera to your computer.

- Use the interface cable provided with the camera.
- Connect the cable to the camera's <DIGITAL> terminal with the cable plug's <⭠> icon facing the front of the camera.
- Connect the cord's plug to the computer's USB terminal.

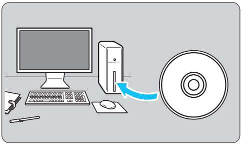
3 Use EOS Utility to download the images/movies.

- For details, refer to the Software Instruction Manual on the CD-ROM (p.395).

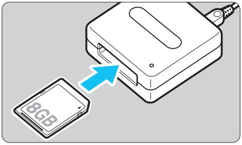
Under the [🔧3] tab, if [**Wi-Fi**] is set to [**Enable**], the camera cannot connect to a computer. Set [**Wi-Fi**] to [**Disable**], then connect the interface cable.

Downloading Images with a Card Reader

If you have a commercially-available card reader, you can use it to download images to your computer.



1 Install the software (p.394)**.**



2 Insert the card into the card reader.

3 Use Canon software to download the images/movies.

▶ **Use Digital Photo Professional.**

▶ **Use ImageBrowser EX.**

- For details, refer to the Software Instruction Manual on the CD-ROM (p.395).

When downloading images from the camera to your computer, with a card reader without using Canon software, copy the DCIM folder on the card to your computer.

About the Software

Canon
EOS DIGITAL
Solution Disk
For Macintosh
For Windows

EOS DIGITAL Solution Disk

This disk contains various software for EOS DIGITAL cameras.

EOS Utility

With the camera connected to a computer, EOS Utility enables you to transfer still photos and movies shot with the camera to the computer. You can also use this software to set various camera settings and shoot remotely with the computer connected to the camera. Also, you can copy background music tracks, such as EOS Sample Music*, to the card.

* Five original background music tracks are provided by Canon. Use EOS Utility to copy the background music tracks to the card, and you can play the background music during playback of video snapshot albums, movies, and slide shows with the camera.

Digital Photo Professional

This software is recommended for users who mainly shoot RAW images. You can view, edit, process, and print RAW images at high speed. You can also edit JPEG images while retaining the original images.

ImageBrowser EX

This software is recommended for users who mainly shoot JPEG images. You can easily view and play photos, movies, and video snapshot albums and also print JPEG images. Add-on features such as EOS Video Snapshot Task (p.232) can also be downloaded from the Internet.

Note that the software ZoomBrowser EX/ImageBrowser provided with previous cameras does not support still photos and movie files shot with this camera (it is not compatible). Use ImageBrowser EX provided with this camera.

Picture Style Editor

You can edit Picture Styles and create and save original Picture Style files. This software is aimed at advanced users who are experienced in processing images.

Map Utility

With the GPS position information, you can display where the picture was taken on a map on your computer. **To install Map Utility, an Internet connection is required.** Access the Internet, insert EOS DIGITAL Solution Disk into your computer, then click [**Easy Installation**] ([**Install**] for Macintosh). The software will be installed automatically.

Installing the Software

- Do not connect the camera to your computer before you install the software. The software will not be installed correctly.
- Even if your computer already has ImageBrowser EX installed, install ImageBrowser EX included on the CD-ROM that came with this camera. It is the latest version with features optimized for your camera. You can also use the auto update feature to add the latest functions.
- Even if a previous version of the software is installed or if you have different software, install the software by following the steps below. (The newer version will overwrite the previous version.)

1 Insert EOS DIGITAL Solution Disk (CD-ROM).

- For Macintosh, double-click to open the CD-ROM icon displayed on the desktop, then double-click on [**Canon EOS Digital Installer**].

2 Click [Easy Installation] and follow the on-screen instructions to install.

- For Macintosh, click [**Install**].
- If install screen for “Microsoft Silverlight” is displayed during installation, install “Microsoft Silverlight”.

3 Click [Restart] and remove the CD-ROM after the computer restarts.

- When the computer has restarted, the installation is complete.

Software Instruction Manual

Canon
EOS DIGITAL
Software INSTRUCTION MANUAL
ソフトウェア使用説明書
For Windows
For Macintosh

Contains the Software Instruction Manuals.

Copying and Viewing the Instruction Manual PDFs

1 Insert the [Software INSTRUCTION MANUAL] CD-ROM into your computer.

2 Double-click the CD-ROM icon.

- For Windows, the icon is displayed in [**(My) Computer**].
- For Macintosh, the icon is displayed on the desktop.

3 Copy the [English] folder to your computer.

- Instruction Manual PDFs with the names below are copied.

	Windows	Macintosh
EOS Utility	EUx.xW_E_xx	EUx.xM_E_xx
Digital Photo Professional	DPPx.xW_E_xx	DPPx.xM_E_xx
ImageBrowser EX	IBXx.x_E_xx	
Picture Style Editor	PSEx.xW_E_xx	PSEx.xM_E_xx
Map Utility	MUx.x_E_xx	

4 Double-click the copied PDF file.

- Adobe Reader (most recent version recommended) must be installed on your computer.
- Adobe Reader can be downloaded free from the Internet.

Index

Numerics

10-sec. or 2-sec. delay 100
11-point AF auto selection 94
1280x720 216
1920x1080 216
4- or 9-image index display 242
640x480 216

A

A+ (Scene Intelligent Auto) 66
AC Adapter Kit 338
Access lamp 32
Adobe RGB 140
AE lock 153
AEB 152, 304
AF
    AF method 192, 223
    AF Microadjustment 314
    AF operation 92
    AF point selection 94, 324
    AF-assist beam 309
    Beep 346
    Difficulty focusing 96, 196
    Manual focusing 97, 199
    Out of focus 42, 43, 96, 196
    Recompose 69
AF point 94
AF-ON (AF start) button 44
AI FOCUS (AI Focus AF) 93
AI SERVO (AI Servo AF) 93
    Tracking sensitivity 307, 308
AI Servo AF 69, 93
ALL-I (I-only) 216
Ambience-based shots 84
Aperture-priority AE 146
Aspect ratio 188
Attenuator 218
Audio/video output 251, 261
Auto Lighting Optimizer 125
Auto playback 257
Auto power off 34, 55
Auto reset 137
Auto rotate 270
Autofocus → AF
Automatic selection of AF point 94
Av (Aperture-priority AE) 146

B

B (Bulb) 154
Basic Zone modes 24
Battery 28, 30, 35
Battery Grip 35, 354
Beep 346
BGM 260
Black-and-white image 84, 113, 117
Bracketing 124, 152, 304
Bulb exposures 154

C

C1 (Custom shooting) 328
CA (Creative Auto) 71
Cable 4, 261, 264, 354, 390
Camera
    Camera shake 165
    Clear camera settings 56
    Holding the camera 43
    Settings display 332
Cards 3, 17, 31, 53
    Card reminder 32
    Formatting 53
    Low-level formatting 54
    Problems 33, 54
    Write-protect switch 31

Center-weighted average metering 150
Charger 26, 28
Chromatic aberration correction....132
Cleaning..279
Clear camera settings 56
Close-ups..77
Color space.....................................140
Color temperature 120, 122
Color tone 116
Continuous file numbering 136
Continuous shooting 98
Contrast 116
Copyright information....................138
Creative Auto 71
☆ icon...6
Creative Zone modes.......................24
Custom Controls 50, 320
Custom Functions 302
Custom shooting mode 328
Custom white balance...................121

D

Date and time...................................36
Daylight saving time 37
DC Coupler 338
Depth-of-field preview...147, 180, 184
Dial
  Main Dial......................................45
  Quick Control Dial.......................46
Digital terminal 286, 390
Dioptric adjustment 43
Direct printing.................................298
Direct selection (of AF point).........324
DPOF 295

Drive mode 73, 98
Dust Delete Data 281

E

Electronic level 60, 326
Erasing images............................ 267
Error codes................................... 370
Evaluative metering...................... 149
exFAT 54
Exposure compensation............... 151
Exposure level increments 304
Exposure level indicator 23, 333
Exposure simulation 189
External Speedlite → Flash
Eyecup 166
Eye-Fi card 339
Eyepiece cover...................... 27, 166

F

FE lock 170
Feature guide 63
FEB (flash exposure bracketing).. 176
File extension 137
File name...................................... 136
File size 103, 217, 238
Filter effect.................................... 117
Final image simulation.......... 184, 212
Fine (image-recording quality)...... 102
Firmware version 351
First-curtain synchronization 175
Flash (Speedlite)
  Custom Functions 177
  External Speedlite 170
  FE lock 170
  Flash control 172
  Flash exposure compensation.................. 170, 176

  Flash-sync speed 171, 173
  Manual flash 174
  Shutter synchronization (1st/2nd curtain) 175
  Wireless...................................175

Flash exposure compensation 170, 176

Flash mode 174

Flash-sync contacts 20

Focus confirmation light..................66

Focus lock...69

Focus mode switch 39, 97, 199

Focusing → AF

Folder creation/selection...............134

Formatting (card initialization).........53

Frame rate 216

Full High-Definition (Full HD) 216, 251, 261

G

GPS 350

Grid display...................187, 224, 237

H

Handheld Night Scene....................80

HDMI..................................251, 261

HDMI CEC 262

HDR 155

HDR Backlight Control....................81

Help 64

High ISO speed noise reduction ...126

High-Definition (HD)......216, 251, 261

Highlight alert................................240

Highlight detail loss.......................240

Highlight tone priority 130

Histogram (Brightness/RGB) 240

Hot shoe 20, 170

Household power 338

I

ICC profile 140

Illumination (LCD panel)................. 48

Image dust prevention.................. 279

Image review.................................. 55

Image-recording quality................ 102

Images
  AF point display 240
  Auto playback 257
  Auto rotate 270
  Erasing.................................. 267
  Highlight alert......................... 240
  Histogram display 240
  Index 242
  Jump display (image browsing) 243
  Magnified view 244
  Manual rotate 246
  Numbering 136
  Playback 235
  Protecting............................... 265
  Rating 247
  Shooting information................ 238
  Slide show 257
  Viewing on TV................. 251, 261

Index display 242

INFO. button......... 182, 210, 236, 332

IPB 216

ISO speed 106, 206, 209
  Automatic setting (Auto) 108
  Automatic setting range 110
  ISO expansion 109
  Manual setting range 109
  Minimum shutter speed 111
  Setting increments 304

J

JPEG... 102

Jump display 243

L

- Landscapes....76
- Language....38
- Large (image-recording quality)....103
- LCD monitor....17
  - Brightness adjustment....269
  - Electronic level....60
  - Image playback....235
  - Menu screen....51, 346
  - Shooting function settings display....48, 333
- LCD panel....22
- Lens....25, 39
  - Chromatic aberration correction....132
  - Image Stabilizer....42
  - Lock release....40
  - Peripheral illumination correction....131
- Lens hood....41
- Lighting/scene based shots....87
- Live View shooting....70, 179
  - Aspect ratio....188
  - Exposure simulation....189
  - Face detection Live mode....193
  - FlexiZoneAF□ (Single)....192
  - Grid display....187
  - Information display....182
  - Manual focusing....199
  - Metering timer....191
  - Possible shots....181
  - Quick Control....185
  - Quick mode....197
  - Silent shooting....190
- LOCK....47
- Long exposure noise reduction....128
- Long exposures....154

M

- M (manual exposure)....148, 208
- Macro photography....77
- Magnification....245
- Magnified view....199, 244
- Main Dial....45
- Malfunction....356
- Manual exposure....148, 208
- Manual focusing....97, 199
- Manual reset....137
- Manual selection (AF)....94
- Maximum burst....103, 105
- Medium (image-recording quality)....103, 277
- Memory cards → Cards
- Menu....51
  - My Menu....327
  - Setting procedure....52
  - Settings....346
- MENU icon....6
- Metering mode....149
- Metering timer....191, 223
- MF (manual focusing)....97, 199
- Microadjustment....314
- Microphone....204, 219
- Mirror lockup....165
- Mode Dial....24, 45
- Monochrome images....84, 113, 117
- Movies....203
  - AE lock....205
  - AF method....215, 223
  - Attenuator....218
  - Autoexposure shooting....204
  - Compression method....216
  - Drop frame....222
  - Editing....255

  Editing out first and last scenes ... 255
  Enjoying ... 251
  External microphone ... 219
  File size ... 217
  Frame rate ... 216
  Grid display ... 224
  Information display ... 210
  Manual exposure shooting ... 208
  Metering timer ... 223
  Microphone ... 204, 219
  Movie-recording size ... 216
  Playback ... 251, 253
  Quick Control ... 215
  Recording time ... 217
  Silent shooting ... 223
  Sound recording ... 218
  Still photo shooting ... 213
  Time code ... 220
  Video snapshot album ... 225
  Video snapshots ... 225
  Viewing on TV ... 251, 261
  Wind filter ... 218
M-RAW (Medium RAW) ... 104
Multi Shot Noise Reduction ... 126
Multi-controller ... 47, 94
Multi-function lock ... 47
Multiple exposures ... 158
My Menu ... 327

N

Night Portrait ... 79
Night scenes ... 79, 80
Noise reduction
  High ISO speed ... 126
  Long exposures ... 128
Nomenclature ... 20
Non-Canon flash units ... 171
Normal (image-recording quality) . 102
NTSC ... 216, 351

O

ONE SHOT (One-Shot AF) ... 92

P

P (Program AE) ... 142
PAL ... 216, 351
Partial metering ... 149
Peripheral illumination correction . 131
Personal white balance ... 122
Photobook set-up ... 299
PictBridge ... 285
Picture Style ... 112, 115, 118
Pixels ... 102
Playback ... 235
Portraits ... 75
Possible shots ... 35, 103, 181
Power
  Auto power off ... 55
  Battery check ... 35, 334
  Battery info ... 334
  Household power ... 338
  Possible shots ... 35, 103, 181
  Recharge performance ... 334
  Recharging ... 28
Pressing completely ... 44
Pressing halfway ... 44
Printing ... 285
  Layout ... 289
  Paper settings ... 289
  Photobook set-up ... 299
  Print order (DPOF) ... 295
  Printing effects ... 290
  Tilt correction ... 293
  Trimming ... 293
Program AE ... 142, 204
  Program shift ... 143

Protect (image erase protection)...265

Q

Q
(Quick Control)..49, 83, 185, 215, 249
Quick Control Dial 46
Quick mode...................................197

R

Rating mark..................................247
RAW....................................102, 104
RAW image processing 272
RAW+JPEG 102
Recharging.....................................28
Recording level 218
Reduced display 242, 244
Release shutter without card 32
Remote control shooting...............167
Remote switch shooting................167
Resizing 277
Rotation (image) 246, 270, 293

S

Safety shift 306
Safety warnings 382
Saturation.....................................116
Scene icons 183, 207
Scene Intelligent Auto.....................66
SD, SDHC, SDXC cards → Cards
Second-curtain synchronization....175
Self-timer............................100, 168
Sensor cleaning 279
Sepia (monochrome) 84, 117
Sharpness....................................116
Shooting function settings
display..................................48, 333
Shooting information display.........238
Shooting mode 24
  Av (Aperture-priority AE).......... 146
  B (Bulb).................................. 154
  C1 (Custom shooting)............. 328
  M (Manual exposure)............... 148
  P (Program AE)....................... 142
  Tv (Shutter-priority AE) 144
  A+ (Scene Intelligent Auto)....... 66
  CA (Creative Auto)..................... 71
  SCN (Special scene).................. 74
    (Portrait)............................. 75
    (Landscape)......................... 76
    (Close-up) 77
    (Sports) 78
    (Night Portrait) 79
    (Handheld Night Scene) 80
    (HDR Backlight Control)..... 81
Shooting mode's settable
functions 342
Shooting orientation registration... 310
Shutter button................................ 44
Shutter synchronization................ 175
Shutter-priority AE 144
Silent shooting
  Continuous shooting 98
  Silent LV shooting 190, 223
  Single shooting 98
Single shooting........................ 73, 98
Single-image display 236
Single-point AF 94
Slide show 257
Small
(image-recording quality)...... 103, 277
Software 392
Speaker 253
Special scene mode 74
Sports 78

Spot metering....................................150
S-RAW (Small RAW) 104
sRGB 140
Stopped-down aperture 147
Strap 27
System map....................................354

T

Temperature warning 201, 233
Time code 220
Time zone 36
Tone priority 130
Toning effect (monochrome) 117
Trimming (for printing)...................293
Tripod socket 21
Tv (shutter-priority AE)..................144

U

USB (digital) terminal 286, 390

V

Video snapshot album 225
Video snapshots 225
Video system 216, 264, 351
Viewfinder 23
  Dioptric adjustment.....................43
  Electronic level 60, 326
Viewing on TV......................251, 261
Volume (movie playback)..............254

W

Warning icon 313
WB (white balance)........................120
  Bracketing 124
  Color temperature setting 122
  Correction.................................123
  Custom 121
  Personal 122
Wi-Fi 351
Wind filter 218

MEMO

CANON INC. 30-2, Shimomaruko 3-chome, Ohta-ku, Tokyo 146-8501, Japan

U.S.A.
CANON U.S.A. INC.
http://www.usa.canon.com/eos
http://www.usa.canon.com/support
For all inquires concerning this product, call toll free in the U.S.
1-800-OK-CANON

CANADA
CANON CANADA INC. HEADQUARTERS
6390 Dixie Road, Mississauga, Ontario L5T 1P7, Canada
CANON CANADA INC. MONTREAL BRANCH
5990, Côte-de-Liesse, Montréal Québec H4T 1V7, Canada
CANON CANADA INC. CALGARY OFFICE
2828, 16th Street, N.E. Calgary, Alberta T2E 7K7, Canada
For all inquiries concerning this product, call toll free in Canada
1-800-OK-CANON

EUROPE, AFRICA & MIDDLE EAST
CANON EUROPA N.V.
Bovenkerkerweg 59-61, 1185 XB Amstelveen, The Netherlands
CANON FRANCE S.A.S.
17, Quai du Président Paul Doumer, 92414 Courbevoie Cedex, France
CANON UK LTD.
Woodhatch Reigate, Surrey RH2 8BF, United Kingdom
CANON DEUTSCHLAND GmbH
Europark Fichtenhain A10, 47807 Krefeld, Germany
CANON ITALIA S.p.A.
Via Milano 8, 20097 San Donato Milanese, (MI), Italy
CANON Schweiz A.G.
Industriestrasse 12, 8305 Dietlikon, Switzerland
Canon GmbH
Zetschegasse 11, A-1230 Vienna, Austria
CANON España,S.A.
Av. De Europa, 6 Alcobendas 28108 Madrid, Spain
CANON Portugal S.A.
Rua Alfredo da Silva,14 Alfragide 2610-016 Amadora, Portugal

CENTRAL & SOUTH AMERICA
CANON LATIN AMERICA, INC.
http://www.cla.canon.com

ASIA
CANON (China) Co., LTD.
15F Jinbao Building No.89 Jinbao Street, Dongcheng District, Beijing 100005, China
CANON HONGKONG CO., LTD.
19/F., The Metropolis Tower, 10 Metropolis Drive, Hunghom, Kowloon, Hong Kong
CANON SINGAPORE PTE. LTD.
1 Harbour Front Avenue, #04-01 Keppel Bay Tower, Singapore 098632
CANON KOREA CONSUMER IMAGING INC.
Canon BS Tower 5F, #168-12 Samseong-dong, Gangnam-gu, Seoul, Korea

OCEANIA
CANON AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.
1 Thomas Holt Drive, North Ryde, Sydney N.S.W. 2113, Australia
CANON NEW ZEALAND LTD.
Akoranga Business Park, Akoranga Drive, Northcote, Auckland, New Zealand

JAPAN
CANON MARKETING JAPAN INC.
16-6, Kohnan 2-chome, Minato-ku, Tokyo 108-8011, Japan

The lenses and accessories mentioned in this Instruction Manual are current as of September 2012. For information on the camera’s compatibility with any lenses and accessories introduced after this date, contact any Canon Service Center.

CPX-E056-000 © CANON INC. 2012